LEARNING MADE EASY

3rd Edition

Singing

for dummies®

A Wiley Brand

Train using techniques that pro singers use

Improve your tone, pitch, articulation, and range

Apply your new skills in audition or performance

Pamelia S. Phillips, DMA

Professional singer and voice teacher

Singing

3rd edition

by Pamelia S. Phillips, DMA

for dummies®
A Wiley Brand

Singing For Dummies®, 3rd edition

Published by: **John Wiley & Sons, Inc.,** 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2022 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the Publisher. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Trademarks: Wiley, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc., and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: WHILE THE PUBLISHER AND AUTHORS HAVE USED THEIR BEST EFFORTS IN PREPARING THIS WORK, THEY MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES REPRESENTATIVES, WRITTEN SALES MATERIALS OR PROMOTIONAL STATEMENTS FOR THIS WORK. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION, WEBSITE, OR PRODUCT IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE PUBLISHER AND AUTHORS ENDORSE THE INFORMATION OR SERVICES THE ORGANIZATION, WEBSITE, OR PRODUCT MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR YOUR SITUATION. YOU SHOULD CONSULT WITH A SPECIALIST WHERE APPROPRIATE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR AUTHORS SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR OTHER DAMAGES.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002. For technical support, please visit https://hub.wiley.com/community/support/dummies.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at http://booksupport.wiley.com. For more information about Wiley products, visit www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Control Number is available from the publisher

ISBN: 978-1-119-84296-5 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-1-119-84341-2 (ebk); ISBN: 978-1-119-84316-0 (ebk)

Contents at a Glance

Introduction 1

Part 1: Exploring Singing Basics 5

CHAPTER 1: Preparing to Sing. 7
CHAPTER 2: Determining Your Voice Type 15
CHAPTER 3: Aligning Your Body for Great Singing 29
CHAPTER 4: Breathing for Singing 43
CHAPTER 5: Toning Up the Voice 63

Part 2: Improving Your Singing 79

CHAPTER 6: Acquiring Beautiful Tone 81
CHAPTER 7: Exploring Resonance 91
CHAPTER 8: Shaping Your Vowels for Clarity 101
CHAPTER 9: Exercising Consonants for Articulation 111
CHAPTER 10: Crafting a Practice Routine 123

Part 3: Advanced Techniques to Improve Your Voice 135

CHAPTER 11: Developing the Parts of Your Singing Voice 137
CHAPTER 12: Expanding Your Vocal Flexibility and Range. 163
CHAPTER 13: It's a Cinch: Belting Out Your Song. 175
CHAPTER 14: Training for Singing. 199
CHAPTER 15: Finding the Right Voice Teacher 211

Part 4: Preparing to Perform 221

CHAPTER 16: Selecting Your Music Material. 223
CHAPTER 17: Mastering a New Song 235
CHAPTER 18: Acting the Song 253
CHAPTER 19: Confronting Your Fear of Performing 265
CHAPTER 20: Auditioning a Song 277

Part 5: The Part of Tens 297

CHAPTER 21: Ten Performers with Good Technique 299
CHAPTER 22: Ten Frequently Asked Questions about Singing 305
CHAPTER 23: Ten Tips for Maintaining Vocal Health 311
CHAPTER 24: Ten Tips for Performing Like a Pro 319

Part 6: Appendixes 329
APPENDIX A: Songs to Advance Your Technique 331
APPENDIX B: About the Online Tracks 343

Index 349

Table of Contents

INTRODUCTION 1
About This Book. 1
Foolish Assumptions 3
Icons Used in This Book 3
Beyond This Book 4
Where to Go from Here 4

PART 1: EXPLORING SINGING BASICS 5

CHAPTER 1: Preparing to Sing 7
What You Want to Know Right from the Beginning 7
Determining your voice type 8
Locating the notes on the staff 8
Considering posture, breath, and tone 10
Developing Your Singing Voice 10
Working the Different Parts of Your Voice. 11
Applying Your Technique 12
Having Fun 13

CHAPTER 2: Determining Your Voice Type 15
Sifting through the Ingredients to Figure Out Your Voice Type 16
Identifying the Fab Four 17
Highest range of the dames: Soprano 18
How low can she go: Mezzo 20
Highest range of the dudes: Tenor 21
He's so low: Bass 23
Comparing voice types 25

CHAPTER 3: Aligning Your Body for Great Singing 29
Evaluating Your Posture 30
Creating Ideal Posture 32
Feeling grounded on your feet 32
Engaging your legs 34
Releasing your hips 35
Lengthening your spine 36
Balancing your head and shoulders 36
Releasing Tension 37
Letting go of tension in your upper body 37
Opening space in the head 38
Walking with ease 39
Projecting confidence through posture 40

CHAPTER 4: **Breathing for Singing** 43
Tackling the Basics of Breathing 43
Inhaling to sing 44
Exhaling to sing 44
Posturing yourself for breathing 46
Practicing Inhalation 46
Opening your body 47
Breathing, slow and steady 51
Catching a quick breath 52
Practicing Exhalation 54
Blowing in the wind 54
Trilling for exhalation 55
Recognizing resistance and suspending the breath 57
Testing Your Breath Control 58
Releasing abs and then ribs 59
Singing slowly 60

CHAPTER 5: **Toning Up the Voice** 63
Defining Tone 63
Creating unique tone 64
Identifying factors that affect tone 64
Considering tone, pitches, and notes 65
Flexing Your Singing Muscles 66
Discovering your own bands 66
Making the first sound 66
Dropping the jaw 67
Matching Pitch 71
Sliding up and down on pitch 72
Developing muscle memory 73
Recording yourself and singing along 74
Releasing Tension for Better Tone 74
Checking for neck or jaw tension 75
Bouncing the tongue and jaw 75

PART 2: IMPROVING YOUR SINGING 79

CHAPTER 6: **Acquiring Beautiful Tone** 81
Creating Tone 81
Starting the tone 82
Creating back space 83
Coordinating air with tone 83
Sighing your way to clarity 84
Releasing Tone 85
Inhaling to release tone 85
Letting your throat go 86

Sustaining Tone 86
Connecting the dots with legato 86
Trilling the lips or tongue 87
Working your breath control 87
Finding Your Vibrato 88
Moving from straight tone to vibrato 89
Imitating another singer's vibrato 90

CHAPTER 7: **Exploring Resonance** 91
Understanding Resonance — Good Vibrations 92
Identifying resonance in different styles of music 92
Exploring your resonators 94
Ringing it out 94
Eliminating Nasality 95
Getting the feel for soft palate work 95
Coordinating your soft palate and tongue 96
Moving air through the nose 97
Debunking Common Misconceptions 98
Misconception: Tone resonates in your sinuses 98
Misconception: You have to place every tone in the same location 99
Misconception: You're supposed to keep your tongue completely flat 99
Misconception: You need to open your mouth as wide as possible 100
Misconception: The more forward the sound, the better 100
Misconception: You have to smile to stay on pitch 100

CHAPTER 8: **Shaping Your Vowels for Clarity** 101
Getting Your Backside into Shape — Back Vowels, That Is 102
Exploring the shape of back vowels 103
Lipping around your back vowels 104
Singing the back vowels 105
Mastering the Front Vowels 106
Exploring the shape of front vowels 106
Speaking the front vowels 108
Singing the front vowels 109

CHAPTER 9: **Exercising Consonants for Articulation** 111
Saying Voiced and Unvoiced Consonants 112
Making Tip Consonants 113
Shaping tip consonants 113
Singing tip consonants 116
Making Soft Palate Consonants 116
Shaping soft palate consonants 117
Singing soft palate consonants 118

Working Lip Consonants 118
Shaping lip consonants. 118
Singing lip consonants 120
Working Combination Consonants. 120
Shaping combination consonants. 121
Singing combination consonants 122

CHAPTER 10: **Crafting a Practice Routine** 123
Knuckling Down to a Practice Plan 124
Getting Answers to Your Practicing Questions 124
Where should I practice? 125
What's the best time to practice? 125
How long should I practice?. 126
What do I need besides my voice? 126
Warming Up 127
Stretching to warm up your body 127
Warming up your voice. 129
Exercising Your Voice 130
Picking exercises that work for you 130
Breaking it down 131
Practicing Correctly 133
Recording yourself 133
Applying information and exercises 134
Using the online tracks to practice exercises 134

PART 3: ADVANCED TECHNIQUES TO IMPROVE YOUR VOICE 135

CHAPTER 11: **Developing the Parts of Your Singing Voice**. 137
Finding Your Middle Voice 138
Noting your middle voice range 139
Singing in middle voice 140
Checking Out Your Chest Voice 142
Zeroing in on your chest voice range 142
Feeling your chest voice 144
Aiming High with Head Voice. 145
Finding your head voice range 145
Feeling head voice 146
Figuring Out Falsetto. 148
Discovering your falsetto 149
Experiencing your falsetto 150
Making a Smooth Transition 153
Maneuvering in and out of chest voice 153
Mixing It Up 157
Making the most of your mix, man. 157
Getting into the mix, gals 158

CHAPTER 12: **Expanding Your Vocal Flexibility and Range** 163
Tackling Register Transitions 164
Working On Your Range 165
Taking your range higher 165
Varying the dynamics 166
Moving between registers 167
Taking Your Agility to New Levels 168
Moving along the scale 169
Picking up the pace 169
Skipping through the intervals 170
Improvising for a Better Pop Sound 171
Mastering patterns in pop music 172
Singing pop riffs with chords 173

CHAPTER 13: **It's a Cinch: Belting Out Your Song** 175
Playing around with Pitch 176
Talking to yourself 177
Chanting and speaking 177
Finding your optimum speaking pitch 179
Increasing your speaking range 180
Using body energy to find clarity of tone 181
Defining Healthy Belting 182
Comparing belt and chest voice 183
Knowing your limits as a beginner belter 184
Noting the difference between the sexes 184
Coordinating breath and energy 185
Preparing for Belting 186
Speaking in a mix 186
Calling out to a friend 187
Moving Resonance to the Front 187
Exploring vibrations of resonance 188
Being bratty to feel resonance 189
Combining Resonance and Registration 189
Increasing your belt range 190
Belting up the scale 190
Advancing Your Belt 191
Sustaining belt sounds 192
Exploring different vowels 193
Belters and Belt Songs You Should Hear 194
Male belters 194
Female belters 195
Belt songs 195

CHAPTER 14: **Training for Singing** 199
Defining Training Requirements 199
Crooning as a country singer 200
Jazzing it up 200
Making your mark in musical theater 201
Performing pop-rock 202
Opting for opera 203
Showing your range with R&B 204
Training to Sing at Any Age 205
Recognizing differences between young singers and teens 205
Developing long-term technique in teenagers 206
Understanding that voices change with age 207
Training with a Choir 208
Enjoying the benefits of singing in the choir 208
Singing in the choir versus going solo 209

CHAPTER 15: **Finding the Right Voice Teacher** 211
Searching for the Best Voice Teacher 211
Finding a prospective voice teacher 212
Identifying what you want 212
Interviewing a prospective teacher 213
Knowing What to Expect from a Teacher 217
Feeling good when you leave the lesson 217
Working with imagery and other tools 218
Applying tried-and-true singing methods 218
Knowing What to Expect from Yourself 219
Developing your own practice process 219
Avoiding overworking your flaws 219
Making Your First Lesson a Success 220

PART 4: PREPARING TO PERFORM 221

CHAPTER 16: **Selecting Your Music Material** 223
Choosing the Song 223
Finding songs at your level 223
Determining the appropriate key for you 229
Selecting a suitable song style 229
Singing to your strengths 230
Shopping for Sheet Music 231
Downloading sheet music 231
Ordering music books 232
Checking out music at your local library 233

CHAPTER 17: **Mastering a New Song** 235
Tackling a Song in Steps 235
Memorizing the lyrics as text 236
Tapping out the rhythm 239
Singing the melody (without the words) 240
Putting words and music together 241
Using Vocal Technique in Your New Song 242
Giving voice to vowels 242
Backing into phrases 243
Breathing heavy: Fogging up the windows 244
Changing the tone for each section 247
Using Musical Elements to Create Your Arrangement 248
Comparing songs 248
Articulation 249
Dynamics 249
Tempo 249
Using vocal variety 250
Style 250
Accompanist 251
Evaluating musical elements 251

CHAPTER 18: **Acting the Song** 253
Seeing the Song As a Story 254
Chatting it up before you sing 254
Recognizing musical responses 255
Accounting for interludes 255
Exploring Character 256
Characterizing your character 256
Discovering your character's motivation 258
Planning actions to get something done 258
Getting Physical 259
Figuring out where to focus 259
Gesturing appropriately 260
Movin' and groovin' with your song 262

CHAPTER 19: **Confronting Your Fear of Performing** 265
Facing the Symptoms 265
Alleviating Anxiety through Preparation 267
Practicing well 267
Playing to your strengths 268
Managing your thoughts 268
Getting up the nerve 269
Building performance focus 270

Performing to Build Confidence 272
Devising a game plan 272
Evaluating your performance 274

CHAPTER 20: **Auditioning a Song** 277
Tailoring Your Audition for Any Venue and Any Style of Music 278
At the opera 278
Onstage at the theater 279
In the club 279
On television 280
Choosing Audition Songs to Highlight Your Strengths 281
Showing versatility 281
Connecting with the lyrics 282
Avoiding the wrong audition song 283
Choosing the key 284
Making the cut 285
Marking the music 286
Rehearsing with an accompanist 287
Preparing the Music 288
Preparing hard copies 289
Taking digital sheet music 290
Bringing a recording 290
Nailing the Audition 291
Doing your prep work 291
Dressing in the right outfit 292
Knowing how to audition online 293
Greeting the audition accompanist 294
Acting at the audition 295
Preparing mentally 296

PART 5: THE PART OF TENS 297

CHAPTER 21: **Ten Performers with Good Technique** 299
Xiomara Alfaro 300
Juan Diego Flórez 300
Lady Gaga 300
Eddie Kendricks 301
Bruno Mars 301
Minnie Riperton 302
Sofia Shkidchenko 302
Meryl Streep 303
Josh Turner 303
Colm Wilkinson 304

CHAPTER 22: **Ten Frequently Asked Questions about Singing** 305
Is Belting Bad? 305
What Should I Do If My Voice Feels Off? 306
How Are an Accompanist, a Coach, and a Voice Teacher Different? 307
If My Voice Is Scratchy, Do I Have Nodes? 307
Do I Have to Be Big to Have a Big Voice? 308
What's the Best Singing Method? 308
Do I Have to Speak Italian to Sing Well? 308
Can I Have a Few Drinks Before the Performance to Calm My Nerves? 309
Why Can't I Eat Ice Cream Before I Sing? 309
How Long Will It Take Me to Learn to Sing? 310

CHAPTER 23: **Ten Tips for Maintaining Vocal Health** 311
Identifying Everyday Abuses 311
Incorporating Healthy Speech into Your Singing 313
Knowing When to Seek Help 313
Staying Hydrated 314
Getting Plenty of Shut-Eye 315
Making Sure That You're Well Nourished 315
Preventing a Sore Throat or Infection 316
Medicating a Sore Throat 316
Protecting a Sore Throat 318
Keeping Your Emotional Life in Check 318

CHAPTER 24: **Ten Tips for Performing Like a Pro** 319
Rehearsing to Beat the Band 319
Wearing the Right Ensemble 320
Finding Your Stance 321
Singing with a Piano, Organ, or Band 322
Making Your Entrance 322
Roping in Your Audience 323
Ignoring That Mosquito 323
Handling Those Hands 324
Using the Mic 325
Taking Your Bow and Leaving the Stage 326

PART 6: APPENDIXES 329

APPENDIX A: **Songs to Advance Your Technique** 331
Beginner Songs for Any Voice Type or Gender 332
Intermediate Songs from Various Styles for Any Voice Type or Gender 333

Intermediate musical theater songs 333
Intermediate pop-rock songs 333
Intermediate country songs 334
Intermediate classical songs 334
Songs to Practice Technical Lessons for Any Voice Type or Gender 334
Spunky songs for practicing articulation and agility 335
Songs with larger intervals to practice smooth register transitions 335
Songs to practice breath coordination and legato phrases 336
Songs to Work on Range and Registers 336
Songs for low female voices 337
Songs for low male voices 337
Songs for higher voices to expand your range for any gender 338
Songs for lower voices to expand your range for any gender 338
Songs for Working Mix, Belt, and Falsetto 338
Female mix songs 339
Songs for working on male falsetto and mix 339
Belt songs for higher and lower female voices 340

APPENDIX B: **About the Online Tracks** 343
Recognizing What's Available: The Track Listings 343
Tackling Any Potential Issues 347

INDEX 349

Introduction

I'm so happy you chose this book! Whether you're a shower singer or you secretly desire to sing on a stage, this book is for you. The book is full of helpful information covering all aspects of singing, from posture and breathing to vocal health and techniques for increasing your range. Absolutely no experience is necessary! Even if you know zero about singing, you're going to have a great time exploring your singing voice.

You can't develop your singing voice overnight; it takes time. Some people are born with a voice ready to sing at the Hollywood Bowl, but most people who like to sing have to work on their voice to prepare it for the first performance. Whichever category you fit into, this book has some valuable information for you.

Exercising the singing voice is the ticket to improving your technique. The exercises in the book are similar to what you may encounter in a voice lesson or a class about singing. By working on exercises, you give your body a chance to figure out exactly how to make the sounds. After you get the technical details cooking, you can apply that information to your songs and sound even better.

You may not have someone there listening to you as you practice, but you find suggestions throughout the book on how to listen to your voice and critique it for yourself so that you can improve every time you practice.

About This Book

Singing For Dummies, 3rd Edition, is designed as a reference guide, not as a tutorial, and includes exercises to help you improve your singing. Flip through and look for parts that interest you. (For that matter, I recommend that you also go through the parts that don't interest you — who knows what you may discover about your voice?) What's important to remember is that you don't have to read this book from cover to cover to improve your singing; look for the topics you need and use both the exercises and the online tracks to develop your best voice.

The online tracks are an important partner to your book. You can find them at www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e. The exercises work the technical info that you read about in the book. You hear a pattern played for you on the piano, a singer demonstrates the pattern for you, and the pattern is repeated several times for you to sing along. Just singing songs is cool, but you want to work on technique to get your songs to sound great. If you work on the articulation exercises on the tracks and then apply that information and skill to songs, you can sing with great skill and be understood. If you've never had lessons, you may not see the benefit of the exercises in the beginning, or they may seem difficult. Keep trying them during your practice sessions, and you may see how quickly the exercises can help you to sing.

Chapter 10 gives you ideas on developing a practice routine to coordinate all the information that you read in the book with what you hear on the online tracks. After you plot out your practice routine, keep the tracks handy so you can choose which tracks to practice. Sing along during your regular practice sessions or in your car as you drive. That's cool, as long as you pay attention to your driving.

Because many people respond quickly to imagery, I include ways to use imagery to help you improve your singing. Knowing the mechanics works well for some singers, and others prefer knowing what to think about or visualize as they sing. If you want to know what to listen for, I give you that information as well. I also explain the exercises by having you do something physical. Sometimes just feeling the movement in your body gets the idea across. Whatever way you prefer to use, you can find it in this book.

Here are some conventions that I use throughout this book:

- I spell out the vowel sound for you or use symbols found in Webster's dictionary, because that's most common to new singers and nonsingers.
- Throughout the book you have opportunities to sing specific vowel sounds. One vowel sound may need a little explanation. I use the shape "a" for the vowel sound in the words cat, hat, or Matt. For the vowel sound in the words father, plaza, or blah, I use "*ah.*" You can practice these sounds in Chapter 8 so you know what to do when you see them in other places in the book.
- Musical styles continue to change and the terms used to describe the styles also continue to change. If you read the history of pop or rock music, you'll see a long list of titles to describe each era. I use the term *pop-rock* for songs that can cross over into both styles. It's common to see a great song listed on the hit-song list for different styles of music. In Chapter 14 you can read about the sounds used in different styles, but know that *pop-rock* refers to a song that could fit in either style.

» I use musical examples throughout the book to give you a visual explanation of the exercises on the online tracks. You can read an explanation about musical notation in Chapter 1. There you find information about how the little circles on the page correspond with the notes on the piano and the notes you'll sing in specific parts of your range.

Foolish Assumptions

Because you're reading this book, I assume that you have an interest in singing and discovering how to improve your singing. You don't need any previous knowledge about singing. You can find information for beginners, as well as advanced information for singers who have some experience.

Icons Used in This Book

PLAY THIS

This icon tells you that a track on the online tracks at `www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e` corresponds to the information in the chapter.

REMEMBER

This information is so helpful that you should store it in your memory bank.

TECHNICAL STUFF

This icon highlights detailed explanations that you may find really interesting or may just want to skip right over.

TIP

The Tip icon emphasizes good advice from someone who has already made the mistake and wants to save you the trouble.

WARNING

To avoid making a blunder or injuring your voice, pay attention to what these paragraphs have to say.

Beyond This Book

In addition to what you're reading in the print or e-book, you can check out some extra goodies and reference them when you want, check out the Cheat Sheet at www.dummies.com and search for "Singing For Dummies Cheat Sheet." You can also find the audio files of the example tracks at http://www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e.

Where to Go from Here

If you have no singing experience, you may want to start with Chapter 1 and work your way through the chapters in order. However, this book is designed to allow you to jump in anywhere you want and start swimming through information that's completely understandable. If you have some singing experience, choose whatever chapter appeals to you. You may have to refer to other chapters occasionally if you missed a definition, but otherwise, you're free to roam the chapters at your own pace and in any order. As you work through the exercises in this book, you want to have the basic technical skills of breathing (see Chapter 4) and tone (see Chapters 5 and 6) readily available. If you find yourself struggling, you may want to go straight to Chapter 3 to make sure that you have proper singing posture.

1 Exploring Singing Basics

IN THIS PART . . .

Find out about different voice types and figure out which category fits your voice.

Understand that great posture can get your body lined up and ready to sing your best.

Discover the importance of air moving in and out of your body to keep the glorious sounds coming out.

Focus on tone, which allows you to improve on the sounds you're already making or tweak your tone a little if your engine knocks rather than hums.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Thinking about your voice type
- Starting with the basics: Posture, breath, and tone
- Getting familiar with the different parts of your voice
- Starting to apply your vocal technique

Chapter 1
Preparing to Sing

So you're curious about singing. Whatever musical background and experience you have or don't have, this book has something to offer you. The book contains great exercises and online tracks that allow you to hear the exercise and sing along. If you're a beginner, welcome aboard. You can find out all kinds of cool info about singing in this book. This chapter provides an overview of all the great stuff you can encounter in the book.

Singing is one of the coolest means of expression out there. Singing well is about knowing how to work the parts that create the sound for singing. The chapters that you encounter in the book outline what you need to know in just the right sequence. You don't have to read them in the order written to get what you need. Some of the later chapters may be a little difficult if you don't have any singing experience. The only way to know is to jump right in and start reading on whatever topic interests you.

What You Want to Know Right from the Beginning

Before you choose the date for your first big concert or recital, you want to find out about singing. The first part of this book provides you with the big picture.

Determining your voice type

Singers usually are eager to determine their voice type because they want a category to belong to. You may have heard of the categories of singers:

- **Soprano:** Higher female voice
- **Mezzo:** Lower female voice
- **Tenor:** Higher male voice
- **Bass:** Lower male voice

If you aren't sure which one applies to your voice, explore Chapter 2. You can find explanations of what makes a soprano differ from a mezzo, or a tenor differ from a bass. You don't have to figure out your voice type today, but you can explore the chapter so you know what to listen for as you sing.

Locating the notes on the staff

Voice types are probably easier to figure out if you know where to find the notes on a musical staff. (See Figure 1-1 in this chapter.) The names of the notes are A, B, C, D, E, F, and G. Those notes repeat across the piano.

- The treble clef spaces correspond to the notes F, A, C, and E. Beginning on the bottom of the staff and going up, the notes spell face. You can use sentences to remember the other notes. Again, starting on the bottom line and moving up, the notes on the lines of the staff are E, G, B, D, and F, letters that begin the words of the sentence Every good boy does fine.
- For the bass clef, the spaces are A, C, E, and G, the letters that begin the sentences All cows eat grass or All cars eat gas. The lines in the bass clef are G, B, D, F, and A, which correspond to Good boys do fine always. If you prefer animals, then use Great big dogs fight animals.

If I say that a singer's range is Middle C to High C, I have to use ledger lines to notate those two notes because they're not within the five-line staff. Ledger lines are extra lines added above or below the staff for notes that are higher or lower than the notes on the staff. When you find Middle C in Figure 1-1, you can see the extra line added below the staff. The easiest way to find Middle C on the piano is to look at the brand name printed on or above the lid covering the keys. If you find that brand name, the C right in the middle of that name, or just to the left, is usually Middle C.

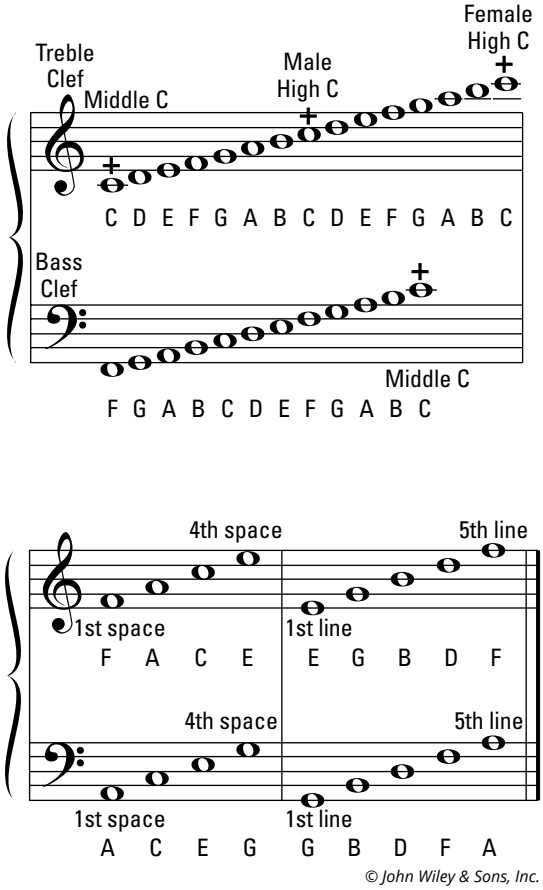


FIGURE 1-1: Locating notes on the staff.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

REMEMBER

Middle C is called Middle C because it's in the middle of the keyboard that contains 88 keys. Middle C is also called C4, because it's the fourth C on the keyboard. If Middle C is C4, then the next C above is C5, and so on. C is the note just to the left of the pair of black keys. The distance between the two Cs is called an octave. If you start counting at the first *C* and count eight white notes up, you find another C. That means the E just above Middle C (C4) is E4. Easy enough, but not every person you encounter knows this system, so I stick to what works: Middle C.

You also encounter the words flat and sharp in this book. A *flat* lowers a pitch a half step and a sharp raises the pitch a half step. F-sharp is the black key on the piano between F and G. The same black key between F and G can be called G-flat.

Considering posture, breath, and tone

First, you want to get yourself aligned — that is, line up all your body parts to get ready to sing — and then explore your breathing. Breathing while singing is different from breathing normally, because you have to take in more air and use more air over a longer period of time. When you get the air flowing, you can explore the tone of your voice.

- **Correcting posture for a better sound:** Posture is important in singing well. If all the parts for singing are lined up correctly, you stand a really good chance of getting wonderful sounds to come flying out of your body. Knowing how to stand isn't rocket science, but it may take a little adjustment on your part. If you aren't used to standing tall all the time, you may feel a bit awkward at first. Chapter 3 explores posture for singing.
- **Knowing the keys to proper breathing:** The big key to great singing is knowing how to use your breath to make the sounds. You may not know how to get much breath in your body and then make it last throughout a long phrase. If you check out Chapter 4, you can find all kinds of exercises and explanations on how to work on your breath so you can sing those long phrases in your favorite song.
- **Finding your tone:** Vocal tone is important because you want the best sounds to come out of your mouth. By exploring exercises on tone, you can make changes to your sound. People often tell me that they want to change the way they sound. To change your sound, you need to know how you create sound. The two chapters on tone, Chapters 5 and 6, give you quite a bit of information about how to start a note and then what to do to make the note sound a specific way.

Developing Your Singing Voice

When you have the basic information swimming around in your head, you can start to work on your singing voice. Chapters 6 through 9 offer you more specific information about how to create a sound that's unique to you. Sometimes singers try to imitate their favorite famous singer. A better idea is to sound like yourself. Your voice can be just as fabulous as that famous singer's. You just have to practice to develop it.

Following are some points to work on:

- **Filling the auditorium with resonance:** Resonance is the echoing of tone. In Chapter 7, you find out how to use resonance to project your voice. Singing

loudly makes a lot of sound, but using resonance allows you to project the sound over the orchestra to the back of the concert hall. Find out how your voice can resonate so Uncle Sam can hear you from the back row.

- **Fine-tuning vowels and consonants:** A long time ago in grade school, you had to work with vowels and consonants. Well, you can refresh your memory in Chapters 8 and 9. By making your vowels and consonants specific, you can make yourself easily understood when you're singing. You've probably heard someone sing but couldn't understand a word they said. It's even worse when the song is in a language that you speak. By knowing how to articulate vowels and consonants, you can create specific sounds that your audience can follow.
- **Warming up your voice:** Practice makes perfect! After you discover all this great information about singing, you need to develop a plan for practicing it on a regular basis. If practicing seems like a foreign concept to you, check out Chapter 10. The whole chapter is devoted to helping you figure out what to do when you warm up and how to apply the exercises that you read about in the book to your daily practice routine. Because you can explore so much, make a list of what you want to accomplish today, and then add more to that list each time that you practice.

Working the Different Parts of Your Voice

Your goal is to make your singing voice sound like one smooth line from top to bottom. Your voice may have a few bumps and wiggles as you work your way up and down. That's perfectly normal, but help is right at hand. Chapters 11 and 12 work with specific areas of the voice called *registers* — chest voice, middle voice, and head voice. In these chapters, you can discover what each part of the voice feels like and what to do with it. When you're ready, try these tips:

- **Strengthening your middle, chest, and head voice to get a complete vocal workout:** The first step in the workout for the voice is to find the different registers of the voice and then notice what each feels like. After you find them, you want to try to smooth the transition between registers. You may find that your chest voice and head voice feel miles apart. The exercises in Chapters 11 and 12 are designed to help you smooth out the bumps. You may not think the exercises are easy in the beginning, which is good. I don't want you to be bored. Even if you've never explored any vocal sounds, you can figure out these exercises and get your voice in good working order — it just takes some time and patience.

Chapter 12 helps you refine your register transitions and extend your range. Some songs require flexibility, and the exercises in the chapter help you develop agility and even try out your agility in some pop riffs.

- **Adding belting technique to your list of skills:** Your speaking voice needs a workout to get you started on belting. Belting is the sound that you want to make for musical theater or pop-rock songs. The exercises start from the beginning, so you don't have to know anything about belting to take on the information in Chapter 13.

Applying Your Technique

After you explore your technique through the exercises that I provide, you need to take the next step. Chapters 14 through 18 are about applying your technique. At some point, you want to apply that healthy technique to songs. You also want to maintain your healthy technique and a healthy voice at all times. When your technique is really cooking, you can explore Chapters 19 and 20, about moving your technique into a performance situation. Performances can be big or small. Whatever the size of the audience, you want to look like a pro and feel good about what you're doing onstage.

To start applying your technique when singing songs for yourself or others, consider the following:

- **Training for singing:** Finding a voice teacher can be tricky. When you find the right teacher, the experience can be rewarding. If you aren't sure how to go about finding a teacher, explore the tips and suggestions in Chapter 15. Finding the teacher may be the most difficult part. After you answer the questions in Chapter 15, you'll have a better idea of what you want from voice lessons. Whether or not you hire a voice teacher, you can check out Chapter 14 for information about training to sing different styles of music. Knowing what's required of your voice allows you to dive right into the right chapters.
- **Choosing appropriate singing material:** Finding new songs to sing can be overwhelming. You have so many choices, but how do you know what works for you? The clues are in Chapter 16. The lists there offer suggestions on what to look for and what to avoid when choosing songs. Whether you want a song to sing for your own pleasure or a song for a specific function, you want a song that accentuates your strengths.

For more suggestions of songs, you can explore Appendix A for a list of suggested songs for enhancing your singing technique. The songs cover different styles of music, from classical to country. After you choose the song you want to sing, check out Chapter 17 for some tips on how to conquer the song in a short amount of time.

- **Feeling comfortable with the music and text:** In Chapter 18, you can explore acting to combine with your singing. Sounding good when you sing is great, but you want to sound good and understand the story behind the music. You don't have to know anything about acting to explore this chapter; it's all right there for you.
- **Overcoming performance anxiety:** If your daydreams of singing are clouded with anxiety about singing in front of an audience, Chapter 19 is just for you. By confronting your fear and taking charge, you can make progress and let go of the anxiety. You only add pressure to your performance if you assume that you're supposed to be totally calm. Many famous performers get nervous before a performance. After exploring Chapter 19, you'll know that it's fine to be nervous, but you can still sing while nervous.
- **Nailing your audition:** So many singers dream of auditioning for a Broadway show or entering a singing competition that I wrote a whole chapter about auditioning your song. Chapter 20 has information for you on what to expect at the audition, what you may have to sing or do, and how to prepare for the audition. Because an audition for a musical is different from an audition for an opera, you want to know what's kosher and what's not.

Having Fun

Singing is about more than just alignment and technique — although, of course those considerations are important. If you concentrate only on the technical aspect of singing, you may end up singing from your head rather than your heart. Remember to let loose every once in a while and have fun with it!

Some performers are really amazing onstage — obviously having fun — and they also have great technique. Check out Chapter 21 to see whether any of your favorite singers made my list of performers with great technique. And if you want your performance to be spectacular, Chapter 24 has some great tips on performing like a pro. Before your big performance, check out Chapter 22 for answers to the most commonly asked questions about singing, and see Chapter 23 for information on keeping your voice healthy. Maintaining a healthy voice is important. Your vocal cords are really small, and you want to take good care of them. You can also read about medications and other factors that influence your singing voice. A healthy voice and solid technique will keep you singing for years to come.

The online tracks at www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e that come with the book are a great tool to help you keep polishing your technique. The singers on the files have two things in common with you:

- They all love singing.
- They all have a group of exercises they use to keep their technique in tip-top shape.

You may think that only classical singers have a vocal workout routine, but that's not true. Some famous singers even post videos of themselves practicing before they walk out on stage and sing their pop-rock tunes. Check out the different singers on the tracks that range from a rapper, belters, pop singers, musical theater performers, classical singers, and different voice types of all shapes and sizes to see if you can tell what style of music they perform.

You may be surprised that the type of singer isn't always obvious just by listening to them warm up. Before and after recording the tracks, each singer laughed a lot and experienced the challenge of demonstrating a specific sound just for you.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Understanding the highs and lows of voice types
- Discovering the voice type categories
- Finding out where you fit in

Chapter 2
Determining Your Voice Type

Finding your voice type is a challenge because several ingredients combine to create a voice type. You don't have to know your voice type if you're singing for your own enjoyment, but you may be curious to find out. If you aspire to sing professionally or do some professional auditions, you definitely want to know your voice type. You'll be asked at the audition, so you want to know that answer before someone asks. Chapter 20 has more info about auditions.

Determining your voice type — soprano or mezzo-soprano for women, tenor or bass for men — enables you to choose songs that are most appropriate for you. After you figure out what category you fit into, check out Appendix A for a list of songs suitable for your voice type. Read on to explore how each voice type sounds and how to determine where your voice fits.

Sifting through the Ingredients to Figure Out Your Voice Type

Think of a voice type as a series of ingredients mixed together to create a unique-tasting dessert. For singing, the ingredients combine to create a unique-sounding voice. The four common voice types are soprano, mezzo-soprano (often called mezzo), tenor, and bass (the next section, "Identifying the Fab Four," tells you all about these four voice types). These five ingredients determine a voice type:

- **Age:** Many singers are assigned a voice type as young singers, but voices change with age. The muscles in the larynx continue growing and developing into the early 20s. Think about the last time you made a phone call and heard the sound of a stranger's voice. Even if you didn't know the person on the other end, you could guess their age by listening to their speaking voice. Because speaking voices and singing voices change with age, wait until your body is finished growing to determine your voice type.
- **Range:** *Range* is all the notes a singer can hit — including the highest note, the lowest note, and all the notes between. Beginning singers usually have a shorter range than more advanced singers, because the high notes or low notes get stronger with practice. As you practice the exercises with this book and accompanying online tracks, your range can expand whether you're a beginner or an advanced singer. Knowing your range helps you figure out your voice type, because a bass can sing lower than a tenor, and a soprano can sing higher than a contralto. The factors that most affect how you determine your voice type are range, in which part of your range you're most comfortable singing, and register transitions.
- **Register:** *Register* refers to a series of adjacent notes that sound similar, are produced in a similar fashion, and have a similar tonal quality. The notes sound similar because the same muscles produce them and they often vibrate in a similar location in a singer's body. The transitions between the registers can help you determine your voice type. Keep reading this chapter to find out where each voice type feels transitions to help you decide whether your voice does something similar. The transitions in your voice may change as your voice develops. (Chapter 11 has more on registers.)

TECHNICAL STUFF

The range of the voice where a singer is most comfortable is called tessitura. If you hear the word tessitura used in a discussion about a song, in that case, it refers to the area where most of the notes lie in the song. The tessitura of a Stevie Wonder song is quite high, because he's comfortable singing a lot of high notes. The tessitura for "God Bless America" and most folk songs is lower. Knowing where your voice is most comfortable, as well as where it's uncomfortable, is a determining factor when it comes to voice type.

- **Tone of voice:** Each voice has a specific tonal quality or timbre. Words that describe tone include strident, dark, bright, metallic, ringing, and shrill. When determining a voice type, the voice tone helps you further determine your category. The tone of voice for a tenor is often much brighter than the tone of voice for a bass.
- **Voice strength:** Knowing your voice strength also helps you determine your voice type. Sopranos and tenors have a stronger head voice than mezzos and basses. Likewise, mezzos and basses have a stronger, meatier middle voice than sopranos and tenors. (Chapter 11 gives you details on head voice and middle voice.)

REMEMBER

Don't classify yourself too quickly based on the preceding factors. For the general purposes of singing, focus on building great technique and see how your voice responds. Your voice tells you what voice type it really is; you just have to know how to look and listen.

Identifying the Fab Four

The four voice types are soprano, mezzo, tenor, and bass. Even though these names sound like characters in a mob movie, I promise you that they're nothing to be afraid of. In the upcoming sections, you discover specific traits about each voice type: the range, register transitions, voice tone, and any subdivisions of that voice type, as well as the names of a few famous singers to help you put a sound with the voice type.

REMEMBER

Note that when I talk about register transitions, they don't occur on just one note. That's because not all sopranos (or mezzos, tenors, or basses) are the same.

If you're confused after reading about all the voice types, remember that naming your voice type today isn't absolutely necessary. After you read the descriptions of the voice types in this chapter, you may be ready to vote soprano over mezzo or bass over tenor for now. Try that range for a while and see whether it fits well. The takeaway from this chapter is to figure out your voice type if you want. If you're singing most styles of music, your voice type won't matter as much as figuring out if your voice can sing all the notes in the song you like.

Developing your technique helps you sing more advanced music in any style. Figuring out your voice type can be fun, but it can also take a while to know which category suits you. Remember that your voice will tell you what it can do physically today and then those skills will improve over time and you may end up choosing a different voice type later. It's much harder to tell if a singer on the

radio is a specific voice type. They may have refined their chest voice but not spent time developing their head voice. A singer may sound like a mezzo, but they might be a soprano who just doesn't perform songs that have higher notes.

TIP

Listen to recordings of singers and read about what they've sung during their careers. If you know of singers who have voices similar to yours, look at the songs they sang.

- **What's the timbre of your voice?** Is the tone more steely than chocolaty? Steely isn't a negative adjective; it's merely fact. Very often the steely voice is the character audiences love, but they don't want to rush up and put their arms around them and rescue them.
- **Is your voice light and flutelike?** Is your voice loud and heavy even when you're lightly singing? Heavy means the sound that you're making is loud even when you're singing comfortably. Voices that are a little heavy are *full* and heavy voices are called *dramatic*.
- **What's your singing range and tessitura?** The difference between a mezzo and a soprano often is tessitura. The mezzo can sing the high notes but doesn't want to live up there, and the soprano wants to sing one high note after another. If you're new to singing, you may not be able to tell the difference between a soprano and a mezzo or a baritone and a tenor. No worries. Keep listening to the sounds, and you'll eventually be able to tell the difference between the voice types.
- **Are you able to move your voice easily?** Do you enjoy the fast passages in the song and think of them as fun? If the fast notes are easy for you, you can add coloratura to your vocal description. The coloraturas demonstrate some spectacular fast moves with their voices.
- **What do you consider the general or overall strengths of your voice — strong middle voice or head voice, perhaps?** Your vocal strengths change as you practice. Notice the differences in the voices in the naming names lists that follow. Compare and contrast the sounds you hear between voice types to hear their strengths.

REMEMBER

If you're new to singing, determining your voice type by yourself may take a few months. Your voice changes with practice. So have fun listening and sorting through all the different types.

Highest range of the dames: Soprano

The *soprano* has the highest range of the female voice types. The following aspects are characteristic of her voice type:

- **Range:** Often Middle C to High C, although some sopranos can vocalize way beyond High C and much lower than Middle C (see Figure 2-1).

  A soprano is expected to have a High C, and many sopranos can sing up to the G or A above High C. Choral directors or musical directors listen for the singer's comfort zone when determining whether the singer is a soprano. Although a mezzo can reach some of these higher notes, a soprano is comfortable singing high notes more frequently than a mezzo.

- **Register transitions:** The transitions usually occur as the soprano shifts out of chest voice around the E-flat just above Middle C and into her head voice around F-sharp (fifth line on top of the staff) in the octave above Middle C.

- **Strength:** A soprano's strength is a strong head voice.

- **Voice tone:** The soprano voice is usually bright and ringing.

- **Weakness:** Sopranos have a hard time projecting in middle voice.

TECHNICAL STUFF

- Soprano subdivisions in the classical world include light lyric, full lyric, light lyric coloratura, full lyric coloratura, light dramatic coloratura, full dramatic coloratura, light dramatic (or spinto), and full dramatic. See the information in the nearby sidebar about subdivisions.

- **Soprano belter:** A soprano belter has an easier time managing her chest voice for belting and usually belts higher than a mezzo. Check out these names to hear some soprano belters: Morissette Amon, Whitney Houston, Kelly Clarkson, Pattie LaBelle, Cyndi Lauper, Olivia Newton-John, and Kellie Pickler.

- **Common performance roles:** The soprano is usually the lead in the show, such as Ariel in *The Little Mermaid,* Marian the Librarian in *The Music Man,* Tosca in *Tosca,* Mabel in *The Pirates of Penzance,* and Mimi in *La Bohème.*

- **Naming names:** Famous sopranos you may know include Julie Andrews, Martina Arroyo, Kristen Bell, Monserrat Caballé, Sumi Jo, Leontyne Price, Audra McDonald, Dolly Parton, and Diana Ross.

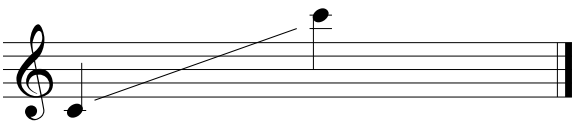


FIGURE 2-1: Soprano range.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

How low can she go: Mezzo

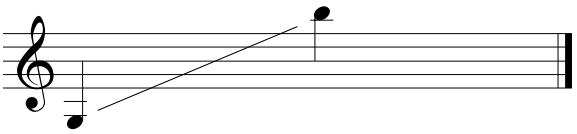
The difference between a *mezzo* (mezzo is the abbreviated term for mezzo-soprano) and a soprano is often *tessitura.* (Tessitura refers to where most of the notes lie in a song — the notes that a voice feels most comfortable singing.) Many mezzos can sing as high as a soprano, but they can't stay as high as a soprano. For example, some roles in operatic literature require the mezzo to sing as high as the soprano lead, but the mezzo usually doesn't have to sing as many high notes as a soprano does — thank goodness — because the mezzo comfort zone is usually different than the soprano; mezzos prefer to live in their middle voices. On the other hand, a soprano hates to live in her middle voice, preferring to sing high notes and soar above the orchestra.

To further confuse you, many sopranos sing mezzo repertoire. How dare they! That's not fair, but it's a fact. As in other aspects of life, after the soprano becomes famous, she sings repertoire that she enjoys and that may be music written for somebody else, such as mezzos. So just because a soprano sings a song doesn't mean that it's a soprano song. You have to look at the details, such as the range of the song, and decide whether that range fits your voice. Keep the following in mind:

- **Range:** The mezzo range is usually G below Middle C to a High B or High C. Many mezzos vocalize as high as a soprano but can't handle the repetition of the upper notes (see Figure 2-2).
- **Register:** The register transitions for the mezzo usually occur at E or F (first space) just above Middle C, and the E or F (fifth line) one octave above that.
- **Strength:** Mezzos have a strong middle voice.
- **Voice tone:** The mezzo voice is usually darker or deeper than her soprano counterpart.
- **Weakness:** A mezzo's head voice is often her weakness.
- **Subdivisions:** One subdivision of mezzo is contralto. Singers often mistakenly say that they're altos. Alto is the part listed in choral music, but the voice type is either mezzo or contralto. Less common than mezzos, contraltos can usually sing from F below Middle C to about an F (fifth line) below High C. A contralto has a darker, richer tone and is more at home in the lower part of her voice. Sometimes singers darken their voices intentionally to make themselves sound like contraltos. The contralto may take her chest voice–dominated sound up to a G (second line) above Middle C and shift into head voice around the D (fourth line), an octave above Middle C. Examples of contraltos include Marian Anderson and Maureen Forrester.

- **Mezzo subdivisions in the classical world** include light lyric coloratura, full lyric coloratura, light lyric, full lyric, and dramatic. The dramatic mezzo is similar to the dramatic soprano. To be fair to the sopranos, I confess that dramatic mezzos sometimes sing roles written for the dramatic soprano. You go, girls!
- **Mezzo belter:** A mezzo belter doesn't belt as high as the soprano belter. She has a heavier chest voice and is more comfortable singing material that's lower. Listen to these singers to hear the sounds of mezzo belters: Adele, Pearl Bailey, Kaye Ballard, Carol Burnett, Carol Channing, Janet Jackson, Angela Lansbury, Rihanna, and Leslie Uggams.
- **Common performance roles:** The mezzo is often the mother, the witch, or the sleazy girl in town. Her roles include such fun ones as Miss Hannigan in *Annie,* Mrs. Potts in *Beauty and the Beast,* Carmen in the opera *Carmen,* Amneris in *Aïda,* and Aunt Eller in *Oklahoma!*
- **Naming names:** Famous mezzos you may know include Teresa Berganza, Toni Braxton, Grace Bumbry, Karen Carpenter, Patsy Cline, Denyce Graves, k. d. lang, Lorrie Morgan, and Shirley Verrett (mezzo who later became a soprano). Unless you hear the pop singer vocalize, it's harder to tell if they're a soprano or mezzo.

You can find more information about selecting appropriate songs for your voice in Chapter 16 and a list of songs for different voice types in Appendix A.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 2-2: Mezzo range.

Highest range of the dudes: Tenor

Thanks to the Three Tenors, the Irish Tenors, and even Three Mo' Tenors, you probably have a good idea of what a *tenor* sounds like. The following can help:

- **Range:** The tenor range, shown in Figure 2-3, is about two octaves, with many singing a little lower than C (second space in bass clef) and a little higher than the male High C (third space treble clef).
- **Register:** The tenor voice doesn't make a huge transition from his lower voice to his middle voice. His transition into his middle voice occurs around D just

above Middle C or the E-flat just above Middle C and then a transition into head voice around G or A-flat above Middle C.

- **Strength:** The tenor's strength is his head voice.
- **Voice tone:** The tenor voice is usually bright and ringing.
- **Weakness:** His weakness is often his chest voice.
- **Subdivisions:** In musical theater, a subdivision of the tenor, called the *baritenor,* reigns. This voice type is someone with the power to project in the middle voice and the higher, ringing money notes of the tenor. The other voice type that you frequently hear in the opera world is the *countertenor* — a male singer who sounds like a female. This voice type sings in the same range as the mezzo (sometimes soprano) and sounds similar. When you've heard the countertenor singing enough, you can distinguish him from a mezzo. Until then, just enjoy the unique quality that these gentlemen bring to the singing world.

TECHNICAL STUFF

- **Tenor subdivisions in the classical world** include light lyric, full lyric, dramatic, and heroic. The heroic tenor is also called a dramatic tenor or *heldentenor* — the guy who has a large voice with great stamina. Don't challenge him to a singing contest at the local pub.
- **Common performance roles:** The tenor is almost always the lead who wins the girl at the end of the show. Examples include Rodolfo in *La Bohème,* Don José in *Carmen,* Tony in *West Side Story,* Billy in *42nd Street,* and Rolf in *The Sound of Music.*
- **Naming names:** Famous tenors you may know include Plácido Domingo, José Carreras, and Luciano Pavarotti, whom you may recognize as the Three Tenors. You also may know Elton John, Jonas Kaufmann, Bruno Mars, Maxwell, Justin Timberlake, and Stevie Wonder.

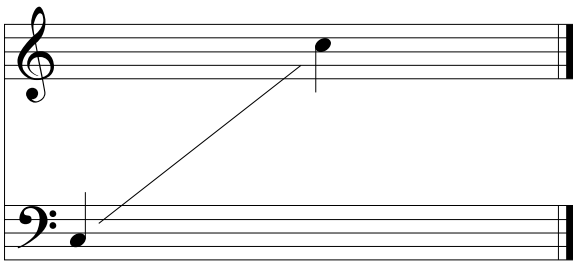


FIGURE 2-3: Tenor range.

C one octave below Middle C to C one octave above Middle C

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

He's so low: Bass

Bass is the lowest of the voice types. The bass is the guy who sings all the cool low notes in the barbershop quartet. Here are some characteristics:

- **Range:** His range is usually F (below the bass clef staff) to E (first line treble clef) but can be as wide as E-flat to F (see Figure 2-4).
- **Register transitions:** The bass changes from chest voice into middle voice around A or A-flat just below Middle C and changes into head voice around D or D-flat just above Middle C.
- **Strength:** His chest voice is his strength.
- **Voice tone:** His voice is the deepest, darkest, and heaviest of the male voices.
- **Weakness:** His head voice is his weakness.
- **Subdivisions:** Filling in the middle between tenor and bass is the baritone. *Baritones* are very common. Young bass singers often start out as a baritone and then the voice changes. The baritone can usually sing from an A (first space bass clef) to F (first space treble clef) below the male High C. The bass-baritone has some height of the baritone and some depth of the bass; his range is usually A-flat (first space bass clef) to F (first space treble clef) and sometimes as high as G below the male High C. The baritone's register transitions usually occur at the B or B-flat just below Middle C and the E or E-flat above Middle C.

- **Bass subdivisions** include the comic bass (funny guy in the show), as well as lyric and dramatic bass. His subdivision buddy, the baritone, also comes in different shapes and sizes: light lyric baritone, full lyric baritone, and bass baritone.
- **Common performance roles:** The bass or baritone is often the villain, father, or older man. Examples include Ramfis in *Aïda,* the Mikado in *The Mikado,* and Jud Fry in *Oklahoma!* Some exceptions to this villain image are King Arthur in *Camelot,* Porgy in *Porgy and Bess,* and the Toreador in *Carmen.*
- **Naming names:** Famous basses you may know include Kurt Moll, René Pape, and Samuel Ramey. Famous bass-baritones include Trace Adkins, José van Dam, Simon Estes, William Warfield, and Barry White. Baritones include Brian Stokes Mitchell, John Raitt, and Tom Wopat.

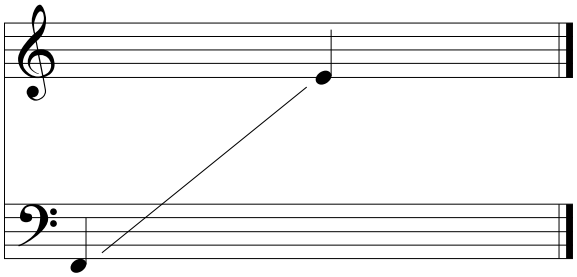


FIGURE 2-4: Bass range.

F about an octave and a half below Middle C to E above Middle C

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

VOCAL SUBDIVISIONS

In classical music or the opera world, voice types can be further divided into categories based on the size and agility of the voice. The first four terms are in order like the soda sizes at the fast-food joint. Light is the small, lightweight cup, and dramatic is the cup so large that it won't fit in the cup holder in your car.

- **Light:** A bright, youthful, agile voice.
- **Lyric:** A medium-sized voice with a warm color that's comfortable singing long, even phrases. *Lyric* is appropriate for a romantic character.
- **Full:** A louder, stronger voice that doesn't necessarily sing fast lines as easily as a light voice.
- **Dramatic:** A voice that's even louder than a full voice and sings a heavier repertoire, such as Wagner. *Dramatic* voices can peel the paint off the wall from 50 paces. These voices are big and heavier than full lyric voices; they aren't known for subtlety — they're all about power and strength.
- **Coloratura:** A flexible voice that moves easily through fast lines in the music.

A singer can be a mix of the terms in the preceding list. For example, a light lyric coloratura refers to a medium-sized light voice that moves easily. Seeing the words combined to describe a voice type isn't so confusing if you understand the definition of each descriptive word. However, only in the classical world is it important for you to know how your voice fits within this list. Don't worry about the specific kind of category you're in until you get some training.

Comparing voice types

To get a better idea of voice types, check out these singers and songs to compare sounds of different voice types. If you're a classical music fan, the info ahead is just for you. Not a classical music fan? Skip ahead to the section, "Not at the opera," or jump back to the list of Naming Names under each voice type for some singers you hear on the radio. Or keep reading to figure out what those classical music nuts are going on about.

At the opera

The classical music world goes all out for voice types. The types of voices you may have read about in the previous sections seems complicated. To uncomplicate things, type in these names and pieces in your favorite search engine to hear the sounds that go with the names. This is the list I wanted when I was first figuring out voice types.

- **Soprano:** To get the hang of the sopranos, search online for recordings of lighter soprano, Kathleen Battle singing "O mio babbino caro" from *Gianni Schicchi* by Puccini and then listen to dramatic soprano Jessye Norman singing "Dich, theure Halle" from *Tannhäuser* by Wagner. Note that Kathleen's voice is light and Jessye's voice is much heavier. Look for recordings of them individually singing "Ave Maria" by Schubert to hear them singing the same song.
- **Mezzo:** Compare light mezzo, Frederica von Stade singing "Non so più" from *Le Nozze di Figaro* by Mozart with Denyce Graves singing "Ave Maria" by Caccini. Both are mezzos, but there is a big difference in the timbre and depth of the voices.
- **Coloratura ladies:** Look for soprano Natalie Dessay singing "Der Hölle Rache" from *Die Zauberflöte* by Mozart and compare with mezzo-soprano Cecilia Bartoli singing "Non più mesta" from *La Cenerentola* by Rossini. Both are spectacular at agility, but note the range where they're comfortable singing.
- **Tenor:** Compare lyric tenor George Shirley singing "Un'aura amorosa" from *Così fan tutte* by Mozart with heldentenor Jonas Kaufmann singing "Nessun dorma" from *Turandot* by Puccini. Listen to the difference in the weight of Kaufman's voice compared to the lyrical tone from Shirley.
- **Baritone/bass:** The baritone and bass voice have some similarities, but one difference is the depth on the low notes. Compare baritone Dmitri Hvorostovsky singing "Toreador Song" from *Carmen* by Bizet with bass René Pape singing "O Isis und Osiris" from *Die Zauberflöte* by Mozart. When comparing these two singers, you hear the difference between the height of the tone of the baritone with the depth of the bass.

- **Coloratura dudes:** Guys can have agile voices as you can hear comparing tenor Juan Diego Flórez singing "Ah, il più lieto" from *Il Barbiere di Siviglia* by Rossini with baritone Emiliano Géant singing "Se bramate d'amar" from *Serse* by Händel. These guys really move their voices with ease but note the range where they're comfortable singing.

Not at the opera

Because these fabulous performers ahead aren't vying for roles in the opera, the comparison is on the weight and comfort zone of the voice instead of trying to determine an exact subdivision of the voice type:

- **Higher female voice:** Compare the light sounds from soprano Olivia Newton-John singing "Hopelessly Devoted To You" with Kelly Clarkson singing "Since You Been Gone." When Newton-John sings, you hear a bright and light voice compared with the fuller sounds of Clarkson's voice. Clarkson has a lot of weight in her voice. In other words, her voice sounds heavier compared to lighter Newton-John.
- **Lower female voices:** Listen to Beyoncé singing "Halo" and Adele singing "Hello." They both comfortably sing an octave below Middle C in the songs, but the big difference is when they start moving higher. Beyoncé narrows her sound as she ascends, making it sound easy for her to belt that high whereas Adele has much more weight in her voice. High sopranos would find it difficult to sing these two low songs much less stay that low, yet these two women are comfortable singing low in their range.
- **Comparing a higher and lower female voice:** For bright and high sounds listen to Cyndi Lauper singing "Girls Just Want to Have Fun" compared with the deeper and lower voice of Karen Carpenter singing "Rainy Days and Mondays." Both are terrific performers, but there is a difference in the timbre of the voices. The songs have a difference in their ranges, and both show the comfort zone of the performer. Lauper is super comfortable singing high whereas Carpenter is comfortable singing low.
- **Higher male voice:** Compare Maxwell singing "Pretty Wings" with David Phelps singing "I Have Nothing." Maxwell is singing high notes, but it sounds easy because he's so comfortable singing in that tessitura (the tessitura or comfort zone of his voice is high.) Phelps also sings high, but the weight of his voice makes those same notes sound heavier or fuller. Phelps's voice is heavier or fuller whereas Maxwell's voice is lighter.

- **Lower male voices:** Compare the sounds of baritone Darius Rucker singing "Wagon Wheels" with bass-baritone Josh Turner singing "Your Man." Both sound lower than the tenor, but Rucker has more height in the tone compared to Turner who has more depth especially on low notes. Turner has deeper notes so he sounds like a bass-baritone, and Rucker sounds more like a baritone.
- **Comparing higher and lower male voices:** Compare tenor Justin Timberlake singing "Can't Stop The Feeling!" with baritone John Raitt singing "Shenandoah" and bass-baritone Paul Robeson singing "Some Enchanted Evening" from *South Pacific*. When you hear these three voices in a row, you can hear how the baritone voice fits right in the middle between the tenor and the bass-baritone.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Checking out your carriage and bearing
- Striking the right stance to help you sing
- Lengthening, limbering, and getting ready to sing

Chapter 3

Aligning Your Body for Great Singing

To sing efficiently, you need to line up all your body parts and get them ready to do their job with as little tension as possible. If you're slumped over, you have more trouble taking the breath you need to sing because posture and tension directly affect the muscles. Tension in your body also prevents you from taking a deep breath and makes singing more difficult. In this chapter, you discover how to create spot-on, tension-free posture so you can project confidence and sing your best.

REMEMBER

In this chapter, I (gently) nag you about posture so you become physically aware of your body. In some of the exercises later in the book, you must find your alignment, open your body for breath, drop your jaw, find the correct shape for the vowel, move the breath to begin the tone, and look like you're having a great time. That's plenty to think about. Take some time now to really understand how your body moves and to recognize tension so you're ready later when I ask you to do ten things at once!

Evaluating Your Posture

In front of a full-length mirror, look at your posture. Notice the way you hold your body, especially your head, chest, hips, knees, arms, and hands. More than likely, after you looked in the mirror, you changed your posture. Did you change your posture because you thought your body may *work* better or because you thought you may *look* better? For singing, you evaluate your posture for both reasons. Aligning your body properly puts all the muscles that help you sing in the right position. Proper alignment gets you singing better and also makes you appear confident and professional.

Look at Figure 3-1 and check out the alignment of the skeleton. Take some time to study the skeleton and notice the connection of bones. Throughout the chapter, I point out the particular area of the skeleton you're aligning.

TIP

As you continue to evaluate your own posture, notice the posture of others. Observe their movements to better understand what you need to do to change your own alignment.

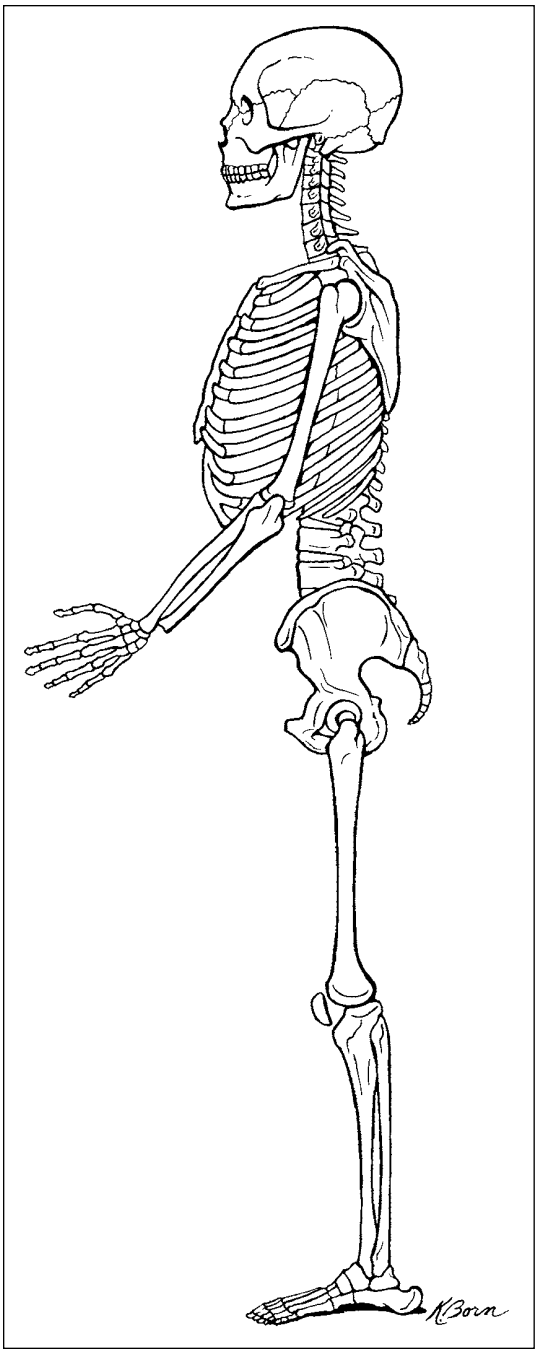


FIGURE 3-1: Ideal alignment of the skeleton.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Creating Ideal Posture

Creating ideal posture means finding out what ideal posture looks like and feels like so that you can quickly make whatever changes you need. By changing your posture, you control what kind of impression you make on others — whether you're on the stage singing or at the audition vying for the show's lead. Good posture keeps energy flowing instead of trapping it in one body part, and it also aligns your body for efficient breathing. See Chapter 4 for more information about breathing for singing. Read on for ways to align your body for great singing.

TIP

Nervous ticks, such as constant finger wiggling, frequent shifting of weight from one foot to the other, and roaming eyes, are examples of energy that isn't freely flowing throughout the body. If you catch yourself twisting your hands or wiggling your fingers frequently while singing, watch yourself in the mirror to become aware of the movement. Then allow yourself to move around as you sing to use that excess energy. After you move around, stand still but maintain that same freedom in your body, as if you may move at any moment. Freely flowing energy keeps you looking confident and singing well. Using your acting skills also gives your body something specific to do, so the random wiggles and twitches often subside. See Chapter 18 for more on acting and singing.

Feeling grounded on your feet

The root of good posture is the position of your feet and the balance of weight on your feet. Seems like the feet are a long way from the singing process, but equal distribution of weight on the feet allows all the muscles to stay released so you can make gorgeous sounds. Try this sequence to find the balance of weight on your feet.

1. **While you're standing, roll your foot to find the tripod.**

   Roll your foot on the floor to make a circle that moves from your heel through the outside of your foot, across your toes, and down the inside of your foot. As you roll the foot, you feel the heel bone in the back of your foot, a bone or protrusion under your little toe, and another protrusion or bone under your big toe. Roll among these three points several times so that you really feel the points. Some people call these three points the *tripod.*

   If you aren't sure whether you felt the tripod when you rolled your foot, sit down and feel along the bottom of your foot to find the three points. Take your time and feel each point. Look at the skeleton in Figure 3-1 and take special notice of the bones that make up the foot.

2. **When you're confident that you feel the three points on the foot, balance your weight on those three points.**

The phrase that the three-legged table is always level applies here. You want your weight evenly balanced on the three points. If you intentionally lean back and put your weight on your heels, you feel the front of your body tighten to hold you up. Likewise, if you lean forward and put your weight on the front of your feet, you feel the back of your body tighten. Watch yourself in the mirror or observe the tension in your body. Try to find the center, or the position where you're neither forward nor back; you're evenly balanced on your feet and aligned.

3. **When you find the three points and your balance on one foot, find them on the other foot.**

TIP

Practice standing with your weight balanced on the three points to make sure that you're not rolling your weight to the outside of your feet. Some people unconsciously stand with the inside of their feet raised and the outside of their feet pressed into the ground. This stance creates tension in your body. You can feel the tension on the outside of your legs when you press the outside of your feet into the floor. Watch yourself in the mirror to check that your feet are balanced on the three points.

Putting your feet in position

After you find the balance of weight on the feet, place your feet beneath your hips. If you place your hands on your hips, you can feel the muscles of your hips on the sides of your body and you can also feel your hipbone in the front. Directly under the hipbone is your foot (find the hipbone in Figure 3-1).

A lot of people tend to put their feet at shoulder width, which may or may not work for you. Women tend to have narrow shoulders and wider hips, whereas men tend to have wide shoulders and narrow hips. Regardless of the width of your shoulders, you want to align your feet under your hips.

I recommend that you place the feet parallel under your hips so that you feel the equal balance of weight on your feet. When that stance feels familiar to you, change the position of your feet and maintain the balance of weight in your body. You want equal distribution of weight and effort in the body. You can also stand with your toes pointed out, to feel the tension created in the legs. Likewise, you can stand with your toes pointed in and notice that effect on the muscles in your legs. You want to explore the feeling of toes pointed straight and the feeling of parallel feet.

TECHNICAL STUFF

Your toes may seem like cute little extensions of your feet, but they also play a role in your balance. Stand with your weight balanced on the three points. Now lift your toes and notice the sensations of the three points. Most people find that lifting the toes helps them feel the three points. You can put your toes down and feel the same sensation of balance on the three points. Push your toes into the floor

and notice the sensation in your feet and your legs. Pushing them down creates tension. Practice without your shoes on so that you can observe your feet and toes while you practice. During your practice sessions, wiggle your toes occasionally to make sure that they aren't tight and that they're ready to help you stay balanced. Notice the bones in the toes on the skeleton in Figure 3-1.

TIP

Pretend that you have a tube inside your body that runs all the way from your head down to your feet. Open this tube all the way into your feet each time you inhale. Opening this imaginary tube helps you feel grounded and ready to sing the next phrase of your song. Each time you inhale, you want to open and release all the way into your feet. It may feel as if your feet open or widen as you take the breath.

Flexing your ankles

You want your ankles open and flexible when you're standing. Sitting in a chair or standing on one leg, move your foot around to feel the flexibility in your ankle. If your ankle feels tight, take your time and move it gently back and forth or in circles to stretch the muscles and release some tension. Move around the other foot or ankle so both are equally released. After you stretch both ankles, notice how they feel. They probably feel open and flexible, as if they can support the weight of your body.

Look at Figure 3-1 to see how the foot and ankle are connected. The ankle isn't directly over the heel; it's in front of the heel. If you pretend to sink into your ankles, you feel as if your body is heavier, putting pressure on your ankles and feet. If you visualize a spring (shock absorber) in the ankles, you can feel an opening sensation in the feet and ankles, as if the weight of the body is equally distributed. Go back and forth a few times. Sink into your ankles and then put in the imaginary spring. You want to notice the spring not only when you're standing, but also when you're walking.

Engaging your legs

For singing, you want to engage the entire body in making sound. The legs are your support system, and you want them to hold you up without tightening. Try the following suggestion to discover how to engage your legs.

To feel the legs engage as you sing, use a plié as you take the breath. *Plié* means "to bend," and you want to bend your knees as you inhale. This bending helps you feel an opening sensation through your body and down into your legs. As you sing, you can gradually stand back up from the bend. With each new breath, plié again to create the opening sensation in your legs and gradually stand back up. After you practice this way for a few weeks, try singing a song without the plié or bend to see if you can find the same feeling of opening in your legs as you inhale and

engage as you sing. Review the skeleton in Figure 3-1; notice the bones in the legs and also the shape of the knees.

WARNING

For singing, you don't want to lock your knees or push your knees back. Locking your knees also locks your lower back, and you want your lower back to open for inhalation.

Instead, you want to keep your knees released. Released knees aren't locked — but they're also not bent. To find the difference between released knees and bent knees, stand and lock your knees by pushing the knee backward until the muscles around the knee lock. Without bending the knees, release the muscles around them. Lock the knees again, and when you release the muscles, bend your knees. Move back and forth from the locked position to the bent position. You want to feel the released position, which is between locked and bent. Bent knees make you a little shorter. Released knees keep you the same height, without tight muscles around your knees.

TIP

To prevent tension in your knees, you can visualize a spring in your knees or pretend that you have oil in your knees, like the Tin Man in the *Wizard of Oz*, so that they move smoothly. Try using the visual of the spring to feel the difference between weight evenly distributed through the legs and feet and sinking your weight into your legs and knees and creating tension.

Releasing your hips

Refer again to Figure 3-1 and look at the hips or pelvis. You may think of the hips as what you try to squeeze into your tight jeans. I want you to visualize the pelvis and not those extra 10 pounds you gained last winter. If you're familiar with the skeleton, you know that I'm talking about moving the pelvis when I say "rock your hips."

TIP

To find just the right position for your hips, rock back and forward — push your buttocks back and then push them forward. When you rock the hips back, you can feel the tension created in your lower back. That tension isn't good for singing. Rocking the hips forward helps you feel when they're too far forward — you feel like your hips are in front of your torso. Instead, you want your hips right underneath your torso, with your tailbone tucked under you.

When you're confident that you can feel when your hips are centered under you, you can move your hips from left to right. Many people stand with their hips sticking out to the left or right. That posture may be fine for casual conversation, but it's not helpful for singing. When your hips are off to one side, your back is out of alignment, causing tension. Watching yourself in the mirror, move your hips from left to right or front to back until you feel the centered position underneath

your torso. This centered position, neither front, back, right, nor left, is the ideal position for singing.

Because many people sink into their hips, you want to understand what it feels like to lift out of your hips. *Lifting out of your hips* means that you feel an opening between your hips and your torso. You can intentionally sink into your hips to feel the added pressure on your body. You may feel heavier and slumped when you sink into your hips. To lift out of your hips, feel the spring or shock absorber between your hips and torso, and imagine your torso rising out of your legs.

REMEMBER

The position of your feet affects your hips. As I discuss in the section, "Putting your feet in position," earlier in this chapter, you want to position your feet under your hipbones and keep your toes parallel. This position affects not only the muscles in your legs, but also the muscles in your hips and the positioning of the sit bones. The *sit bones,* or sitz bones, are the bony points of your pelvis that you may feel sticking out inside your buttocks. By positioning the hips and toes in just the right position, you allow the sit bones and hips to stay released and the muscles to stay open. You then have great posture and easy breathing for singing.

Lengthening your spine

The spine is the marvelous curvy set of bones stacked on top of each other inside your body. Figure 3-1 shows the natural curve of the spine. Tension in the spine causes tension for breathing. To lengthen and release the spine, you want to open and lengthen your body from the inside out. Visualize your spine as long and flexible, and feel the distance between your tailbone and your skull. For great posture, you want your tailbone under you and headed to the floor while your skull lifts to the sky. You don't want to feel a pulling sensation in your body; you want an opening and lengthening sensation. You can visualize space between each bone or vertebrae of your spine. Your spine connects with your rib cage, and you want your spine to lengthen and open with your rib cage.

Balancing your head and shoulders

At the top of the spine is your neck. The neck is supposed to be curved — check out the curve of the neck in the skeleton in Figure 3-1. If you remember the opening and lengthening of the spine from the previous section, you can continue that idea of lengthening through the neck up into the head so that the head balances on top of the spine. Think of the bobble-head dolls that sit on the dash of the car: The body of the dolls doesn't move, but the head bobs around. You want your head balanced that easily on top of your spine.

To feel the weight of your head, allow your head to feel heavy, as if it sits right on your shoulders. This weight and pressure doesn't feel good after a while, so you want to feel an opening up and lifting of the head that comes from inside the body. Trying to push up the head only causes tension in your neck. Your head weighs about the same as a bowling ball — it's pretty heavy, so it needs some help to stay up.

TIP

You can visualize your head balanced on top of your spine. The opposite of this sensation or visual is the head sinking or pressing down on top of the spine.

To keep your head balanced on your body, you want your shoulders to be evenly balanced. Your shoulders sit on top of your rib cage, and their position and balance are important. Roll your shoulders forward to feel how it stretches and curves your back and collapses your chest. Then roll your shoulders back to feel how it thrusts your chest forward. The ideal position for your shoulders is neither forward nor back, and pressing neither up nor down; it's an even balance.

When you move your shoulders, you can also feel your shoulder blades moving. If you tighten your shoulder blades, you feel tension in your rib cage. For good alignment, you want your shoulder blades open and released across your back; you want the shoulder blades to release downward as you inhale. To balance the shoulders, you also want to feel the connection between your arms and your chest. Look at Figure 3-1 to see the connection between the arms and shoulders and notice how the shoulders sit on top of the rib cage.

Releasing Tension

Releasing tension in your body allows for a more open sound and easier breathing. You may notice that I don't ask you to relax. If you relax, you may fall limply on the couch to watch your favorite sitcom. For singing, you want your body aligned but released and free of tension. *Releasing* means keeping your body in a state of readiness: ready to move, breathe, and crawl out of your comfort zone and sing for the world. Think of body movement as fluid motion even when you're still.

Letting go of tension in your upper body

To release any tension in your arms and hands, you also want to check in with the areas surrounding the arms and hands.

- **Chest:** Check the position of your chest to make sure that it's open and lifted, not pushed up.

- **Shoulders:** With your chest open and lifted, notice the position of your shoulders. You want your shoulders centered, neither too far forward nor too far back.
- **Arms:** Tighten your arms and notice what that feels like. When your arms are tight, you feel tight across your back and perhaps across your chest. Release the tension in your arms and notice that they feel as if they opened.
- **Elbows:** You may have discovered that when your elbows are tight, your back and shoulder blades are really tight. All your muscles are connected and need a balanced relationship to support the body. Your elbows can also feel like they have a spring in them, similar to the visual you may have explored with your ankles and knees earlier in the chapter. Your elbows and your body should have distance between them; you don't want your elbows to press against your body or push out from your body.
- **Hands:** The same tension release can apply to your hands. If you tighten your hands and wrists, you can feel the tension move all the way up your arms and across your back and chest. When you release the tension in your hands, you may feel as if they aren't as heavy as they were when you tensed the muscles in your hands.

Opening space in the head

Believe it or not, tension in the head and face is pretty common in singers. You can see tension in the face when the eyebrows lift or the brow furrows. The facial muscles may also hold tension, even though you may not see the face wrinkle. Read on for information about how to release both obvious and invisible tension.

Look in the mirror at your face. Tighten your face so that you can see the muscles squeezing together. Now release that tension and notice what it feels like. When the tension releases, your face may feel wider or more open. Tense and release several more times so you can really feel the difference. Notice any tension in your forehead from the muscles wanting to either lift or furrow the brow.

TIP

One area that commonly generates tension is the forehead. If you notice your forehead wrinkling as you sing, stick a piece of clear tape vertically on your forehead between your eyebrows. You can feel the tape move when you tighten your forehead. It's normal for your eyebrows to occasionally move as you sing or speak, but keeping your forehead free of tension is the goal.

Next, notice any tension in your eyes. Tension in your eyes feels like squinting or a tightness behind your eyes. When the eyes are open and free of tension, it feels similar to the opening you feel behind your eyes when you see something that

surprises you. Pretend that a friend you haven't seen in a long time walks through the door. Notice the opening of your eyes and a feeling of space behind your eyes. The opening or release of tension behind the eyes also helps the forehead to relax.

Releasing the tension in your head and opening the space involves allowing the muscles to stay pliable on your head. If you squint or concentrate really hard for a long time, your head may start to hurt from a tension headache. To prevent that tension, massage your scalp. See whether you can get the skin on your scalp to move around. It might not move much if it's tight, but you may get it to move a little by massaging and stretching it. You can also visualize your head expanding from the inside out.

Look in the mirror again and notice the space around your mouth. When you're annoyed or frustrated, the muscles around your mouth may tighten. To release the tension around your mouth and face, look bored. If you pretend to be really bored and dull, you'll feel tension around your mouth release.

Walking with ease

Maintaining your posture while you walk makes a big difference in your appearance and your ability to sing while walking or moving. You may actually have to sing while walking around the stage. Church choirs sing as they process, and backup singers groove to the music as they dance. What if you have to cross the stage? You want to look glorious for the entire time that you're walking onstage and when you land in place to sing.

REMEMBER

To maintain your posture while walking, keep your eyes up and look ahead as you walk. You can still see where you're going even if you're not looking at the ground. You also want to be able to land in correct alignment. When you have to walk onto the stage for a performance, you want to land in alignment so you don't have to adjust your position.

Practice finding your alignment when you're standing still. Then walk a few steps and land in place. Did you land in the same alignment? Look down at your feet to see whether they're parallel and the same distance as your hipbones. If not, try again: Walk around and then land in alignment. Eventually, you'll confidently land in alignment and know that your body is ready for some fabulous singing.

You also want to practice walking with an awareness of the weight and pressure on your legs. You want to feel the sensation that your weight is evenly distributed on your legs and feet and have a sense of buoyancy. Feeling your weight sink into your legs makes you feel much heavier. Pushing into the floor or pavement causes you to feel pressure and tension in your legs. Of course, you want to connect your feet to the floor, but you want to feel an opening sensation, as if your feet touching

the floor causes your legs and muscles to open — not contract and tense. Try walking and pushing into the floor, and then walking and visualizing your body with springs that open when your feet connect with the floor.

After practicing walking with ease, you can then practice walking and singing. Allow yourself time to stop and monitor your posture to make sure you're staying aligned while singing a song. You can also practice without your shoes and feel the connection of your feet to the floor. After you can feel the opening of the feet into the floor when you breathe, you can then compare that sensation with shoes on.

The same applies for dancing and singing. Practice the alignment described in the chapter and then try out some of the breathing exercises in Chapter 4. When you feel confident that you have those skills solid, try combining those skills while singing and dancing. Even if you aren't a dancer, move around the room while you're singing to notice the difference between singing with tension and singing with your body aligned and balanced.

Projecting confidence through posture

Projecting confidence onstage is important because you want to feel good about your performance and you want the audience to be comfortable watching you perform. Audiences are usually apprehensive about performers who project fear. Projecting confidence involves finding your ideal posture and maintaining it throughout a performance.

If you maintain that posture and a calm expression even if you forget the words to your song, many people probably won't even notice. I've seen it many times: The performer is onstage making up the words, but he looks as terrific as if he'd intended to sing those words. By maintaining poise and posture, the performer projects to the audience that everything is fine and assures them that they needn't worry, as if to say, "I'll get back to the original words in a moment." The performer also walks away feeling good because he stuck to a basic singing rule: Good posture enhances good singing.

To explore how correct posture exudes confidence, pretend that you're a king or queen. Strut like you own the place. Notice your posture. Now pretend that you're really sick and that your whole body aches. Doesn't a ruler move differently than someone who is ill? It's possible for a king or queen to be ill, but not in this scenario. A king walks tall, carries himself with great dignity and grace, and glides around the room. A sickly person can barely stand, much less project confidence. In this scenario, which one are you? Are you the king with a dignified posture, or are you stooped and closed off from the world? You're probably somewhere in the middle. Strive to be the king or queen when you sing.

SINGING AND PLAYING AN INSTRUMENT AT THE SAME TIME

You want the same confidence in your posture when you're singing and playing the guitar or the piano (or even the banjo or organ). Practice finding the alignment in the chapter and then sit down at the piano. Notice that you can allow the bench to support you and sense the buoyancy in the spine. Feel the weight of your body sink into the bench so you can remain flexible no matter which way you turn. Lifting your leg to use the piano pedals is different from just lifting your foot. You can do either one, but just notice that lifting your entire leg engages the abdominal muscles. The breath work from Chapter 4 helps you explore using the ribs or the abdominals to help you sing well. If you're performing, you may need to turn your head toward a microphone. Even when you turn your head, try to maintain fluid motion in your body instead of tightening the spine or neck when you turn.

Singing while playing the guitar is really fun. Practice finding your alignment with the exercises in the chapter and then grab your guitar. If you normally stand and play guitar, then put your guitar strap around your neck and find your alignment from the exercises in the chapter. Notice what part of your body engages to hold up the guitar. If the guitar is balanced across your body, you may feel that your legs do the work of holding up the weight of the guitar. After exploring the sensations of holding the guitar and maintaining your alignment, start to play the guitar without singing and monitor your posture. Notice what muscles you're using to hold yourself up while your arms and hands are busy playing the guitar. After you find a good balance of muscles moving while just playing, try playing the guitar and singing. Take your time between phrases to make sure you focus on allowing your breath to drop into your body (see Chapter 4 for help with breathing for singing). By allowing yourself longer pauses between phrases, you can monitor each aspect of the technique: alignment, breath coordination, singing phrases, playing the instrument. It takes time to be able to do all of this at the same time, but you can do it with practice.

After you explore playing the guitar while standing, try sitting in a chair and holding the guitar. Notice the muscles that engage as you hold the guitar. You don't have to sit stiffly, but I suggest that you explore an upright posture before leaning over the guitar. Notice that leaning over the guitar not only affects your posture, but it also affects your muscles for breathing and singing. Next, compare the sensation of singing while playing the guitar with upright posture and when you lean over the guitar. The slumped posture can cause your organs to be squeezed with less room to move when you breathe. You can sing well while leaning over your guitar, but I recommend you practice the alignment exercises until you can recognize tension in your body. After you can

(continued)

(continued)

recognize and release tension, you can sing well and rock out playing your guitar in different positions.

To find some inspiration, watch your favorite artist sing and play the piano or guitar. Do they maintain their posture while they're playing? Some celebrities to watch are Darius Rucker or Justin Timberlake playing the guitar and singing and Lady Gaga or John Legend playing piano and singing.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Getting down to the brass tacks of breath control
- Inhaling and expanding your body
- Exhaling and extending your breath
- Discovering how your body moves while breathing

Chapter 4
Breathing for Singing

How you manage your breath when you sing can drastically change the sound of your singing voice. If you try to hold your breath and sing, it doesn't work. You also can't sing a loud phrase without using some air — that is, without exhaling. Most people think of exhaling as involving air, not sound. When you sing, exhaling encompasses both at the same time. Although breathing is natural — you don't have to think about it — when you sing, you need to train your body to breathe in a certain way so that you breathe efficiently throughout an entire song. You don't want to run out of breath in the middle of a word. The exercises in this chapter help you master breath control so you can sing through all those long phrases in your favorite songs with ease.

TIP

Try not to push yourself too quickly when you're working on breath. Work slowly and allow the movements described in this chapter to become habit.

Tackling the Basics of Breathing

When you breathe normally, you automatically make a shallow inhalation and an even exhalation, followed by a pause before it all starts again — you don't even need to think about it. On the other hand, when you sing, you need to not only inhale quickly and exhale slowly as you sing the phrases of a song, but also maintain proper posture. (See Chapter 3 for more information on posture.) Breathing in this manner gives you the breath control you need to sing efficiently. However,

because controlled breathing doesn't come naturally, you need to train your body to breathe for singing. Keep reading for the breathing basics.

The easiest way to find out how to breathe for singing is simply to feel it. Being able to visualize and feel the proper way to breathe makes the process more natural for you, too.

REMEMBER

Inhalation refers to air moving into your body — breathing in. *Exhalation* is blowing out the air. You exhale when you speak or sing.

Inhaling to sing

Singing songs requires getting a full breath quickly — a quick inhalation — because the orchestra can't wait five minutes for you to find the air. Knowing how your body feels when you inhale helps you quickly get air in your body so you can sing the next phrase. Use the following exercise to explore your own inhalation and get a feel for how your body needs to move when you inhale and exhale.

Pretend that you see someone you're really happy to see. The surprise breath that you take feels like the air just rushed into your body. You can also pretend that someone told you something shocking.

You probably just took a really quick breath. Quickly filling your lungs with air is the way you want to breathe when singing. As you read this chapter, you discover how to open your body so the breath intake is silent.

REMEMBER

When you're working on breath control, you may find yourself yawning. The body gets confused with the different amount of air coming in, and you yawn. My students yawn during lessons and are embarrassed at first. I tell them that it's okay to yawn when working on breath coordination.

Exhaling to sing

Singing requires you to control your exhalation. You want to have a sustained and smooth exhalation so you can sing those demanding high notes and long, slow phrases.

TIP

To explore exhalation, try this exercise: Take a breath and say "Shhhh," as if you're trying to quiet some noisy children. Take another breath, and this time sustain the "Shhhh" as long as you can. While saying the "Shhhh," notice what moves in your body as you exhale. You may feel that your abdomen or ribs are moving. At the end of the "Shhhh" (exhalation), you should feel the need to immediately inhale again.

BREATHING LIKE A BELLOWS

Attached to your ribs, your lungs are made of pliable tissue — not muscle. When you inhale, the muscles between the ribs (*intercostals*) move the ribs up and out as the lungs expand downward. When the intercostal muscles relax back inward, the lungs move back to their normal resting position. Another muscle that moves when you breathe is your diaphragm, a dome-shaped muscle located underneath your lungs and attached to the ribs and the spine. Your diaphragm is actually attached to the rib cage in the front of your body and the ribs and spine in the back, and it doesn't descend below your ribs. When you inhale, the diaphragm flexes downward and moves back upward as you exhale. If the diaphragm flexes downward as you inhale, the organs below your diaphragm (such as the liver and your stomach) have to move out of the way. The organs move down and out, which is why your abdomen moves out as you inhale. As you exhale, the organs gradually move back to their normal resting positions.

Breathing can be confusing for a singer who's just starting out, because you have to pay attention to so many things at one time. Different people who know something about singing also may tell you about yet another breathing method to use for singing. One friend may say that their teacher wants them to leave the muscles out — sides, ribs, back — and distended as they sing or exhale; another friend may tell you that the abdominal muscles must move in when you exhale. Who do you believe? Both of them.

REMEMBER

More than one method of breathing is useful, so you need to explore what works for you and understand why. You'll likely encounter someone who claims to know all the answers about breathing, and I want you to be familiar with your own breathing to understand your options.

Being an "innie" or an "outie" doesn't refer to just your belly button — it also refers to how you breathe. Both methods are valid; you just need to understand how breath works in your body. Here's more info about each:

- **The innie method** focuses on moving the ribs and abdomen in gradually during exhalation. If you're exploring breathing for the first time, start with these exercises.
- **The outie method** requires the singer to focus on keeping the ribs or abdomen out during exhalation.

TIP

For many singers, the outie method is helpful because beginners have a hard time preventing the ribs and abdomen from moving back in too quickly during exhalation; visualizing the abdomen staying out helps them slowly move back in. After their abdomen moves back in, some singers squeeze their throat to

continue singing. You can explore the outie method to see whether imagining your body staying wide during exhalation helps you slow the movement of your ribs and abdominal muscles and extend your breath.

Posturing yourself for breathing

Breathing efficiently when you sing is a combination of great posture (see Chapter 3) and skillful inhaling and exhaling. (See the sections, "Practicing Inhalation" and "Practicing Exhalation," later in this chapter.) Remember the importance of good posture: It allows you to get a deep, full breath. If you slouch or you're too rigid, your diaphragm locks and prevents you from getting a full breath for singing. (Refer to the nearby sidebar for more insight.) If your breathing and your posture work together as a team, you can improve your singing.

To sing your best, you want to develop good posture while you breathe. When your body is aligned correctly, taking and using an efficient breath is easier.

TIP

Your own two hands can help you maintain great posture while breathing. As you work through the breathing exercises in this chapter, place one hand on your chest and the other hand on your abs and your sides. As you inhale, use your hand to feel whether your chest stays steady; you want it to stay in the same position for both the inhalation and the exhalation. (If your chest rises during inhalation, you create tension in your chest and neck.) You'll feel your other hand moving out with your abs and sides as you inhale, and back in toward your body as you exhale.

Practicing Inhalation

When you sing, you want to be confident that you can take in air and then use it efficiently to sing your song. Knowing how to open your body for inhalation allows you to get the breath in your body skillfully and with little effort. Inhaling is simple: Open your body, and the air comes rushing in. Read on for exercises and information to develop skillful inhalation technique.

REMEMBER

Inhaling through the nose and the mouth at the same time is ideal for singing. Taking in air through just the nose isn't the best idea, because you won't be able to do that if you have a cold. If your nose is stuffed, you'll be distracted when singing and your breath will sound very noisy, because you're trying to suck air through congested nostrils. Instead, allow air to come in through your nose and your mouth when you breathe. Getting accustomed to air coming in through both your nose and your mouth takes some time, but it's a worthwhile technique.

BREATHING JARGON

If you've had some singing lessons, you may be confused by all the phrases and terms singers use to describe breathing. Your voice teacher or choir director may have said, "Support that note" or "Sing on breath!" If those commands make sense to you, congratulations! I always thought they were confusing, because the word *support* can mean so many things.

- Support probably became a popular term for breathing for singing because of the Italian word *appoggio,* which means "to support" or "to lean your body into the breath." Support means using your body to control the breath and sound so your throat stays free and open.
- *Appoggio* also implies that singers flex their body or ribs open as they sing and leave the body open during exhalation. (This is similar to the outie method mentioned in the "Exhaling to sing" section in this chapter.) This may sound confusing, but it will make more sense as your understanding of your own breathing habits improves with practice.
- Singing on breath is what you're supposed to do all the time. If someone says, "Sing on the breath," they're telling you to connect the breath to the tone or start the sound by connecting air. You can grunt and make a sound, but that's not applying air or singing on the breath. You can also blow too much air and make a breathy sound, which isn't what it means to sing on the breath. The process in between those two is what you're looking for.

In the future, ask the person to be more specific if you're confused by the phrase they use. But it's okay if you don't know every singing cliché. How can you know them all yet? The singing world uses so many.

Opening your body

Taking in air quickly and quietly is one of the goals for singing. To get the air in quickly, you want to open your body — your back, ribs, sides, and abs. You can open all these areas at the same time, but explore each area separately before trying to activate them all together.

Moving back for inhalation

If you think of your back or spine connected to your ribs, it makes sense that opening your back helps your breathing. You want to quickly open your back so air falls into your lungs. Remember that the lungs are connected to the ribs, so moving the ribs and the back moves the lungs.

TIP

Try this suggestion to quickly open your back for an easy inhalation:

1. **Find a sturdy chair and sit with your elbows resting on your knees.**

   In this position, you sit and lean forward, with your elbows on your bent knees and your back straight. You don't have to bend over far — only far enough to allow your back to relax.

2. **With your elbows on your knees, take a breath and imagine that you can put the air into your back — as if your lungs are all along your back and you want to fill them with air.**

   You may notice that the muscles in your back feel like they're lifting and opening for the air to come in the body.

3. **Take a few more breaths and notice the sensations of your back opening.**

4. **When you think you feel your back releasing and opening as you inhale, try opening your back more quickly.**

   Open the same muscles along your back without worrying about inhalation. When you open the muscles, the air comes into your body and you don't have to worry about inhalation — the inhalation happens because you're opening the muscles.

You can also squat down and place your hands on your back to feel the movement of the muscles. If you have a practice buddy, ask them to put their hands on your back as you try expanding your back. Or you can ask them to try the same exercise so you can feel how their back moves. Feeling the movement of someone else's body may help you know what's happening to yours.

If sitting in the chair isn't comfortable, try lying on your back with your knees bent to feel the opening of your back. Lie on the floor and feel the opening of your back along the floor as you inhale. Notice the movement of the upper part of your back and the lower part of your back, all the way down to your hips.

Flexing the ribs

The rib cage has 12 pairs of ribs. (Yes, men and women have the same number of ribs.) You can view the skeleton in Chapter 3 to see that the first seven pairs of ribs are connected to the sternum, and the next three ribs are connected to rib No. 7, to make the curved shape in the front of the rib cage. The last two ribs aren't attached in the front of the rib cage; these ribs are called floating ribs.

You don't have to remember the number of ribs, but you want to remember that the top of your rib cage has more movement from front to back in your body and that the lower ribs open more laterally, or out to the side of your body. Knowing how your ribs move, you can visualize the side-to-side opening near the bottom

of your ribs to get the most air into your body quickly. And if you're a dancer, you want to know how to quickly open the upper ribs and your back when you're dancing across the stage.

You may be asked to sing and dance at the same time. Because dancers have to keep their body moving while singing, they can't always let their abdominal muscles release. But dancers can allow the ribs to open when breathing. If a dancer allows their ribs to open upon inhalation and slowly lets them close upon exhalation, they don't have to worry so much about letting the abdominal muscles be loose. When you understand the way the body was designed to breathe, take it a step further and practice working with your ribs for dancing while singing.

Move your arms in the following exercise so that you can feel the opening of your chest and ribs:

1. **Raise your arms over your head.**
2. **Take a breath and feel your ribs open.**

   Keep your chest stable. You don't need to raise your chest; merely let it open. Repeat several times to feel the movement of your ribs.
3. **Put your arms down and place your hands on your ribs.**

   Place your palms against your lower ribs with your thumb facing forward and fingers pointing to your back. To feel the movement higher in your rib cage, turn your hand the same way with the thumb facing forward, or cross your arms so that your right hand is on your left ribs and your left hand is on your right ribs.
4. **With your hands on your ribs, open the ribs slowly to feel the stretch of the intercostals — the muscles between the ribs.**

   Repeat several times.
5. **Send air to your ribs or flex open your ribs as you inhale.**
6. **As you exhale, allow your ribs to gradually move back in.**

If raising your arms over your head isn't comfortable, you can lie on your side. Putting your arms above your head is ideal, but you can get the same sense of movement in the ribs with your arm bent at the elbow or extended in front of you. Other positions you can try are standing with your arms extended straight out on each side. Position the arms just slightly behind your body so your chest is open. In this position, you may especially feel the opening of the upper ribs. When your arms tire, you can put your hands on your hips and continue exploring the opening of the ribs. You can practice with your hands just above your hips to remind you to open your sides and ribs. When the opening is familiar, you can put your arms down by your side and find the same opening.

REMEMBER

If you're really confused right now or feel short of breath, that's okay. Feeling short of breath when you begin working through these exercises is normal. Be patient, and you'll begin breathing efficiently. Creating a new habit in your body takes a while, and breathing for singing is definitely new. Your inhalation was perfect when you were a baby. If you watch infants breathe, you can see that they know exactly what to do. As people age, they start to carry unnecessary tension in various parts of the body, which can prevent efficient breathing. The body gets stressed out. But not in this book — stress busters are on the way!

Stretching the sides

Another area of the body that you can open for inhalation is your sides. For now, think of your ribs and your sides as separate. The sides are the love handle area — the area right below your rib cage and above your hips — the oblique muscles. This area may automatically open when you open the ribs, but you want to be sure.

Place your hands on your hips and then move them up a couple of inches so that you feel the indentation just above the top of the hipbone.

Pretend that your lungs are just above your hip bones. To help open that area, exhale, and then inhale allowing the area under your hands to expand. You may need to provide a little resistance with your hands so you can figure out how to open those muscles.

Your sides are a great place to notice exertion in the body. When you cough, you may feel your abs move in and your sides expand. The movement for singing is similar but happens more slowly. The sides also engage when you sing loudly. For now, be aware of how your sides move; later, you can move your sides when you need an exertion of energy to sing loudly.

Singing with a clear tone doesn't use as much air as singing with a breathy tone. See Chapter 6 for more information on singing with clear tone. You can sing with a breathy tone on purpose, but it requires a lot more air, and it's more difficult for a microphone to amplify a fuzzy tone.

Releasing the abs

Many singing teachers feel strongly about the movement of the abdominal muscles (abs) and singing. You may have been told to control your abs to control your exhalation. That idea is a good one, but you also want to control the other muscles in your torso, because the abs aren't the only muscles that control exhalation.

TIP

To feel the release of the abs with inhalation, get down on your hands and knees (on all fours). You can get something soft to put under your knees if this isn't the most comfortable position for you. Exhale and notice the movement of your abs. You probably feel them moving in, and that's great. Notice how they move when you inhale. If you feel them dropping down with gravity, you're on the right track. If you don't feel them drop, you may be trying too hard to move your chest to breathe. Allow your chest to remain steady and try again.

WARNING

Taking in too much air is called *overbreathing*, which can cause adverse tension in the body. When you get used to breathing for singing, you can judge how much air you need to take in for each phrase.

The following exercise enables you the opportunity to let breath fall into your body, releasing the abs.

1. **Exhale.**

   As you exhale, your abs move in.

2. **Hold your breath and silently count to ten.**

   Don't inhale while you're counting to ten.

3. **After counting to ten, inhale.**

   Most likely, you need the breath so badly that it just falls right into your body, and your abs release and drop.

4. **Notice the movement of your body as the air comes rushing in.**

   Your throat opens and your abs release so the air can drop in.

After expelling all your air on a long musical phrase, let the air that you need just drop into your lungs by opening your body.

Breathing, slow and steady

The goal for inhalation is to open the body quickly so the air drops in quietly. If your muscles don't know how to open quickly, you can slow down with this exercise and find how to open the muscles.

When you were a kid, your mom probably told you not to suck air through your straw, right? It makes that horrible slurping noise after all the liquid is drained from your glass. Now you need a dry straw that doesn't have any leftover milkshake stuck inside. Breathing through a straw helps the air that you breathe drop into your body, making it easy to feel your body expand as you breathe. You also can't gasp or suck in air too quickly with a straw.

Just follow these steps to slow down your breathing:

1. **Find a straw and cut it down to 3 inches.**
2. **Insert one end of the straw into your mouth.**
3. **Breathe through the straw, making sure that you don't raise your chest or shoulders, and notice how your body opens as the air drops into your lungs.**
4. **Inhale for three slow counts and exhale for three slow counts.**

   Repeat this step five times. Remember to keep your alignment. Chapter 3 has tips for great alignment.
5. **Inhale for four slow counts and exhale for four slow counts.**

   As you inhale, notice what's moving in your body. You want your ribs to open, your sides and back to expand, and your abs to release and drop. If the motion is still unsteady, keep practicing until you really feel the movement in your body. It may take a couple of weeks to feel the movement enough that it becomes familiar.

Catching a quick breath

Your song may have a long phrase and then a very short rest to catch a breath. The struggle is to get in enough air in a short time. To understand how to catch a quick breath in your song, you want to know how to quickly open your muscles. If you opened the muscles slowly in the preceding exercise, you may be ready to open them quickly. Try this exercise to explore a catch breath.

Get yourself slightly winded by running in place, dancing around, or doing any other movement that gets you moving. When you start to breathe faster and get winded, stand and sing part of your song. Your body really wants to inhale. When you finally take a breath, notice how the breath drops quickly into your body. Most people describe the sensation of the body opening quickly to get air in. It's different from pulling in air or gasping. With a gasp, your throat is tight and you're pulling or sucking in air. Opening the body (including your throat) helps you make a quick and quiet inhalation.

REMEMBER

Although inhaling may be natural for everyone, you need to practice the efficient and ideal posture to inhale in order to breathe your best while singing. Correct inhalation means keeping yourself properly aligned, with your body free of tension, your throat open, and your shoulders steady to allow the most air to fall into

your body. Try the following to feel the difference between incorrect and correct inhalation:

- If you gasp, you can feel a tight sensation in your throat as you try to squeeze air in while your vocal cords are closed. However, if you pretend that you're hiding and don't want anyone to hear you breathing, you leave your throat open and can take in plenty of air.
- If you inhale and intentionally raise your shoulders or chest, you can feel that, as your shoulders rise, your neck gets tense. However, if you keep your shoulders and chest steady and inhale, you get more air into your body.

TIP

You may be tempted to push down the tongue as you inhale. You may feel like pushing down the tongue helps you get the air in faster, but it doesn't. To help release any tension in your tongue as you inhale, release the tongue forward. Your tongue then moves forward, or toward your teeth, as you inhale instead of pushing back or pressing down. Compare the two. Push down your tongue as you inhale, and then try releasing your tongue forward as you inhale. You may find that the release forward helps you get the air in quickly and has your tongue released to start the first note.

Inhaling efficiently should now be fairly easy for you. Singing "Happy Birthday" tests your ability to inhale correctly and then sing a song. Before you start the song, feel the breath moving into your body. When you're in the groove, go for it.

1. **Sing all the way through the song "Happy Birthday."**
2. **Take a deep breath and sing the first phrase again.**
3. **Pause.**

   Before you sing the second phrase, remember all that you recently discovered about inhalation. Take your time and find the efficient and ideal posture to take in that inhalation. You don't have to rush.
4. **Calmly take the breath back in.**
5. **Take the time to find the correct motion of the breath on the inhalation and then sing the next phrase.**
6. **Repeat this series of steps until you finish the song.**

   Remember to get the breath right instead of rushing to the next phrase or gasping for air.

Each time you try this exercise, it gets easier. Try it the next time you sing a new song to coordinate your breathing properly.

TIP

You're not alone if you feel like you can't remember how to breathe. Your body gets confused putting all this information into practice, so just work on the inhalation until it's easy for you; then move on to another exercise. Go back and reread the explanation about how the breath works in the body, and then try some of the exercises again. You may find that they're easier now that you can picture the movement of the air as well as feel it.

Practicing Exhalation

When you sing and exhale, remember not to collapse your body too quickly. Keep the same aligned position that you had for your inhalation: Keep your chest steady, and have your abdomen and ribs gradually move inward as you release the breath. When you aren't singing or speaking, and as you go about your everyday business, you normally exhale much more quickly than you should when you sing. When you sing, however, you have to inhale quickly and extend the flow of air over a longer period of time. It takes practice to be able to sing a long phrase without stopping in the middle to breathe. Practice a steady, controlled exhalation while maintaining good posture.

Blowing in the wind

This exercise helps you develop the control needed when you sing a long phrase of music. The object of the exercise is to make a candle flame flicker by exhaling and not blasting hot wax onto your hand! Make sure that you exhale with a steady, slow stream of air — just enough to bend the flame. If you don't have a candle handy, you can blow air across the top of a hot cup of cocoa or tea, or just use your imagination. You can work this exercise with your imagination, or you can actually light a candle.

WARNING

Be careful with the candle if you use a real one. Hold or set down the candle in a holder that's at least 8 inches from your mouth so you don't burn your eyebrows.

Follow these steps:

1. **Light a candle and hold it 8 inches from your face.**
2. **Take a deep breath, keeping your shoulders and your chest nice and steady.**

3. **As you exhale, blow gently on the flame to make it bend but not flicker wildly.**
4. **Continue the steady stream of air to keep the flame bent, counting silently to see how long you can bend the flame.**

Be careful that your body doesn't collapse quickly as you exhale during this exercise. Instead, feel a steady movement in your body during the exhalation. If you can bend the flame for the count of five the first time, try to make it to six the next time. Bend the flame for six counts several times in a row before you try for seven. Each time, make sure that you notice what's happening in your body.

Trilling for exhalation

A *lip trill* is an itchy exercise, but it's great for feeling the movement of the exhalation. The vibrations of your lips may make your nose itch after a few minutes. No problem — scratch your nose and keep going. What's a lip trill? Ever see a horse blowing air through his lips? The horse's lips flap in the breeze. This may seem silly, but it's a great test of your exhaling endurance. Take a breath, and send the breath between your lips and let them vibrate. If your lips don't vibrate like Mr. Ed's, it's probably because they're too tight. Loosen your lips and just let them hang free as you blow air between them this time. If your lips are tight, place a finger at the corners of your mouth and gently push the corners toward your nose as you do the lip trill.

1. **Practice trilling your lips.**
2. **When you have the lip trill moving easily, start counting silently.**
3. **Sustain the lip trill for four counts; inhale slowly for four counts and repeat the cycle.**

TIP

Make sure that you take a good breath before you begin. As you count to four, notice what moves in your body as you exhale. Try not to collapse your chest as you exhale; let your lower body do the work to move the air.

4. **Sustain the lip trill for four counts again, but this time, inhale for two counts and repeat the cycle.**
5. **Sustain the lip trill for longer periods of time as your endurance improves.**

Lip trill for six counts and inhale for two counts. When you can easily do the lip trill several times in a row, increase the number by two counts (lip trill for eight

counts, inhale for two counts, and so on). The object of the exercise isn't to count to 50, but to work the endurance of the breath and make sure that the body is working efficiently as you exhale.

6. **As your skill increases, vary the lip trill count.**

   Notice how your body changes on a two-count trill compared to an eight-count trill. It adjusts by moving more slowly on the eight counts. This variation happens in songs — you have short phrases followed by long phrases, and you have to adjust your breath control for the phrase.

When the lip trill is a piece of cake for you, add a tune: Lip trill a song. You can easily lip trill "Happy Birthday." Let each note connect to the other without a pause and without pushing your tongue against your teeth for each note. In other words, make it legato (smooth and connected).

PLAY THIS

To practice more lip trills, check out Figure 4-1.

1. **Sing through the lip trill pattern in Figure 4-1.**
2. **Play the track again, and this time, try a tongue trill.**

   Many people find that they can make good sounds with a tongue trill. The tongue trill works like the lip trill. Leave your tongue loose in your mouth and blow air between your tongue and the roof of your mouth. Make sure that your tongue is released or this won't work. As the air moves over the tongue, the tip of the tongue raises and vibrates against the roof of your mouth.

3. **Play the track for a third time, alternating between doing the tongue trill and singing on the given notes.**

   You can easily go right from the tongue trill to a vowel. For example, sing the first two notes on the tongue trill and the last two notes on ah. Make a smooth transition from the tongue trill to the ah. See whether your airflow remains the same.

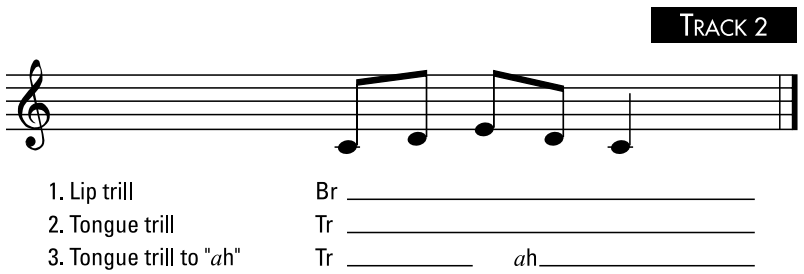


FIGURE 4-1: Lip and tongue trills.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Recognizing resistance and suspending the breath

Singers often think that they can control their diaphragm movement and achieve great breath control. What most people don't know is that the diaphragm is passive during exhalation. Your diaphragm moves down as you inhale and as your lungs expand to fill with air, but the diaphragm isn't active when you exhale. You control exhalation by controlling all the muscles that affect the movement of the lungs — the muscles between the ribs (intercostals), the muscles on your sides (obliques) and your back, and your abs. Knowing how to control the movement of these muscles controls your exhalation and allows you to sing long phrases. Refer to the section, "Tackling the Basics of Breathing," earlier in this chapter for more information.

REMEMBER

Because your body is used to opening for the inhalation and then a quick exhalation, you have to resist the normal movement of your body when you're singing. This resistance is a good thing. Think of resistance as a slow movement of the body back in for exhalation, or a friendly resistance to keep the body from collapsing.

One way to explore exhalation and resistance is to suspend the breath. If the normal movement of your body is to take a breath and gradually exhale, or allow the body to move back to its resting position, I want you to explore taking a breath and then waiting before you exhale. It feels like your body is suspended in motion: You're ready to exhale, but the muscles just aren't moving yet. This feeling of suspension is what I mean by resistance.

Your body wants to close, but you aren't allowing it to collapse just yet. Resistance doesn't involve tension; it's more like hesitation. Notice the feeling of your body staying open as you take the breath and then wait. You can practice suspending for three or four counts and then gradually exhale. The goal isn't to figure out how to suspend for long periods of time, but to understand the sensation of the body resisting the normal urge to close after an inhalation.

Try this sequence to develop your ability to suspend the muscles of exhalation:

1. **Breathe in for three counts.**
2. **Suspend for three counts.**

   As you suspend, pay attention to the sensations in your body. Your body wants to close, but you make the choice to suspend and stay open.
3. **Exhale for three counts.**
4. **Gradually move the exhalation number higher.**

   Inhale for three counts, suspend for three counts, and exhale for four counts. Notice how your body adjusts to the slower exhalation.

You can exhale in one count or in ten counts, and the body adjusts the movement of the muscles. For today, I recommend that you try the sequence with three counts for each step. Tomorrow you can move the exhalation up to four counts, and the next day move the exhalation to five counts. Explore this exercise slowly to develop control over the muscles. Moving too quickly doesn't allow you to explore the sensations of adjustment in your body as the exhalation gets longer. The next section in the chapter has more exercises that explore longer exhalation.

Testing Your Breath Control

If you've been working on the exercises in this chapter, you've probably explored your inhalation and exhalation enough to know what's moving and grooving as you breathe and sing.

Athletes know that they have to train consistently to teach the muscles in their body to respond exactly the way they want. Gaining coordination of the muscles that control breathing takes time and consistent practice. Some people call it developing muscle memory. Over time, the muscles remember how to move and you don't have to think about it. You want this to happen for breathing and singing: You want to practice the breathing exercises enough that you can rely on them to work efficiently so you can focus on the story you're telling.

Athletes also know that working out and doing physical conditioning is crucial for developing the ability to transport oxygen quickly throughout the body. When you're singing, you're moving a lot of air, and your body needs to be in good shape so you can handle the endurance required to sing for an entire performance. You don't have to be thin, but you have to be in good shape. Your workout at the gym also helps your breathing for singing.

Pushing yourself just a little beyond your comfort zone helps you develop stamina and endurance. Your muscles may feel warm or tired after you work on the breathing exercises, which is perfectly normal. Extreme fatigue is a sign that something isn't right in your practice session, but it's normal to feel tired and need to rest for a time before you can practice more.

To give yourself an opportunity to work on more advanced breathing exercises, keep reading and working through the exercises. They aren't too advanced for you, especially if you've been exploring other exercises and are comfortable with what moves as you breathe.

REMEMBER

If you're new to singing, moving too quickly to the advanced exercises without practicing the basics doesn't give you an opportunity to make the movement a habit. It took some time for me to make efficient breathing a habit, but now I don't have to worry about changing gears when it's time to sing. I breathe in the same manner when I sing as when I speak because the movement has become so natural for me.

Releasing abs and then ribs

Because your lungs are housed within your rib cage, allowing the ribs to open as you inhale and letting them stay open as you exhale is beneficial. This is also known as outie breathing, or *appoggio* (that's Italian for "support" or "lean"). Don't force your ribs to stay open, but allow them to stay open. Even if the words force and allow seem similar, they're different. Forcing the ribs to stay open results in pressure being put on your body and a tight sound.

When you've been working with breath for some time and you can easily manage quick, efficient inhalation and have some control over longer exhalation, try the exercise that follows.

1. **Practice flexing open your ribs.**

   Stand in front of the mirror and try to open your rib cage. You want to open your ribs on the side of your body, not raise your chest. Watch the movement in your body to make sure that you're not lifting your chest. It may take a few tries before you can figure out how to open the ribs. When you know how to move them, allow the ribs to open as you inhale. The area that you're trying to move is at the bottom of the rib cage.

2. **Inhale and open your ribs.**

   Practice inhaling and allow your ribs to open. If you aim the air at the lowest rib, you can open the ribs without forcing your chest to rise.

3. **Work for a time just allowing your ribs to open when you inhale and to close as you exhale.**

   As this becomes easier, allow the ribs to stay open longer on the exhalation.

4. **Inhale and allow your ribs to open.**

   Leave the ribs open as you exhale. Take the next breath and allow your abdominal muscles to expand.

5. **Now that your ribs are open and your abdominal muscles are expanded, exhale.**

   As you exhale, allow the abs to move in as the ribs stay out.

6. **As you reach the end of your breath, allow the ribs to gradually close or collapse back to their normal position.**

The long-term goal of this exercise is to provide you with the option of opening the ribs as you inhale and letting them close by choice, depending on the length of the phrase you're singing. I keep my ribs open if I have to sing a long phrase. This motion may take a month or more to master. Keep trying.

Singing slowly

Earlier in this chapter, I suggest simple tunes, such as "Happy Birthday," so that you can easily concentrate on many details at one time. However, you may be ready to try a tougher song. Think of a song that gives you trouble when it comes to managing the long phrases. It can be a hymn or familiar tune in which you just can't quite conquer the phrases. Some familiar tunes with long phrases are "Danny Boy"; "Come Unto Him" from *The Messiah*; and "Over the Rainbow."

REMEMBER

Sing through the song to refresh your memory of the words and the tune. When you're ready, sing through the song at a slow pace. You want to sing more slowly so you extend your exhalation. By singing more slowly, you have to figure out how to extend your breath over a longer period of time. Singing faster songs with short phrases doesn't require a long exhalation, and it doesn't require that you control your exhalation over long phrases.

Practice the exercise that follows to move on to the next level of breath control so that you can manage your breath easily during longer phrases.

1. **Sing the song slowly.**

   If you've chosen a long song, sing through part of it. If you've chosen a shorter song, sing it all the way through.

2. **Sing through each phrase with a consistent exhalation for a smooth, connected line.**

   Make sure that you inhale slowly before the beginning of each phrase.

3. **Sing through the song again slowly, but inhale quickly, while taking in the same amount of air that you did when you were inhaling slowly.**

WARNING

Be careful not to gasp when you're singing through this exercise; open your throat and allow the air to come in. Gasping prevents you from getting the air in quick enough.

In exhaling, your ribs and abs must be moving in using the innie method. Then try letting the abs move while the ribs stay open, the outie method.

WARNING

Gaining weight or losing weight quickly can totally confuse your body. If your body is used to moving a certain amount of weight around, it affects your breathing. You have to slowly get used to your body being a different size after the weight change, especially if you've gained weight. Take your time when you lose weight to allow your body to slowly adjust.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Changing the tone of your voice
- Discovering your larynx and vocal cords
- Exercising to improve your tone

Chapter 5
Toning Up the Voice

In this chapter, you discover what to release to help you create that gorgeous tone — and even find a little vibrato (the variation of a sustained pitch) along the way. I also include some helpful exercises for those of you who are tone deaf (not able to accurately distinguish between differences in pitch). Relax. By the time you finish this chapter, you'll be better at not only controlling your singing voice, but also locating some fun body parts to brag about at your next family gathering. "Hey, wanna feel my larynx?"

Defining Tone

If you turned on the radio, would you recognize your favorite singer? Elvis, Stevie Wonder, Enrique Iglesias, Sumi Jo, Maxwell, Luciano Pavarotti, or Lady Gaga? You probably would. How? If you answered, "By their voices," you're partly right. More specifically, you recognized your favorite singer by the tone of voice. *Tone* is what's known as the color or timbre of your singing voice. Every voice has a specific timbre, which can be described as warm, dark, bright or strident. Two singers singing the same song in the same key may sound different — the reason is tone.

Creating unique tone

A lot of people just open their mouth to sing and produce wonderful-sounding tone. Others have to work to create beautiful tone. The tone of your voice is unique to you, but if it's tight and pressed, you may need to work on the exercises in this book to help you create great tone. You also want to make sure that the tone of your voice matches the style of music you're singing. If you've ever heard opera singers try to sing pop music, you know that they sound funny — their tone is too full and rich when it needs to be more casual. Check out Chapter 2 for more information on the sounds different voice types make in different styles of music, and read Chapter 7 for more information about creating a resonant singing voice and understanding the differences in resonance among various styles of music.

Identifying factors that affect tone

The shape and size of your body and your body coordination partly determine your tone. In addition, your tone changes with your moods or emotions. Check out the following list for factors that affect tone:

- **Body coordination:** Coordinating the muscles in the body is important for creating lovely tone for singing. That coordination includes breath coordination, alignment, and articulation. You can read about breath coordination in Chapter 4 and alignment in Chapter 3. Chapter 8 outlines articulation of vowels, and Chapter 9 covers articulation of consonants. Check out the other chapters in the book so your entire body is ready to help you make great sounds.
- **Emotions:** Your emotions directly affect the tone of voice. You know when someone is happy or sad by the tone of voice. When you're acting, you want to tap into your emotions so that the tone of your voice reflects the story you're telling. Of course, it's also possible to go overboard and let the emotions overtake you. If you go too far emotionally, you end up crying and won't be able to sing your song. Or maybe you'll be so angry that you tense up and can't sing well. Using your emotions is good, but allowing emotions to overtake you isn't good. Work on the exercises in the book to develop your technique. When your technical skill is solid, you'll be able to maintain your technique even during the more emotional sections of your song.
- **Shape and size of your head and throat:** If your mouth and throat are small, you have smaller vocal cords and probably a higher voice type. Singers with large mouths and heads tend to have longer vocal cords and can make fuller sounds.

- **Size of your body:** Singers with a big, round chest tend to have a large lung capacity for nailing those high notes. You don't need to have a big body to sing well, though — good singers come in all shapes and sizes.
- **Space:** The amount of space you open for tone to resonate is a key element in the tone of your voice. If the space is tight, the tone is tight. If the space is open, the tone has room to resonate. You can read more in the section, "Flexing Your Singing Muscles," later in the chapter about opening the space in the mouth and throat.
- **Tension:** Even body parts far from your singing voice need to be free of tension to keep the tone of the voice free.

Considering tone, pitches, and notes

Whether you sing just for fun or you dream of performing professionally, you can count on frequently encountering three terms: *pitch*, *note*, and *tone.* These three terms are often incorrectly used interchangeably, but understanding their true relationship to one another may make your journey through the world of singing less confusing.

- Pitch is the high or low frequency of a sound. When you sing, you create pitch because your vocal cords vibrate at a certain speed. As an example, a foghorn emits a low frequency or pitch, whereas the sound your smoke detector emits when you press the test button is a high frequency or pitch. In singing, when your vocal cords vibrate at a faster speed, you sing a higher pitch than when they vibrate more slowly. The A just above Middle C vibrates at 440 cycles per second — your vocal cords open and close 440 times per second.
- Notes are musical symbols that indicate the location of a pitch.
- Tone is the timbre of pitch. Tone can be described by many different words, including warm, dark, brilliant, ringing, rich, lush, shrill, and strident. An example of a singer with a warm tone is Karen Carpenter; someone with a strident tone is Eddie Murphy playing the role of the Donkey in the Shrek movies.

Based on these definitions, it makes more sense to say that someone is *pitch deaf* rather than tone deaf. You may also hear singers say that they're afraid to sing high notes when they should say that they're afraid to sing high pitches. Although knowing the exact definition of these terms is good, I doubt that anyone will correct you if you mix up the words tone and pitch.

Flexing Your Singing Muscles

Within your head and neck, groups of muscles help create tone. At the same time, the brain sends a message to the muscles that create your singing voice: The air in your lungs begins moving out and the vocal cords move into position to create the pitch. The timbre of the pitch is the tone. Does it seem complicated? Well, it isn't — this is exactly what happens every time you speak.

To change the tone, you change the space in your mouth and throat, your posture, and the amount of breath moving as you sing. The exercises in Chapter 6 help you create the right tone and adjust the space in your mouth and throat so that you can change your tone and make your voice sound great.

Discovering your own bands

Many different parts of your body influence how you sing, but understanding how they all work together to produce the best sound is the key to great singing. Chapters 3 and 4 are devoted to the big anatomical influences, such as breathing and posture, but knowing where those tiny little bands of tissue called vocal cords — your muscles for singing — are located and how they make tone is just as important. When developing good vocal technique, you need to understand how your breath, posture, and tension affect the way your vocal cords work.

Your vocal cords are inside your *larynx* (pronounced *lar*-inks, not *lar*-nicks), which is the source of your singing voice. Your vocal cords are two small bands of tissue stretching across your larynx that vibrate to create pitch.

Your vocal cords coordinate with your breath to release a pitch by opening and closing (vibrating) as air (your breath) passes through. Each vibration is called a *cycle of vibration* or *glottal cycle.* If you're singing the same note that an orchestra plays to tune the instruments, your vocal cords are vibrating at 440 cycles per second — yes, that fast. To make those fast vibrations, you need to keep your breath flowing; otherwise, you run out of air and won't be able to sustain the pitch. (See Chapter 4 to discover techniques for improving your breathing.)

Making the first sound

You already can make singing sounds — you just may not realize it. Working through the sounds in the following steps can start you on the road to singing. Making these sounds helps you discover how to make tension-free sounds that explore your entire singing range.

Make the following sounds:

1. **Try sighing — a nice, long sigh.**

REMEMBER

   A sigh is that sound you make as you feel the warmth of the whirlpool or the relaxation of your body as someone massages your shoulders. As you sigh, make the sound as long as possible. Start higher and gradually slide lower.

2. **Imitate a siren.**

   Slide up and down or around in circles a few times, exploring high and low pitches. Those pitches in the siren are the same pitches you sing in the exercises in this book.

3. **Whoop with joy.**

   Another way to explore the first sounds is to use your imagination. Pretend that someone just told you that you won the lottery. Rather than screaming, try whooping with joy.

Dropping the jaw

When you sing, you have to drop your jaw much farther than you do in everyday conversation and you have to open your mouth and throat much wider. If you don't drop your jaw and open your mouth, the sound gets trapped inside your mouth and can't make it past the first row of the audience.

TIP

Your neck and jaw need to be free of tension and ready to move. If they aren't, check out the exercise in the section, "Checking for neck or jaw tension," later in this chapter to release tension from your neck and jaw.

To properly open the throat and mouth for singing, you need to feel around a bit first. Place your finger on your chin and trace your jaw line back to your ear. At the back of the jaw, you can feel a curve under your ear. This is the area that I want you to focus on when you drop your jaw. Instead of trying to drop your chin, I want you to drop it from the area right underneath your ear. The back space gives the tone room to resonate.

Practice dropping the jaw to discover how to open the space in the back of the mouth — called the back space — and space in the throat; dropping just the chin doesn't open the back space. To practice dropping the jaw, follow these steps:

1. **Massage all the muscles around your face to make sure that they're free of tension and ready to open.**

2. **Try yawning and dropping your jaw at the same time.**

   Remember, you want to drop the jaw, not just move the chin down. Your chin does move, but you want to open the space in the back by your ear (back space), not just the front (front space).

3. **Yawn inside your mouth and throat without opening your lips.**

   To do this, pretend that you're at a boring dinner party and you don't want the hostess to see you yawning. You feel an opening sensation inside your mouth and throat when you're starting to yawn. At the beginning of the yawn, you can feel the muscles stretching and opening. By the end of the yawn, the muscles are tight from the huge stretch. You want to remember the beginning of the yawn, when the muscles are opening, not the tense phase at the end of the yawn.

Putting your larynx into position

Throughout this book, you explore different sounds that you can make with your singing voice. Knowing where the larynx rests in your throat makes it easier for you to tell whether your larynx is too high or too low. If it's too high, I tell you how to drop it.

Finding your larynx

Because the position of the larynx affects the tone, you want to know where your larynx is. The larynx can move up or down. A low larynx helps create a full, open sound. Raising the larynx too high creates a tighter and more strident sound.

FINDING FRONT SPACE

To understand the difference between back space and front space, first find the front space. Open the front space, or only the front of your mouth, by following these steps:

1. **Open your lips really wide, as if the corners of your mouth are moving out toward your ears.**

   When you open your lips, notice what that opening feels like inside your mouth.

2. **Open your front teeth really wide.**

   Notice the sensations in your mouth. The back of your mouth may feel tight when only the front space is open.

Place your fingers on the middle of your throat underneath your chin. Now swallow. As you swallow, you can feel something move up and then down. That's your larynx.

The bump in the middle of the larynx is called the *Adam's apple.* Because men usually have a larger, more pointed larynx than women, guys can feel their Adam's apple more easily.

Keep your fingers on your throat and yawn. Feel that? The larynx went way down. When you sing, you want the larynx to be in the middle of your neck, (a neutral position) or lower. A low larynx helps create a nice, full, open sound for classical music. The larynx in a neutral position is closer to what happens when you sing other styles of songs. (See Chapter 13 for more info on belting and Chapter 14 for more info on styles of singing.) Raising the larynx too high creates a tight or squeezed sound. Some teachers talk about a raised larynx for belting. If you drop the larynx low for classical singing, the position of the larynx is higher for belting. I prefer to call it a *neutral position* because thinking of a raised larynx may encourage you to push up or press to raise your larynx.

You want to release the larynx on the inhalation so that it opens. Not releasing the larynx upon inhalation can cause fatigue, because the muscles in the larynx are always in action when you're singing. Those muscles need a rest between phrases. See Chapter 4 on breathing for information on dropping the larynx when you inhale.

With your finger on the middle of your throat, hum a few bars of your favorite song. The buzzing sensation that you feel is your vocal cords vibrating and creating tone. Awesome! You may feel that buzzing sensation in your lips or around your nose. You can even feel the vibrations on the crown of your head. Because you can't see your voice, feeling the vibrations of sound is important. Your singing voice makes vibrations that you can feel in your body and hear resounding in the room. Trusting the feeling of good technique is important, because each room that you sing in has different acoustics. To monitor your tone, learn to feel the vibrations instead of relying on reverb.

Dropping your larynx

Nonsingers usually have a high-resting larynx. That's because most of the muscles in the neck are designed to keep the larynx high — which isn't what you want for singing. You have to figure out how to keep the larynx in a lower or more neutral position in your throat for singing.

REMEMBER

To drop your larynx, you can use the beginning of the yawn, as you did in the earlier section, "Dropping the jaw." Avoid intentionally pushing down the back of your tongue, as most people do when first trying to drop the larynx: If you push your tongue down, you also feel the larynx push down and you feel a tightening of the muscles under your chin. This tight sensation isn't what you want for singing. It may take you a while to feel the difference between pushing down and dropping. The correct sensation is to feel your tongue moving forward and stretching the space between the parts of the larynx so that the bottom part of the larynx drops. You can also try the following suggestions to drop the larynx without pushing the tongue:

- **Smell something yummy.** Inhale slowly as you smell something positively wonderful. When you smell something yummy — or even pretend to — your throat opens and your larynx drops. Try smelling something yummy a few times and just notice what you feel. After a few tries, smell something yummy again and put your hand on your throat to notice whether your larynx dropped.
- **Open the space behind your tongue.** If you release your tongue forward, inhale, and pretend that the space behind the tongue opens — or the space between your tongue and the back wall of your throat — you may feel your larynx drop. Releasing or opening the back wall of the throat while releasing the tongue forward helps you drop your larynx.

Now, how do you keep the larynx dropped when you make sound? Good question — and it takes some practice for you to maintain the lower position of your larynx. Remember, the larynx is designed to ride high in your throat, but you want it to lower for singing classical music or at least stay in a neutral position for singing more contemporary music. Try the following suggestions to drop your larynx and leave it there while you make sound:

- **Drop and breathe.** When you feel the dropping sensation of the larynx, just breathe in and out (inhale and exhale) and leave the larynx in the low position. It may take a few days of experimenting before you can keep it steady while you breathe. When you can keep it steady while breathing, try the next suggestion.
- **Drop and make sound.** Say "*ah*" on a low note. Notice whether the larynx stays in the same place when you say "*ah*." Make the same sound several more times so you can really feel what's happening. If the larynx bounced up when you said "*ah*," try again. Release the larynx down and say the "*ah*" again. It seems simple, but it may take a couple of days of experimenting before you can make sound without the larynx jumping up. Remember to make a sound low in your range; trying to make a sound too high in your range is hard for a novice. It took me several days to learn to keep my larynx steady when I made

sound. When you're confident that your larynx can stay steady with the "*ah*" sound, try the next suggestion.

- **Drop and slide around on pitch.** Drop the larynx, say "*ah*," and slide around a little bit in pitch, almost like you're saying "*ah-hah*." This sound is the one you make when you finally understand what someone told you. Keep exploring the "*ah-hah*" or sliding around on pitch before moving on to the next suggestion.
- **Drop and sing.** When you can keep the larynx steady while breathing or making simple sounds, try singing. Sing a simple two-note pattern or three-note pattern similar to what you see in Figure 3-1. Use this pattern, but sing it low in your range. When you're confident that the larynx stays steady, you can gradually sing higher.

Keep the larynx steady as you sing by visualizing the space in your throat opening farther as you ascend in pitch and by keeping your breath moving steadily. The larynx may tilt as you ascend, but shouldn't rise.

Matching Pitch

You may be familiar with the phrase "You can't carry a tune in a bucket" or "You're tone deaf." If either phrase sounds familiar, I have some good news. You can develop a sense of pitch, so you can carry a tune in a bucket.

PERFECT AND RELATIVE PITCHES

Perfect pitch involves naming a note and singing it without hearing the pitch first. For example, singers with perfect pitch can sing Middle C correctly without hearing it first. They can also pick up a piece of music that they've never heard and sing all the correct notes without hearing the first note. You can't develop perfect pitch — you're either born with it or you're not — and even if you have it, you don't automatically sing every note in tune. Relative pitch, however, can be developed.

Relative pitch involves guessing at the note and usually getting close to the exact pitch. Most singers develop relative pitch from singing their scales or even singing a certain song over and over. They often begin on the correct note just by knowing the way it feels. Perfect pitch may sound cool, but it's not necessary for good singing.

Being able to hear a pitch in your head or from an external source, such as the radio or a piano, and then sing it is called matching pitch. The first step to matching pitch is figuring out how to hear the pitch in your head so you can match it. The second step is matching it with your voice. Matching pitch is a skill. Perhaps it's not your strongest skill today, but you can improve with some practice. Using my suggestions in this section, you can improve your ability to match pitch and join in at the next campfire sing-along.

REMEMBER

Matching pitch may be tricky for you in the beginning. If you've never been able to do it, matching pitch won't happen instantly, but you can improve with some practice. Be patient and keep trying!

Sliding up and down on pitch

Sliding up and down on pitch gives you the chance to hear a pitch from an external source, such as a piano, and then sing that pitch or slide around until you match it. Sliding away from the right note allows you to hear the vibrations of your voice clashing with the wrong note and then match the right note.

TIP

With practice, you can match any pitch, but start in the middle part of your range and work your way up.

1. **Play a note on any instrument.**
2. **After you play the note, feel it in your body — visualize yourself singing the note before you actually sing it.**
3. **Play the note again and sing it.**

   If you didn't match the pitch, slide up and down until you match it.

   You can keep playing the note until you match it. How do you know when you've matched it? You'll hear that the vibrations of your voice and the vibrations of the note sound similar. The sounds will blend together.
4. **Play a different note.**
5. **Visualize it and hear the note in your head before you sing it.**
6. **Now sing the note.**

   If you miss again, slide up and down until you match the pitch.

If you sang the correct note after some practice, good for you. Play the note again. This time, intentionally slide above the note or higher than the note, and then slide back down and match it again. The next time, try sliding below the pitch and then back up to match it. This exercise trains your ear to hear the matching vibrations of your voice and the instrument.

TIP

You can also ask someone to sing a note and hold it out. Listen to the person sing the note for a moment, and then try to match the pitch. Make sure that the note isn't too high; matching pitches that are close to your speaking range is easier than matching pitches that are outside your speaking range. As your partner sings, try sliding around until you match their pitch. If you still aren't sure, ask them to tell you when you get it right. This buddy system is beneficial for you because your buddy can be the pitch monitor. As you explore pitch, find a buddy of the same gender: It's usually easier to match the pitch with someone who's the same gender.

Track 3

PLAY THIS

On Track 3, listen to the note played on the piano and then listen to the singer sliding above and below the pitch. This exercise helps you understand what I mean about the vibrations of your voice matching the correct pitch. You can hear the clashing of the sounds when the singer is too high or too low, and you can hear the similar vibrations when the singer matches the pitch.

Developing muscle memory

For some folks, a link is missing between hearing the pitch and singing it. Developing what's called muscle memory can bridge the gap, however. *Muscle memory* refers to your body remembering how to do a task — like riding a bike or typing. In singing, your voice remembers how it felt to sing a certain note or exercise so that you can recall that feeling the next time you sing the note. Practice the following exercise so you can develop muscle memory for matching pitch.

1. **Find a quiet place and take a few moments to listen to your favorite tune in your head.**
2. **Take a moment and try to feel the pitch in your body.**

   What does that mean? If I asked you to imagine yourself speaking, you'd feel or imagine the sensation in your body. You hear the sound of your speaking voice in your head when you're rehearsing that funny joke for the dinner party or practicing your acceptance speech for the big awards banquet. Now I want you to feel the sensation of singing the tune that you hear in your head.
3. **Visualize yourself singing the notes in the first few lines to process the message that your brain sends to your vocal cords.**
4. **Sing a few lines of the tune.**

   Were you close? If you sang most of the notes on target but missed a few, go more slowly. Take more time between hearing the pitch in your head and singing it. You can even sing a nursery rhyme that isn't as complicated as your favorite tune.

Recording yourself and singing along

Another way of discovering how to match pitch is to record yourself singing along with another recording. This exercise gives you a chance to compare the notes you sing with the notes that the singer on the recording sings. Listening to yourself singing on a recording is different from listening to yourself singing live. You can be more objective and hear the difference between what you sang and what was on the original recording.

1. **Choose your favorite song and select a recording device and a device to play the song.**

   Record with any device you have, but recording with a digital recorder such as your computer or the voice recorder app on your smartphone offers a better quality.

2. **Start playing the song at the same time you begin recording.**
3. **Hold the recorder near your mouth and sing along with the song.**

   Sing at least half the song.

4. **Stop the song and the recording.**
5. **Be brave and play the recording.**

   Were you close to matching the pitches? Did you hit most of the notes? Missing only the high notes is fine for now. You can read more about singing higher notes in Chapters 11 and 12.

   If you missed most of the notes, go back and review the previous two exercises (from the sections "Sliding up and down on pitch" and "Developing muscle memory").

REMEMBER

Not liking what you hear on the recording is normal. Don't give up yet! You'll get used to hearing your voice recorded. Comparing your sound to the artist's recording isn't fair, because the artist probably spent thousands of dollars for a sound engineer to edit out any minor imperfections.

Releasing Tension for Better Tone

Anytime you sing, be aware of how your body moves to create tone. When you sing, you want your body to be free of tension so that you create a round, full sound. For example, if you're singing and your body is tense and your throat is tight, the tone will be tight, thin, or strident. You don't want that.

The following exercises in this section help you discover how to release tension from your neck, jaw, and tongue to create that beautiful tone. But before you try those exercises, get your entire body into alignment by reviewing the exercises in Chapter 3.

Checking for neck or jaw tension

Having a loose jaw and flexible tongue is important. The tighter your jaw, the tighter the sound — and the tighter your tongue, the more difficult it is to make your song understood.

Become aware of the back of your neck and jaw as you sing so that you can monitor whether you have a flexible jaw and tongue. Follow these steps:

1. **As you step into alignment, notice what you feel in the back of your neck.**
2. **Massage the back of your neck to release any tension.**

   As the tension melts away, notice how easy it is to move your head without tension in the back of your neck. Feel your head balanced on your spine and floating above your shoulders.
3. **When your neck feels tension-free, notice what your jaw is doing.**

   Without even realizing it, most people clamp down on their jaw. Everyday stress can lead to clenched teeth and clamped jaws.
4. **To relieve a cramped feeling in your jaw, let your jaw hang loose as if you were asleep.**

   More than likely you've seen people snoring with their jaw hanging wide open for any old bug to fly right in. Allow yourself to explore this feeling of release and openness in your jaw.
5. **When you feel the fluid motion, try singing a few lines of a song.**

   Combine correct posture and breathing and open space in the throat and mouth with fluid motion of the jaw and neck. Whew! That's plenty to think about, but you can do it.

Bouncing the tongue and jaw

To create great sound, your tongue needs to be just as released as the rest of your body while you sing. The tongue is a huge muscle, and if it's tense or bunched up in the back, it blocks or squeezes the tone, making it sound tight. Your tongue should just lie like a rug — relatively flat — in your mouth except when you're making consonant and vowel sounds that require you to arch your tongue. (You

can find exercises for singing vowels in Chapter 8 and consonant exercises in Chapter 9.)

REMEMBER

Isolating the movement of the tongue and jaw is important because you don't have to press your tongue down to move your jaw or move your jaw when your tongue moves. The tongue and jaw are members of the same team, but they don't have to play at the same time. You can do the following to make sure that your tongue is released and working on its own:

1. **Without moving your jaw, say "Yuk."**

   Saying the y allows you to move the back of your tongue.

2. **Again, without moving your jaw, say "*Yah-yah-yah-yah-yah*."**

   Did you notice how your tongue was bouncing? You may need to look in the mirror or hold your hands on your jaw to notice if it moves.

3. **Bounce your tongue again and then let it rest in your mouth.**

   Notice what the tongue feels like when it's resting in your mouth. It's not tense or pushing up or down. It's just lying in your mouth.

4. **Bounce your jaw and say "*Yah-yah*."**

   Say "*Yah-yah*" several times, and let your jaw bounce or move up and down as you say it. Notice how it rests in place after you say the syllables. You want your jaw, like your tongue, to hang loose, ready to move at any moment — but not tense.

PLAY THIS

Use the musical pattern in Figure 5-1 to practice the following exercise (don't forget to step into your alignment and breathe):

1. **Sing "Y*a*h" on each note to feel the movement of your tongue.**

   For now, don't move your jaw. Just use your tongue to sing the "Y*a*h."

2. **After you explore that sensation, sing the pattern again, but sing an "*a*h" with your tongue resting in your mouth.**

   Notice how released your tongue can be when you sing the *a*h vowel.

3. **Sing the pattern again, and bounce your jaw and sing "Y*a*h-y*a*h."**

   Allow the jaw to move as you sing. You'll still be able to sing.

4. **Sing the pattern again, using the *a*h vowel, and let your jaw be still.**

   Notice that the jaw is hanging loosely and is open.

TRACK 4

1. y*a*h-y*a*h-y*a*h-y*a*h-y*a*h- y*a*h-y*a*h- y*a*h
2. *a*h _____

FIGURE 5-1: Bouncing the tongue and jaw.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

TIP

In the musical example in Figure 5-1, notice how the syllables are divided underneath the note. The y*a*h-y*a*h is written underneath every note, but the *a*h has a line moving off to the right. That line indicates that you sing "*a*h" and hold it out for the length of the pattern. You don't have to re-sing the *a*h vowel for each note. Get out some music to see how the syllables are divided for some familiar words. Understanding this process helps you master a new song because you can guess which note and which syllable belong together.

2 Improving Your Singing

IN THIS PART . . .

Discover what's important about tone to keep you moving in the right tonal direction.

Examine what resonance really is and isn't and why it's essential when you want to be heard in the back of the auditorium.

Appreciate why vowels and consonants need to be distinct in order for your audience to be able to understand you. The exercises in this part get your vowels and consonants whipped into shape.

Understand how you can develop a practice routine to polish your technique.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Using space and breath to create tone
- Maintaining that beautiful tone
- Discovering your own vibrato

Chapter 6
Acquiring Beautiful Tone

To create your own beautiful, engaging tones, you need to make space for the tone to resonate, and you need to apply the breathing skills that you can pick up in Chapter 4. Space and breath are great partners in tone production. If you invite space to the singing party and don't invite breath, the space closes down. So think of those two factors as a team, and keep them working together. This chapter gives you all the tools you need to create your space and breath team while creating and sustaining beautiful tone and vibrato.

Creating Tone

When you sing, you want to create different sounding tones on purpose. For beginners, I recommend that you work for tones that are clear and ringing and then figure out how to alter that and make breathy tones. But making a clear tone takes practice and know-how. You need to know how to control your muscles and the movement of air to easily change the tone.

WARNING

You want to create a variety of tones (including breathy tones), but you don't want to produce a tight tone. Read the following:

- **Breathy:** A *breathy* tone is fuzzy and unfocused. To get an idea of what a breathy tone sounds like, pretend that you're whispering a juicy secret to a friend. The fuzzy tone that you use when whispering isn't clear or ringing.

When you sing with a breathy tone, you lose plenty of air. It takes much more air to sing a breathy tone than it does to sing a clear one.

- **Tight:** When your muscles are so *tight* that they squeeze the sound out, you get a tight tone. If you've ever run out of breath but kept singing by pressing or squeezing, you've produced a tight tone. Imagine using that sound to sing an entire song. Whew, how tiring!

REMEMBER

Instead, you want to move air (exhale) to create a free, large, colorful, open tone. Using too much physical pressure in the throat (which feels like squeezing) creates a tight, constricted sound; not connecting enough air creates a fuzzy or airy tone. You need to find the happy medium — a tone that's connected to air and sounds clear. By coordinating the flow of air from the breathing skills you developed in Chapter 4 and by keeping the space in your throat open, you can control the quality of your tone.

Starting the tone

Onset of tone refers to starting a tone for singing. You can start a tone in two ways: with physical force or with air. You have to use some physical exertion to sing, but the exertion comes from energy moving to coordinate the muscles for breathing. Too much physical force results when the muscles in the throat press together with very little air flowing. By starting the tone with a consistent breath flow and an open throat, you create a tone that has a better quality. Starting the tone with air applies the same idea as producing the lip trill (see Chapter 4) or tongue trill. When you start the lip trill, the air passes between your lips, suction pulls them together, and they flap in the breeze. Your vocal cords do the same when you start the tone by coordinating a consistent flow of air.

The easiest way to start the tone, *humming,* involves singing or making a tone with your lips closed. Think of humming as a prolonged *M.* Try it. If you aren't sure whether your tone was clear, say, "Uh-huh," with your mouth closed — the sound you make when you're reading the newspaper and someone asks you a question. Say "Uh-huh" again to hear and feel the clarity, and then use that same feeling to hum part of a song. The clarity of tone from your "Uh-huh" is different from the whisper you use to explore breathy tone. You can feel the difference in vibrations between a breathy tone and a clear tone. The clear tone creates stronger vibrations in your throat, mouth, and nasal passages. You may feel vibrations in all three locations, or the vibrations may vary depending on how high or low you're singing or speaking. Remember this feeling so that you can start the tone clearly each time you sing it.

WARNING

When you start a tone, don't rely on the sound. The sound may be different in each room, so you want to rely instead on the feeling, which should be more consistent from room to room and day to day in your singing. See Chapter 7 on resonance for information about projecting sound and how it may vary in different rooms.

Creating back space

In the days before computers, people often used the phrase back space to refer to moving the carriage of a typewriter back one space. In singing, *back space* refers to the space in the back of your mouth and in your throat. Just opening your teeth or the front of your mouth (front space) shows off your gorgeous pearly whites, but it doesn't do enough for your tone. Yes, you do have to open your teeth to create enough back space, but the big opening has to be in the back of your mouth and your throat. For space and breath to work together, you need to open the space quickly and then move the breath. (See Chapter 4 for more information about breathing.)

TIP

To create the open space necessary for great tone, pretend that you have an egg in the back of your mouth. You can use other images, such as a golf ball, if you don't like eggs. Compare the feeling of the space when it's closed and when you have the egg sitting on the back of your tongue. Practice opening that space quickly. Allow your tongue to release down, not press down.

Try singing part of your favorite song. Find the openness from the imaginary egg in the back of your mouth, and begin singing with the throat and the back of your mouth open. Remember to find the same clarity that you had when you were humming. You can compare the tone change by first singing with the throat and back of the mouth closed and then singing with the space open. If you aren't sure about the difference in the sound, record yourself and listen.

The first few times you open the space in the back of your mouth, the resonance may sound hooty, as if the sound is in the back of your mouth. Allow the tone to be hooty while you learn to coordinate the space. Eventually, you will be able to open the space and send the sound forward.

Coordinating air with tone

When you have the space open, you want to coordinate breath with tone to sing. You want the movement of the air to happen at the same time the tone starts.

TIP

Try these three ways of coordinating breath and tone:

- **Whistle:** Whistling requires that you move some air between your lips as you make tone. This coordination of breath is similar to singing. Whistle a tune or whistle at an attractive person. Notice how your body moves. You can't whistle without using air, and the air movement and start of the tone happen simultaneously.
- **Laugh:** Laughter is mostly about connecting air with the start of the tone. Take a few minutes to explore that feeling of boisterous laughter. Let the sound vary in pitch and change to higher and lower pitches as you extend the laughter. Notice the movement in your body as you laugh. More than likely, your body moves exactly as I describe in Chapter 4. That means your lower abs (that's short for *abdominal muscles*) move in, and your sides move out as you exhale to make the sound.
- **Play:** Pretend that you're on the playground, having a blast on the swing or the merry-go-round. Kids often exclaim "Weeeeeeeee!" when they're delighted by moving fast. The "Weeeeeeeee" may start on a high pitch and gradually slide down, or you might extend the sound without changing pitch. Notice that this exclamation is clear and that you're moving breath as you sustain the sound.

After you explore these three suggestions, try singing part of a song to notice the flow of your air as you start the beginning tone of each phrase. You want the air to be moving consistently the entire time you sing, and you want the open space to remain open as you sing.

Sighing your way to clarity

Certain styles of music don't require clarity in the tone, but you want to be singing a breathy tone by choice instead of having no idea how to sing clearly when you really want to. Sighing helps you focus on finding this clarity of tone. It allows you to make sounds without worrying about singing precise pitches, which you needn't bother with for this exercise.

TIP

Start a sigh at a comfortable pitch, and maintain the sound of a sigh as you slide down pitches. The sigh can also be called a siren. Sigh or siren as if the sound moves up and down a three-story building. If your sigh is clear, continue your exploration and move to higher pitches. If your tone isn't clear, try to make a more-energetic sigh. Adding more energy to the sigh means connecting your body to the sigh. Engage your entire body in sighing by moving as you sigh. Move your body in such a way (leaning, bending, stretching) that you feel as if your entire body is surging and sighing. Using this exertion of energy when you sing also

helps you find clarity in your tone. Your breath is flowing to complete a specific physical movement, which helps with the onset of tone. Filling a room with a clear tone is easier than filling it with a fuzzy tone. Without a microphone, you need a clear tone to be heard when you sing.

Younger singers often have a breathy tone, caused by lack of coordination. To create a clear tone, you need to use correct technique without adding pressure. Doing so involves getting the breath ready and then adding the energy that I just described. If you have a breathy tone, work on your breathing skills (see Chapter 4) to better understand that movement in your body. When you've polished your breathing skills, focus on tone production. Your tone may also continue to change as you mature, which is normal. Just remember what good technique feels like and keep working to make it a habit in your body.

If you aren't sure whether your tone is clear, record your practice session and imitate Marilyn Monroe's unfocused tone when she sang "Happy Birthday, Mr. President"; then imitate an opera singer to find clear tones. The point is to find out what your tone sounds like and know when a clear tone is appropriate. You can use a breathy tone if you want that style and sound. Norah Jones has a breathy tone, but she's an example of someone singing pop and jazz music with a microphone, using that tone on purpose.

Releasing Tone

Releasing a tone doesn't sound nearly as important as singing the tone. You sing a tone and then release it or stop singing. Singing requires that breath move out of your body (exhale), and releasing the tone simply requires that you inhale. Sounds easy doesn't it? Practice the following two exercises a few times to get the feeling in your body. In the heat of the performance, you want your body to remember how to let go of the tone so you can quickly take in that next breath.

Inhaling to release tone

An easy way to practice releasing tone is to inhale. Sing an *ah* vowel and, when you're ready to stop the tone, simply inhale. The first few times you try this, it may feel funny. You may think that you haven't done it right, because it was too easy. Practice singing the *ah* and releasing several times in a row: *ah,* inhale, *ah,* inhale, *ah,* inhale. This exercise allows you to feel that singing is exhaling, releasing a tone is inhaling, and the breath is always in motion, whether going in or out. Remember that when you inhale, you want to release the muscles in your throat. If you keep the muscles tight, you gasp, because the air is trying to pass through a tight space.

Letting your throat go

After you explore inhaling to release the tone, try letting your throat go and releasing all the muscles in your throat. You may still have enough air to keep singing, but you have to release the tone if you're at the end of the song or the end of a phrase. Just think of releasing in your throat by letting go of all the muscles to stop the tone. You may end up inhaling, but you don't have to worry about that action, because your body took care of it. As a young singer, I was afraid to sing higher pitches because I didn't know how to stop them without choking on the consonant. Think of the release as a liftoff from the tone or a liftoff from the consonant, and don't worry about stopping the tone.

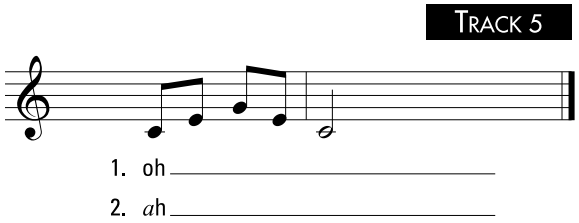
Sustaining Tone

Sustaining tone is a singing must. Have you ever run out of air before the end of the phrase in your song and then had to sneak in a breath? Sneaking in a breath is legal when you sing, but I want you to sneak a breath because you choose to, not because you have to. Among the times you ran out of air, you may even have had to take a breath in the middle of a word. Yikes! It's not a federal crime, but you came to the right place for some tips on applying your breathing skills to sustain tones.

Connecting the dots with legato

Those gorgeous tones that professionals sing so effortlessly happen because they know how to connect the pitches of a song. Singers sometimes sing a melody one pitch at a time, not thinking of a continuous line or phrase. To make the phrases *legato* (smooth and connected), think of the pitches as having no empty space in between. The sound needs to flow from one pitch to the other, and the feeling in the throat must be a continuous sound even while you change pitches. Singing a long line of tone is possible because of breath control. If you haven't read Chapter 4 on breath control, do so now so that you can apply those skills as you attempt to sing legato lines.

While singing the pattern in Figure 6-1, focus on making the sound legato and concentrate on the connection between pitches. Find your alignment, practice the breath a few times, open the back space, and begin. Allow your muscles of inhalation to open as you inhale and steadily move back in as you sing.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

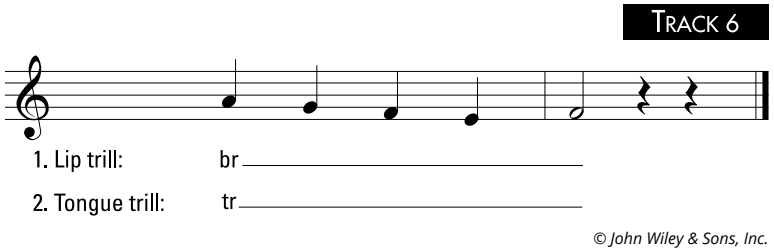
FIGURE 6-1: Creating a legato line.

Trilling the lips or tongue

The lip trill is an exercise that I explain in Chapter 4. This time, you're going to really let those lips trill on a longer, slower musical pattern. The purpose of the lip trill is to monitor the flow of air — you can't continue the lip trill without the air flowing. By making the pattern longer, you get an opportunity to sustain the tone longer. If that lip trill is just too much for you, feel free to use a tongue trill. The principle is the same: trilling the tongue but maintaining a consistent flow of air. For this pattern, you want to monitor how your body moves as you trill — gradually moving. Review the exercises in Chapter 4 for tips on how to manage exhalation.

PLAY THIS

Focus on creating a legato line as you sing the pattern in Figure 6-2. Find your alignment, prepare your breath, and begin.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 6-2: Trilling a long legato line.

Working your breath control

The pattern in Figure 6-3 gives you the chance to sing and put all your eggs in the basket. Instead of playing the exercise faster, I slow it down to make it harder, so you really have to work the breath. Think through all the skills that you can apply (using great posture, opening the space in your throat and mouth, and getting breath in your body) so you're ready to put it all together when you sing this pattern.

TRACK 7

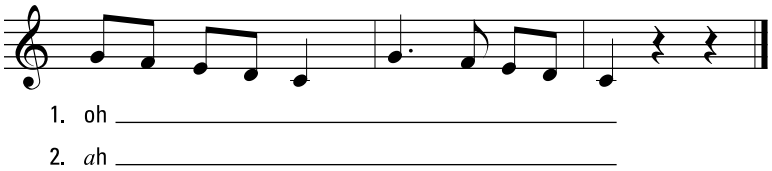


FIGURE 6-3: Managing long phrases.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 6-3 is played slowly to allow you to lengthen your breath and sing long legato lines. You have time between each repetition to get your breath. Remember to find your alignment, open the back space, allow the breath to drop in your body each time, and keep your chest steady throughout the pattern. You can review the exercises on breath control at the end of Chapter 4 if you have trouble with this pattern.

Finding Your Vibrato

Vibrato, the variation of a sustained tone or pitch, is one of the differences between singers and styles of music — how much vibrato they use and whether they use it all the time. A normal vibrato rate is five to eight pulses or fluctuations in the tone per second.

Vibrato can be fast or slow, depending on the singer. A really slow vibrato is sometimes called a *wobble,* which is often created by a lack of breath coordination. Vibrato that's too fast is called a *tremolo* and usually results from too much tension somewhere in the throat or neck area. Keep reading to find out what exercises can help you find your vibrato and to discover the difference between *straight tone* (no variation in pitch) and vibrato.

When you sing, one option is to use straight tone, with no vibrato or variation in the tone. You can use straight tone when you sing various styles of music, but you want the straight tone to be a choice, because it's a different sound. Knowing how to move from straight tone to a tone with vibrato is important in adding variety to your singing tone. Young singers (before they hit puberty) don't always have vibrato, but almost everyone else has it or can acquire it.

TIP

One way to understand vibrato is to listen to other singers, especially classical singers. Almost every classical singer has vibrato. Listen to the pitches as the singer holds them out, to hear the variation of the tone. After you spend some time listening to others, record yourself singing a song that has sustained pitches. Listen to the recording of you singing. Notice the variations of your tone as you

hold out the pitches. You may find that the vibrato was there all along, and you just didn't know it or didn't know what it was called.

Moving from straight tone to vibrato

When you sing, you can choose to create tone that has variation in pitch (vibrato) or not (straight tone). Absolutely nothing is wrong with straight tone singing, as long as that's your choice. Your choir director may have asked you to sing straight tones when performing some styles of music (see the nearby sidebar, "Vibrato in different styles," for more info). Many people sing with straight tones because they have too much tension in their neck or throat. You don't have to squeeze in your throat to create straight tone — actually, just the opposite is true. You need to keep the throat open for a tone with or without vibrato.

VIBRATO IN DIFFERENT STYLES

Classical singers use vibrato on sustained tones except in some contemporary or modern music and early classical music. For this material, they use straight tone and vibrato.

Musical theater singers use both vibrato and straight tone. Vibrato is commonly used in earlier musical theater and straight tone is often used in contemporary material. Musical theater singers often start the note with straight tone and then allow the vibrato to come in.

Folk singers tend to use straight tone and some vibrato. The rate or variations in pitch during vibrato are not as drastic in the folk singer compared to the classical singer. If you think of vibrato as an ornament to the sound, then the classical singer uses lots of vibrato to ornament the material, and the folk singer uses only some vibrato.

Rock, pop, country, and R&B singers often use straight tone and some vibrato on sustained tones. Because these styles of music have fewer sustained tones than classical music, the singers have fewer opportunities to use vibrato; therefore, it isn't considered a characteristic of the style. That doesn't mean the artists don't use it, but they use it more sparingly than a classical singer. Artists who cross over between styles of music may have to adjust their vibrato.

Track 8

PLAY THIS

On Track 8, listen to the singer demonstrate the difference between a tone with and without vibrato, as the singer moves from straight tone to vibrato and from vibrato to straight tone. Then you try it. Sing a tone that has vibrato, and then sing a tone that has no vibrato. Now try starting the tone without vibrato and sliding into a tone with vibrato. As the vibrato begins, you feel something release and the movement of the vibrato begin. It's not a huge difference; it's subtle. Try this several times in a row to feel the difference. If you still aren't sure which sound you're making, try whining, which is usually made with a straight tone. Listen to the sound when you whine your way through part of a song, and then open up and really sing.

Imitating another singer's vibrato

Singers who have good coordination of breath and open space usually have vibrato. Think of a singer (probably someone you've heard singing opera or classical music) who makes a huge sound when singing. Now imitate that singer.

Find a quiet place where you can make plenty of sound. Hear the singer's voice in your mind and then imitate that singer. If it helps, open your arms wide, hold a towel, or stand on a chair, so you feel enormous. Imitating someone with good technique doesn't hurt your voice. You may discover that you can make some pretty big sounds yourself.

If you imitate a singer with vibrato, you can probably figure out how to imitate that vibrato, too. When you do, continue to explore that sound and notice what your voice sounds like. You can even record yourself, just to prove that you made that much glorious sound.

If you didn't find a different sound, imitate a different singer. This time choose a larger-than-life opera singer. Be flamboyant and pretend that you've been called in to sing because the star is ill. Fake it and sing some of this singer's songs — even make up the words.

REMEMBER

The key to singing with vibrato is to make the sound happen naturally — don't force it. Explore different kinds of sounds, and work with space and breath to find vibrato.

You may be tempted to create vibrato by bouncing your abdomen or your larynx — but don't. Bouncing your abs or larynx doesn't consistently produce vibrato; instead of forcing it, let the vibrato happen because you keep air consistently flowing, as you did in the exercises in Chapter 4. Ham it up and enjoy vibrato!

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Separating the truth from fiction
- Putting your sound out where folks can hear it
- Understanding what resonance isn't
- Moving your soft palate to achieve the best resonance

Chapter 7
Exploring Resonance

How do all those singers project so much sound without microphones? They take advantage of resonance, the vibrations that create tone. Resonance is the glorious magic that allows a singer to fill a large hall with sound without electronic amplification. Creating tone is the first step in the singing process. (See Chapter 5 for more information on creating tone.) The next step is to refine your tone depending on which style of music you want to sing. Read on to find out more about what type of resonance is desirable for different styles of music, such as classical, pop-rock, country, and jazz, among others.

Sound vibrates in canyons, and you need to take advantage of the small canyons in your body called *resonators* — your throat, mouth, and nasal passages. Chapter 6 discusses how to open the space in the throat and mouth to get the most benefit from those resonators. And by lifting the soft palate, you adjust the resonance in the throat and nasal passages. (For more on your soft palate, see the section, "Eliminating Nasality," later in this chapter.)

In this chapter, you explore the sounds and feeling of resonance and discover where sound can resonate in your body.

Understanding Resonance — Good Vibrations

Resonance is vibrations that create tone within your mouth, throat, and nasal passages. Large, full resonant tones are desirable in some styles of music but inappropriate in other styles. These sections dive deeper into resonance, identifying what resonance is standard for music styles, how you can delve into your own resonators, and what you can do to create resonant sounds.

Identifying resonance in different styles of music

Keep reading to find out what's customary in your favorite style of music:

- **Choral music:** If you're a choral singer, you need resonance so you can be heard when you sing a solo. Use less resonance when you're asked to blend with other singers.
- **Classical music:** Very full resonant tone is desirable in classical music, especially operas. Classical singers try to generate as much resonance as possible to fill the large concert halls when they sing opera. To generate these large resonant tones, you need to really open the space in your throat and the back of your mouth to create a space for the sound to resonate in. Good breath coordination and precise shapes and sounds of vowels further enhance the resonance. (See Chapter 8 on vowels and Chapter 4 on breathing.) For early classical music, you want resonant tone that's slightly less than what's required for the later operas of Puccini, Verdi, or Strauss.
- **Country music:** Country music is currently very similar to pop music. Country singers are great storytellers and they often write songs that are very close to speech. They use resonance as they would in speaking — forward and chatty. Early country singers used a lot of twang — forward nasal resonance similar to their speaking voice.
- **Jazz:** Jazz singers almost always use a microphone and sing with instruments. When you use a microphone, you don't have to work so hard to generate resonance to carry your voice to the back of the club. You need to know how to create clear tone (see Chapters 5 and 6 about tone) and create enough resonance that the microphone picks up your voice.
- **Musical theater:** For this style of singing, you want to create resonance, but not as much as for classical singing. Musical theater singers often wear microphones onstage in productions, so the sound engineer is largely

responsible for getting your voice to carry to the back of the hall. If you generate too much resonance, you sound like a classical singer trying to sing musical theater. Some musical theater roles require a full resonant tone, but classical music requires the most resonance. For musical theater, you want to know how to open the space to generate a lot of resonance when you sing *legit* material (legit means using classical sounds in musicals such as *The Light in the Piazza, Phantom of the Opera,* or *The Sound of Music*), and then adjust the space and resonance when you sing contemporary musical theater material that is more conversational (such as *In The Heights, Memphis,* or *Spring Awakening*).

- **Pop-rock and R&B:** These styles of singing require mostly forward nasal resonance. You need to keep from squeezing the space in the throat and mouth, but you also don't need to be as fully open as classical singers do. The space may not be as wide open but it should be free of tension. Pop-rock and R&B singers also use a microphone. If your tone doesn't have a lot of resonance, the microphone will have trouble picking up your sound and projecting it over the instruments. You want enough resonance to sing the style of music, but not as much as classical singers need.

RESONANCE: FROM CRYING TO CROONING

Listening to popular music on the radio provides you with an opportunity to hear different types of resonance. Pop and country singers use much more *twang* — that sound that's similar to a cry or whine. The resonance isn't made with a wide-open throat and a low larynx, but it still can be a pleasant and enjoyable sound. Other singers, like Frank Sinatra, are called *crooners. Crooning* is like lazy singing — for example, Sinatra always had a microphone in front of him and wasn't worried about projecting to the back of the hall. Classical singers use a lower larynx and have to use plenty of brilliant resonating tones, because they usually don't have microphones on the stage. See Chapter 5 for help with finding and positioning your larynx. Some opera companies amplify the singers, but it's not common practice.

As you listen to your favorite singers, note the difference in the sound and think about what you have to do with your own voice to imitate those sounds. You probably have to change the space in your mouth and throat, and sometimes even change the position of your larynx. Have fun exploring these sounds as you discover the secrets of resonance. By experimenting with all the different resonators, you can better achieve a balanced resonant tone in your own singing voice. If you want some ideas of who to imitate, try listening to these pairs of singers to hear drastic differences in resonance: Loretta Lynn and Gracie Allen, Leontyne Price and Billie Holiday, Lin Manuel Miranda and Andrea Bocelli, Sumi Jo and Bae Suzy, and Enrique Iglesias and Silvestre Dangond.

REMEMBER

Recording artists spend a lot of money altering sounds in the studio. In the studio, you can record until you get it perfect or the engineer can paste the fabulous segments together. A live concert requires that you get it right the first time. You want great technique so you know you can rely on your voice under pressure. Attend live concerts so you can hear the difference in sounds — even the best performers aren't perfect.

Exploring your resonators

When you sing, you want to open the space in your throat and mouth to generate sound in all your resonators (mouth, throat, and nasal passages). Opening the space allows the tone to resonate in the space, but tone needs to move forward when you sing for everyone to hear you; otherwise, you're just staging your own private concert inside your head. Moving the sound forward means taking advantage of the resonators and allowing the sound to really ring in each resonating space while you intentionally propel the sound forward and into the room.

TIP

Try to propel the sound forward by visualizing the tone moving out of you and into the room. Some singers intentionally visualize that they swallow the tone to understand the opposite of moving the tone forward. When you feel that sensation, you can compare it to what you feel when you visualize the tone moving forward and into the room. Read the section "Ringing it out" to explore the feeling of the sound moving forward. Knowing how to access all that resonance can help you fill an entire concert hall, instead of just your car, with great tone.

Keep reading for more information about resonance in the nasal passages, which you feel as vibration in your face. You can check out the information in Chapter 6 on opening the throat, which helps create resonant tone in your throat and mouth. Read Chapter 8 for more about producing equally resonant vowels and making your words heard from the back of the concert hall.

Ringing it out

Swallowing vowels moves the sound into reverse — it's the opposite of propelling the sound forward to achieve the resonance you want. To create resonant tones that resound around the room, allow the sound and sensations of the resonance to move forward. Follow these steps:

1. **Sustain an M consonant by humming.**

   Notice the buzzing sensation in your lips and around your face.

2. **Sustain an M consonant again for a few moments, and then sustain an ee vowel.**

   It sounds like "MMMMMMeeeeeeeeee."

3. **Now sing the same "MMMMMMeeeeeeeeee."**

   Note whether the ee buzzes or resonates in the same vicinity as the *M.* Most people say that sustaining the *M* consonant creates a buzz of vibrations around their lips or in the front of their face, so look for that same sensation when you move to the vowel *ee.*

4. **When *M–ee* is easy and you've explored the buzzing sensations for both sounds, try *M–ooh, M–oh,* and *M–ah.***

   M–ah may be harder to feel, but try to sing *a*h and keep the same vibrations you found in *M–ee.*

5. **When that's easy, roll between consonants and vowels, singing words like *many* and *moment.***

   Maintain the same ring or buzzing sensation of resonance each time as you go from the consonant to the vowel.

Eliminating Nasality

Your *soft palate* is the soft tissue on the roof of your mouth. Knowing where it is and how it moves can help you make resonant tones. A soft palate that lifts helps create the ringing sound that you want. If the soft palate doesn't lift, the sound is nasal. Exercise your soft palate so that it lifts on command and you avoid that nasal sound.

TIP

To check for a nasal sound, sing part of your favorite song and hold your nose. If you have a balanced, resonant sound, your sound won't change and you can successfully sing while holding your nose. If the sound does change, you likely have a nasal sound.

Getting the feel for soft palate work

Seeing your soft palate in action helps you visualize it working correctly. But before you watch it work, you need to find out where it is in your mouth.

Run your tongue along the back of your front teeth and then along the roof of your mouth. You can feel a ridge right after your gums, then the hardness of the hard palate, and then the soft tissue at the back. That soft tissue is your soft palate.

To see your soft palate move, follow these steps:

1. **Shine a flashlight in your mouth while looking in the mirror.**
2. **Yawn so that you can see the soft palate lift.**
3. **Say "Hung" or "Ugh" to see the tongue and soft palate touch.**

If you aren't sure what your soft palate feels like when it moves, then I give you my permission to cut some zzzzz's and snore. Snoring helps you feel your soft palate moving.

TIP

To feel the soft palate, pretend that you're snoring in your sleep. Snore with your mouth open and take in air through your nose. If this only gets your nose quivering, put your fingers on your nose and close off your nostrils. When you close your nostrils, try snoring again by breathing through your mouth. That quivering you feel is your soft palate moving.

REMEMBER

As you practice the exercises in this section, bear in mind how it felt and looked to have your soft palate lift and to have your tongue touch your soft palate. These movements, when coordinated, keep your sound from being too nasal.

Coordinating your soft palate and tongue

When you know where your soft palate is and how it feels when it moves, you need to discover how to coordinate that movement of your soft palate with your tongue. Knowing how to move the soft palate is important for speaking and singing, because you want the soft palate to lift for a resonant tone. If the soft palate doesn't lift, you make a sound that has too much resonance in your nose, or a "nasal sound," as you may have heard someone say. To make a sound that has a resonant tone, explore the following exercises to help you feel the movement of the tongue and soft palate in words. You can then apply that same knowledge to your singing. When it's time to sing a consonant that requires moving the soft palate, move the tongue and soft palate until they touch and then lift the soft palate back up and release the tongue down.

In Chapter 9, you can explore consonants. To prepare for some of the movements you need to make in your mouth, you want to be able to move your tongue to touch your soft palate and then go back down and rest in your mouth. To feel how the back of your tongue raises to meet your soft palate and then moves back down, do the following:

1. **Move the soft palate up and down.**

   Stand in front of the mirror and shine a flashlight at the back of your mouth. Locate your soft palate and try to move it. If you aren't sure how to move it, say

"Hung-*a*h" and watch the soft palate and tongue meet and then separate. Say the "Hung-*a*h" several more times until you can feel the muscles that move the soft palate. Try to move the soft palate up and then release. If it still won't move, yawn. The soft palate moves up at the beginning of a yawn. The tongue usually releases down at the beginning of a yawn. You don't want the tongue to push down as it does toward the end of a yawn; you want the tongue to release down as the soft palate moves up.

2. **Lift your soft palate and keep it up for four counts.**

   Review the preceding step to figure out how to lift your soft palate. When you can execute that motion, lift the soft palate and practice keeping it up for four counts. Release it and then hold it up again for four counts. Holding up the soft palate is what you want to do when you sing or speak. Keeping the soft palate up keeps the resonance just right, because dropping the soft palate too low makes the sound nasal.

3. **Move the tongue up and down.**

   Say the "Hung-*a*h" again and watch the back of your tongue move up. See whether you can move the back of the tongue up and down, as you do when you're repeatedly saying a *K* sound. Practice moving the back of the tongue up and down until you're confident that you know how to move it up and then release it.

4. **Separate the tongue and the soft palate.**

   Lift the soft palate and release the tongue. Don't press the tongue down, but release it so there's space in the mouth or distance between the soft palate and the tongue. This opening is what you want to feel when you inhale and when you sing.

Moving air through the nose

Nasal resonance is different from a nasal sound. *Nasal resonance* involves taking advantage of the sound resonating in the nasal passages. If all the sound resonates in your nasal passages, the sound is a nasal sound or too nasal. Air shouldn't be moving out of your nose unless you're humming or for the split second it takes for you to make a nasal consonant (M, N, NG). To help you feel the sounds of nasal resonance and feel the air moving out of your nose, try the following exercise:

1. **Hum a few bars of a song to feel buzzing around your lips.**

   Humming is prolonging an *M* consonant. You should be able to feel the buzzing or resonance of that consonant in your nasal passages.

2. **Try humming while holding your nose.**

   Doesn't work, does it? When you close your mouth and hold your nose, the air has no escape route.

3. **Hum again without holding your nose.**

   Notice the flow of the air coming out of your nose. This escape route is just fine when you're singing, as long as you allow the air to escape only when you're pronouncing nasal consonants, such as *M, N,* or *NG.* When the soft palate lifts again, the air escapes out of your mouth, creating a more balanced resonant tone.

REMEMBER

When you sing a vowel, you want the air to come out of your mouth. If it doesn't, the sound is nasal. Remember that you can have air coming out of your nose as you're singing nasal consonants, but not while you're singing a vowel sound. If air comes out of your nose while you're singing a vowel, you create an undesirable nasal sound, which doesn't take advantage of all the resonators. See Chapter 4 on breathing for help with coordinating your body on sustained tones.

Debunking Common Misconceptions

Now that you understand what resonance is, finding out what it isn't is important, too. Myths and misconceptions about resonance abound, and most have to do with what is — and isn't — a resonator.

WARNING

If you buy into these myths, the tone of your singing voice may not be as good as it can be.

Misconception: Tone resonates in your sinuses

Sometimes a voice teacher says, "Let the tone resonate in your sinuses." It's a nice image, but sound doesn't resonate in the sinuses even though you may feel the vibrations in your face. Sound may resonate in the nasal passages but not in the sinuses. You're feeling *sympathetic vibrations,* also known *as sympathetic resonance.* What the teacher is trying to get you to do is explore the vibrations of sound in your face — or in the mask, as some teachers like to call it.

Your *mask* is the front of your face. Think of the bones and skin on your face as a mask sitting on top of another face. You may feel the sound vibrating like crazy as if you have some metal substance on the front of your face.

No need to correct someone who says, "Let the tone resonate in your sinuses." Just keep exploring sympathetic resonance, and everyone wins.

Misconception: You have to place every tone in the same location

The word *place* is misleading. You can visualize and feel, but you can't literally place a tone anywhere. Place is a common word voice teachers use, and it's not all bad. What they really want is for you to explore the sensations and get the most resonant tone possible from your singing voice. They may say to focus the sound to get the most resonance. Think about how you focus a flashlight to get a strong, clear beam of light. Keep focusing your sound, and know that focusing is often called placing or placement. Remember, these images can help you achieve the sound you're trying to produce.

Also confusing is the fact that you don't feel every tone in the same location. Again, you can focus and try to feel sound in the same place. You probably feel head voice vibrations more in your head or on the top of your head, and you feel chest voice in your chest. Feeling the sounds of chest voice in your head is much harder, so "placing the tones in the exact same location" is tough. Work to find brilliance and focus in all tones, and then remember that feeling, no matter where it is.

Some time ago, I worked with a wonderful director who kept asking me to place the tone outside my lips. When he finally said, "That's right; that's the place," I didn't feel the sound anywhere near my lips. I realized that I had to find the correct sound, notice where I felt it, and remember what it felt like. Remember that every body is different. Where I feel a vibration, you may not. Work to achieve the quality of tone, and remember that the vibration you feel is a result of this.

Misconception: You're supposed to keep your tongue completely flat

The tongue has to move to shape vowel sounds and consonant sounds, so it can't stay down all the time. Releasing tongue tension is different from keeping the tongue down. You can read about releasing tongue tension in Chapter 5. After releasing the tension, you can move the tongue to shape vowel sounds and consonant sounds without pressing up or down. As you can read in Chapter 8, your tongue arches to make certain vowels. Sometimes the arch is in the front of the tongue, and sometimes it's in the back of the tongue. If you're trying to keep your tongue down at all times, you may end up muffling your vowels. Allowing your tongue to do its job when the time comes is easier.

Misconception: You need to open your mouth as wide as possible

Opening the mouth for singing is good. Opening the space in the back of your mouth is excellent. Opening your mouth too far isn't good, however, because the sound spreads. Dropping the chin too far actually closes off the back space. See Chapter 5 for an explanation about opening the jaw. To find the right space, put your second and third fingers together with one finger on top of the other. With your fingers parallel to the floor, place your two fingers in your mouth between your teeth, and see how that space changes the sound when you sing *ah.* Create the space and then remove your fingers. You really can have too much of a good thing if you open your mouth too wide. Open your mouth to let the sound come out, but don't show your tonsils, no matter how beautiful they are.

Misconception: The more forward the sound, the better

It's true that if you swallow your vowels, you create a backward sound, which isn't so great. However, by thinking only of projecting your voice forward as much as possible, you create a piercing sound. You may want to use that sound for a character voice, but I don't recommend doing it for every song. Variety in resonance is important in a song. As an actor you want to create a variety of sounds to represent the story you are telling — every song has a story to tell. See Chapter 18 about acting and creating a journey.

Misconception: You have to smile to stay on pitch

The other counterpart of the smile-to-stay-on-pitch myth is raising your eyebrows to stay on pitch. Raising your eyebrows creates a lift that many people believe helps you stay on pitch. The problem is that this lift can cause unnecessary tension — plus, it makes you look surprised all the time. The same is true about smiling. A smile is a beautiful thing, but it can cause unnecessary tension in your face while singing. Smiling usually pulls the corners of the mouth toward the ears and tightens the muscles inside the mouth. You can still use this idea if you think of a smile gently lifting up the cheeks and opening behind your eyes.

You may also have explored pushing the lips out to focus a pitch. It changes the sound, but you can't always depend on adorable fish lips for ringing sounds. Find the bright resonant sound by exploring sympathetic vibrations so your lips can round to shape the vowels. Read Chapter 5 for more information about matching pitch and Chapter 8 about vowels. If your pitch is good and your vowels are precise, you don't need to tighten anything to help the pitch.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Knowing your back vowels from your front vowels
- Dropping your jaw and using your tongue and lips
- Singing and pronouncing distinct vowel sounds

Chapter 8

Shaping Your Vowels for Clarity

Your grade school teacher taught you that vowels are *A, E, I, O,* and *U.* However, the name of a vowel may differ from its pronunciation. For example, the name of the letter *A* sounds like *Ay,* although that same letter can have one of several different sounds, depending on the word it's in (as in alw*ay*s, after, and sofa). Those sneaky little vowels disguise themselves with different pronunciations in various words: American English has 15 vowel sounds — not 5. Such news may sound like a mouthful, but you make all 15 vowel sounds every day without even thinking about it.

When you hold out a note, you sustain a vowel sound. Therefore, making clear, precise vowel sounds is important if you want to be understood. And to make those precise vowel sounds, you need to know how to shape the vowels quickly, using a specific tongue shape or arch, forming a certain lip shape, and correctly opening the jaw or mouth. If you fudge your vowels, "I miss pizza," may come out as, "A mus pit suh." So if you don't want Aunt Geraldine in the back row turning up her hearing aid until it squeals, check out the exercises in this chapter. I provide you with the information to shape most vowel sounds using your tongue and lips, to pronounce vowel sounds clearly in a sentence, and then to sing vowel sounds to make yourself clearly understood.

SYMBOLS USED FOR PRONUNCIATION

In the front of your dictionary, you can find a chart of symbols that the dictionary uses to help you pronounce the words correctly. Linguists have their own symbols for notating the sounds of vowels and consonants, called the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). (You can also search online for the IPA — just make sure you're not searching for beers.) The system was designed to give a common language to the pronunciation of sounds. Anyone who knows IPA can read a transcription of the words in IPA and sound familiar with the language. Singers usually study IPA in diction classes. Without focusing on the translation, singers pronounce different languages using IPA symbols. In this book, I spell out the vowel sound for you or use symbols found in *Webster's* dictionary, because that's more common to new singers or nonsingers.

You want to generate a consistent resonance for all vowels. Even when the shape changes, the resonance needs to remain solid. Work the vowel exercises in this chapter to produce precise vowel shapes, and check out Chapter 7 for help on keeping the resonance consistent when you change vowels.

REMEMBER

To make vowel sounds, you poise your lips in a certain position and arch your tongue in a specific way. But you need to keep the tip of your tongue against your bottom front teeth for all vowel shapes. Think of this as home base — the tongue stays at home on all vowel sounds. The tip of the tongue moves to make consonants but always returns to home base after you finish the sound of the consonant, to hold out the vowel as you sing a note.

Getting Your Backside into Shape — Back Vowels, That Is

Now you get the chance to explore your back vowels. You make these vowels by arching or raising the back of your tongue near the roof of your mouth, while keeping the tip of your tongue behind your bottom front teeth and keeping your lips rounded. You may be familiar with these vowel sounds (such as *ooh*, *oh*, and *ah*) because of how you shape your lips. Even so, you need to make sure that you keep the tip of your tongue against your teeth and keep your lips poised for action. Keep reading to discover how to quickly move from one vowel sound to the next with clarity and precision.

Exploring the shape of back vowels

In Table 8-1, you can read down each column out loud to feel and hear the same vowel sounds in several words. Then you can read across the page to explore the differences. When you understand the sound and shape of each vowel, you can isolate just the sound, without the word, to move quickly from one vowel sound to the next when you sing.

TABLE 8-1 Exploring Back Vowels

ooh	OOh	oh	a*w*	ah
woo	foot	old	*a*we	f*a*ther
moon	took	obey	fraud	blah
two	should	hotel	fought	bra
who	put	over	talk	plaza

If you read the words across the page from left to right in Table 8-1, you can feel your

- **Jaw** dropping the farthest for the vowel *ah.*
- **Lips** moving from rounded and slightly open for the *ooh* sound to relaxed and open for the *ah* sound. Picture five circles in a row, representing rounded lips. The circle on the left is *ooh;* the lips are close together, with a small, round opening. The second circle is *OOh;* the opening of the lips is slightly larger than with *ooh.* The third circle is *oh;* the opening is slightly larger than with *OOh.* The fourth circle is *aw,* and the opening is slightly larger than with *Oh.* The fifth circle is *ah;* it's the largest of the circles and represents the full opening of the lips.
- **Tongue** arching higher in the back of your tongue on the *ooh* vowel sound and arching only slightly for *ah.* The illustration in Figure 8-1 demonstrates the arch of the tongue for back vowels.

The *OOh* and *aw* sounds are tricky, even if your first language is English. Practicing the *ooh* and *OOh* helps you discover how to distinguish between the two sounds. *OOh* is similar to the sound of und in German. You also want to practice *aw* and *ah* to make a difference between these two sounds.

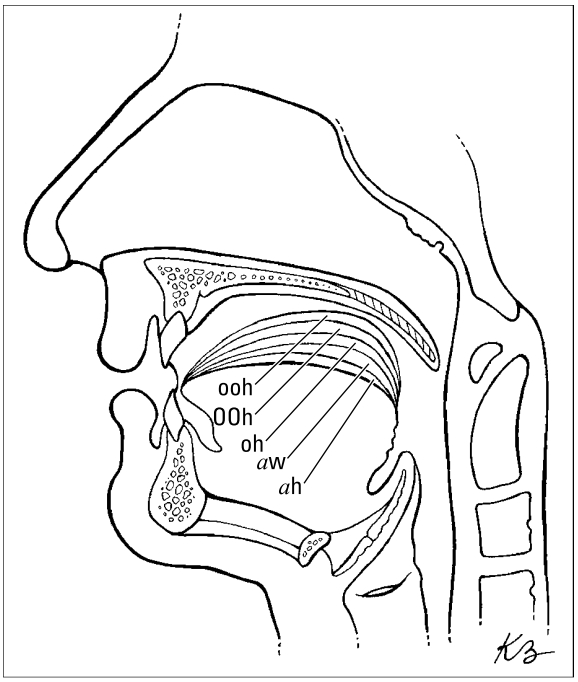


FIGURE 8-1: Back vowels.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Most of these words are pronounced differently across the United States, but the sound of the vowel in *blah* should be the exact same sound for the words *bra* and *plaza.* These pronunciations are for standard American dialect — how American English is supposed to be pronounced. Singers can use their regional dialect when they sing folk music, country, and sometimes pop, but not when they sing classical music or perform musical theater.

WARNING

Just when you were beginning to make sense of all these vowel sounds, along comes a tricky consonant to muddle things further. *W* is considered a consonant, but it sounds like *ooh* (a back vowel sound) and the lips round as in *ooh.* Because the *W* sound glides into another vowel, you make the sound of the word *we* by moving from *ooh* to *ee.*

Lipping around your back vowels

The sentences in the following list give you the chance to put all those shapes you discover in Table 8-1 into action, speaking through a series of similar vowel sounds. Try to recall the shape of each vowel so you can easily differentiate among the vowel sounds when you sing.

- **ooh**

  Wh**o**m d**o** y**ou** b**oo**t?

  Oodles of bl**ue** fr**ui**t j**ui**ce for Br**u**ce.

  Wh**o**se sh**oe**s did Sch**u**bert br**ui**se?

  L**oo**se r**oo**ts sp**oo**ked P**oo**h.

- **OOh**

  The c**oo**k mist**oo**k your f**oo**t for s**oo**t.

  She t**oo**k g**oo**d s**u**gar c**oo**kies.

  The b**u**ll st**oo**d in the cr**oo**k of the br**oo**k.

  C**ou**ld the r**oo**kie p**u**ll w**oo**l?

- **oh**

  Omit **o**vert **o**vations.

  Olivia d**o**nates p**o**etic d**o**mains.

  The m**o**tel l**o**cated the **o**asis.

  R**o**tate the r**o**bust m**o**saic.

- ***aw***

  She s**aw** the fl**aw** in the l**aw**.

  C**au**tion! He b**ou**ght the **aw**ful s**aw**.

  P**au**l, ch**a**lk the w**a**lk.

  F**aw**ns gn**aw**ed the r**aw** str**aw**.

- ***ah***

  Put the c**a**lm b**a**lm on my p**a**lm.

  F**a**ther made m**a**cho t**a**cos.

  The s**a**ga at the sp**a** was a façade.

  Su**a**ve dr**a**ma at c**a**sa L**a**s Vegas.

Singing the back vowels

Sing the pattern in Figure 8-2 to practice shaping the back vowels. (See Chapter 1 for some help with the musical notation in Figure 8-2.) By making precise shapes with the vowel sounds (as you do when speaking through the words in Table 8-1), you can easily make yourself understood when you sing words. When the series of

vowels becomes easy for you, look at Table 8-1 to find words that go with each of the vowel sounds and sing through them.

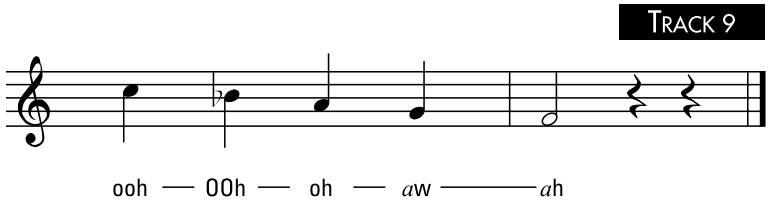


FIGURE 8-2: Alternating vowels for precise lip shapes.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Mastering the Front Vowels

Your tongue arches in the front of your mouth to sing front vowels. Your tongue does most of the work shaping front vowel sounds, but make sure that both your lips and tongue are released and free of tension. The front vowels don't require as much lip action as the back vowels.

Exploring the shape of front vowels

The front vowels are much less open than the back vowels. I'm not saying that your mouth lacks space, but these vowels aren't as wide open as the back vowels. It may sound odd, but it's true.

The vowels in Table 8-2 are called front vowels because the tongue arches in the front of the mouth to make these sounds. Keeping the tip of your tongue touching your bottom front teeth, say the vowel *ee.* Notice how your tongue arches in the front of your mouth when you make the sound. You also feel the sides of your tongue go up. Another difference between back and front vowels is that, when the tongue arches in the front, the sides of the tongue also raise and touch the upper teeth. As you speak through the vowels, you feel your

- **Jaw** drop slightly for the *ee* vowel and gradually move down more as you move from *ee* toward 'a'.
- **Lips** slightly open for the *ee* vowel, and open more as your jaw drops when you move to the most open vowel, 'a'.
- **Tongue** arching in the front, the highest on the *ee* vowel and the lowest on the 'a' vowel, and the tip of the tongue resting against your bottom front teeth.

TABLE 8-2 Exploring Front Vowels

ee	ih	ay	eh	a
me	kiss	ate	bed	asked
eagle	myth	gain	head	passed
flee	wig	day	heaven	master
ski	busy	they	guess	danced

Figure 8-3 shows the arch of the tongue for front vowels.

Some words in Table 8-2 have two vowels. I'm referring to the vowel sound that comes first — in the first syllable.

WARNING

The name of the consonant is pronounced like *why*, but that's not the sound it makes. *Y* is considered a consonant, but it sounds like *ee* (as in the word you — ee-ooh). The sound of the *Y* glides right into the next vowel.

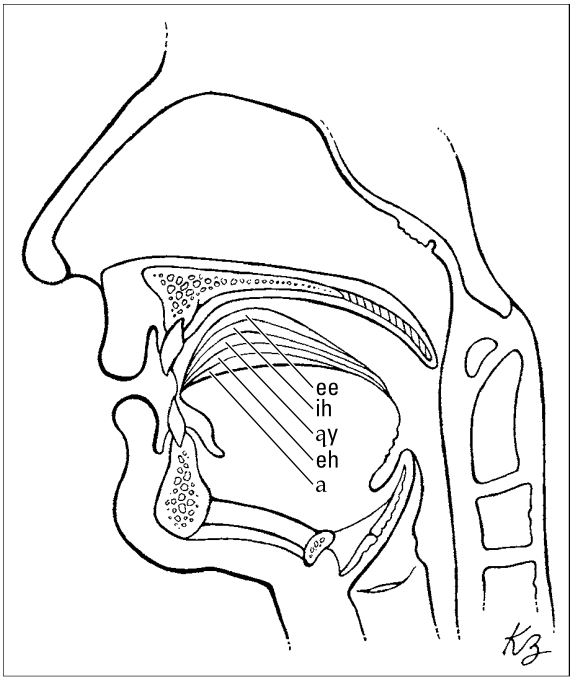


FIGURE 8-3: Front vowels.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc,

Speaking the front vowels

Here you can put all the front vowels in sentences to practice speaking. Using these vowels gives you an opportunity to return to the correct arched position of your tongue after moving through the consonants. You can even use the sentences with front vowels to sing the musical example found in Figure 8-4 when you're confident singing the individual vowels.

» **ee**

W**e** m**ee**t l**ea**n, m**ea**n f**ie**nds.

H**e** gr**ea**sed Ph**oe**b**e**'s kn**ee**s.

Gr**ee**dy **ee**ls **ea**t cr**ea**m.

L**ea**ve m**e** p**ea**s t**ea**sed, **E**ve.

» **ih**

H**i**p ch**i**cks kn**i**t pr**e**tty m**i**tts.

Cl**i**ff f**i**xed **i**ts cl**i**pped w**i**ck.

T**i**m's b**u**sy w**i**th h**i**s b**ui**lding.

D**i**g Ph**i**llip's q**ui**ck s**i**ster L**i**lly.

» **ay**

Gr**ea**t D**a**ne s**a**ves wh**a**le.

Th**ey** s**ay** **A**be g**ai**ned w**ei**ght.

K**a**te s**a**ves **ei**ght pr**ey**.

J**a**mes bl**a**mes D**a**ve's r**ei**gn.

» **eh**

D**e**b's p**e**t p**e**cked **e**very p**e**g.

Ed's h**ea**d sh**e**d r**e**d l**ea**d.

Edge **a**ny h**e**dge, s**ai**d N**e**d.

K**e**lly's m**e**llow g**ue**st f**e**ll d**ea**d.

» **a**

L**a**nce c**a**n't gl**a**nce l**a**st.

Ask h**a**lf **a**fter Fr**a**n.

V**a**st m**a**sks p**a**ss f**a**st.

Pr**a**nce agh**a**st p**a**st gr**a**ssy p**a**th.

TIP

The 'ay' vowel is actually a diphthong, or two vowel sounds together. I include it in the front vowel list because the arch of the tongue is important for making the correct sound. As you make an 'ay' sound, just know that it's a diphthong and that you move through two vowel sounds.

Singing the front vowels

You want to make precise vowel sounds as you sing. Singing a song requires you to move quickly from one vowel sound to the other; you must quickly change the arch of your tongue to accommodate the different vowel sounds. You have to make the shape happen at the speed of the music. If you practice singing the vowels alone, you give yourself the chance to really get them solid before you add consonants in words.

TIP

You may not be able to tell the difference between each vowel sound as you're singing the pattern in Figure 8-4. So record yourself singing along with the online tracks and then listen to the recording. Pretend that you've never seen the pattern and try to distinguish which vowel you're singing. Notice which vowels aren't as precise as others, and you can make those a priority in your next practice session. If they aren't clear, go back and practice making the shape, saying the words with the vowels, and then singing again.

MORE THAN JUST A, E, I, O, *AND* U

By now, you may be amazed to find that you have to reckon with singing 15 vowel sounds, not 5. Even more amazing are all the names given to vowels and their sounds: back vowels, front vowels, diphthongs, and so on. But to get even more technical, vowels can also be open or closed.

- *Open vowels* refer to vowel sounds that require you to open your lips wider, such as *ah* or *aw.*
- *Closed vowels* refer to vowel sounds, such as ee or ooh, because your lips aren't far open when you say those vowels. Think of it as semi-closed to get just the right opening.

All these names for the five little vowels can be confusing or interesting, depending on your point of view. Just tuck away this info so you can understand your director or voice teacher when they talk about vowels, or wow your colleagues with your understanding of vowels the next time you're at the water cooler.

PLAY THIS

Work the vowel sequence in Figure 8-4 to get that tongue arched quickly to get the right vowel sound. If your tongue doesn't move fast enough, you may sing a different vowel. No problem — just keep trying. When you're able to clearly distinguish each vowel sound, insert some words into the pattern for variety and spice in your practice routine.

TRACK 10

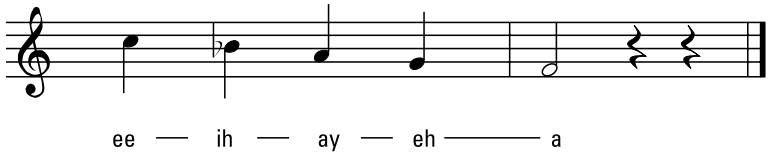


FIGURE 8-4: Arching the tongue while alternating vowels.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

TIP

SINGING VOWELS IN ENGLISH

If English isn't your first language, knowing which vowel or syllable to emphasize when you're singing can be a mystery. In fact, people who speak English as a second language often stand out precisely because they emphasize the wrong syllable in certain words. Sometimes a composer puts a weak syllable of the word on a very strong beat in the music. What to do? You can look up the words in a dictionary to determine which syllable to emphasize and then practice speaking through the text. If you speak through the text, you practice the shapes of the vowels and can familiarize yourself with the flow of the syllables. After you speak through the text, sing through the text of your song. Knowing which syllable to emphasize now makes you sound like English is your native language. Practicing with the exercises in this chapter not only helps you create precise vowel sounds, but also helps you sound like a native English speaker if you emphasize the right syllable. Even if your English is fabulous, you still want to look up words to make sure your pronunciation is correct for singing. Regional accents are great but you want neutral speech (with no accent) when you sing your classical or musical theater songs.

Composers also have to know which syllable is emphasized in a word so they can put it in the right place in the musical phrase. If the word in your song normally has the accent on the second syllable (dir**ect**, res**olve**), the composer may put the first syllable on a long note and accent the weak syllable. Instead of singing **Die**-wreck-t, keep your focus on the second syllable. You're then closer to the right vowel, which is Dih-**rect**. Similarly, instead of focusing on *Reeee*-zolve, keep the musical line moving to the second syllable so that you sing Rih-**zolve**. You have to know which syllable gets the emphasis, just in case the composer gets carried away and emphasizes the weak syllable on a strong musical beat.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Singing consonants like a singer would
- Shaping your mouth, tongue, and lips to fit the sound
- Giving your lips and tongue a consonant workout

Chapter 9
Exercising Consonants for Articulation

No doubt you remember from grade school that consonants make up the bulk of the alphabet — they're all the letters except A, E, I, O, and U — but just knowing which letters are consonants isn't enough to sing 'em. You have to understand how to shape consonants with your tongue and lips so that you can sing them with clarity and precision.

Most people who mumble aren't working and shaping their mouths properly to make distinct consonant sounds. The same is true when singing: You need to understand how to articulate consonants so that what you sing is clear to the audience. After all, the words of a song are the vehicle for telling your story. Knowing how to move your lips and tongue as you sing consonant sounds makes all the difference.

This chapter offers help so that you can clearly enunciate those consonants without sounding forced or tense. I start by telling you about voiced and unvoiced consonants, and then I offer tips on singing soft palate, lip, and combination consonants. Throughout the chapter, I tell you how to shape consonants. (By *shaped*, I mean that your mouth has to shape itself in a particular manner to pronounce the consonant.)

When you come to the tables in this chapter, practice reading the words across the page to compare similar consonant sounds. Read down the column to solidify that particular consonant sound. Solidifying a consonant's sound and recognizing its differences from similar sounds helps you to quickly move with precision from one sound to the next while singing.

TIP

Your tongue is an independent mover and shaker. You don't have to open or close your jaw to move your tongue. Allowing your tongue to move all by itself helps you keep your jaw and the back space open for your high notes. It also helps you look more polished when you sing a fast song if your jaw isn't bobbing at every syllable.

REMEMBER

The name of the consonant isn't the same as the sound. The name of the consonant *D* may sound like *Dee*, but when you sound out the consonant, it sounds like *Dah.*

Saying Voiced and Unvoiced Consonants

Students often ask about the correct pronunciation of words for singing and speaking. Knowing the difference between voiced and unvoiced consonants can help you figure it out.

- *Voiced consonant sounds* are produced by adding vocal sound. An example is the letter *M.* If you say the word *make,* you have to add sound to the letter *M* before you even get to the vowel. (Other voiced consonants include *B, D, G, J, L, N, NG, V, W, Z,* and *ZH.*)
- *Unvoiced consonants* are produced by momentarily stopping the flow of air and making no voice sound. The unvoiced consonant has sound, but the sound comes from the flow of air. The consonant *T* is an example. If you say the word *to,* you don't make any sound with your voice until you get to the vowel. (Other unvoiced consonants include *CH, F, K, P, S, SH,* and *WH.*)

TIP

As you read this chapter, practice the pairs of consonants in the tables so you know when you have to use your voice to help make the consonant sound.

When you're sounding out the ends of words, follow these general rules. The *ed* at the end of a word is pronounced with a *D* sound if the *ed* is preceded by a voiced sound (vowel or consonant), as in the words *headed*, *lingered*, and *roamed.* However, if the *ed* is preceded by an unvoiced consonant, it sounds like a *T*, as in such words as *picked*, *yanked*, *joked*, and *wrapped.*

You may also notice that some consonants can be either voiced or unvoiced based on what follows them. For example the *th* in *bath* is unvoiced, but the *th* in *bathe* is voiced. *Sh* in the word *shoe* is unvoiced, and *zh* in the word *visual* is voiced. *J* in the word *jump* is voiced, but *ch* in the word *champ* is unvoiced. Because most printed dictionaries don't include a guide on which consonants are voiced and unvoiced, you can search for pronunciation websites to hear a particular word pronounced for you.

Making Tip Consonants

You shape *tip consonants* with the tip of your tongue as it touches the *alveolar ridge.* If you slide your tongue along the roof of your mouth, you first feel your teeth, then a small section of gums, and then a ridge — the alveolar ridge. The only tip consonant sound not made on the alveolar ridge is *TH,* which is shaped with the tip of the tongue touching the upper front teeth. Keep reading to discover how to shape the tip consonants correctly as well as sing them. Practicing consonant shapes gives you not only the precision you need to sing, but also the confidence that you're putting your best tongue forward while articulating the tip consonants.

Shaping tip consonants

To sing a song, you take a breath, open the space in your throat and mouth, and then shape for the vowel and consonant. That's a lot to do in the first moment of your song, and all these shapes continue as you sing through the words in your song. Until you're confident that you can shape tip consonants without thinking about it, practice them. *D, T,* and *S* are the most commonly mispronounced tip consonants. *D* is often mistakenly pronounced like a *T.* Be sure to listen for the sound of your voice when you make the *D.* Practicing these shapes every day will help you quickly get the hang of tip consonants.

Working out with D, T, L, N, S, and Z

To shape the tip consonant sounds in Table 9-1, the tip of your tongue touches the alveolar ridge. The voiced consonants are *D, L, N,* and *Z.* The *T* and *S* don't require any voice, so they're unvoiced consonants. While shaping these tip consonants, make sure that your

- **Tongue's** tip is moving from your bottom front teeth to the alveolar ridge behind your front teeth. The tip of your tongue curves for the *D* and *T* and flattens more on the alveolar ridge for the *L* and *N.*

» **Lips** are released and free of tension. In Tables 9-1 and 9-2, as you move from the consonant to the vowel, your lips may be shaped for the vowel sound as the tongue's tip touches the alveolar ridge.

The consonants in Table 9-1 may be pronounced differently in other languages. For American English, you want the tip of the tongue to touch the alveolar ridge for the tip consonants. For other languages, the consonants may be made with the tip of the tongue touching the teeth. For this exercise, practice curving the tip of the tongue slightly so it touches the alveolar ridge for the *D* and *T*, and flattening on the alveolar ridge for the *L* and *N*.

TABLE 9-1 Practicing *D, T, L, N, S,* and *Z*

D	T	L	N	S	Z
do	to	Lou	new	sip	zip
doe	toe	low	no	sap	zap
dab	tab	lab	nab	sing	zing

TIP

If you have a lisp, make your *S* with the tip of the tongue against the roof of your mouth (not your teeth) while the sides of your tongue touch your teeth. If your *S* sounds too similar to a leaky tire, release the grip on the tip of your tongue. Practice saying the word *its*. You say *ih* and then place the tip of the tongue against the alveolar ridge for the *t*. Then the tip of the tongue releases in the center for a tiny stream of air. Release the air slowly to feel and hear the *s*. Hold out the s to feel the movement of the airflow.

TIP

When singing the words *don't you, can't you,* and *could you,* or any other combination that has a *D* or *T* next to a *Y,* make sure that you say, "Could you?" and "Don't you?" and not, "Could jew" or "Don't chew." You can get a laugh in a song in the wrong place if you chew too much on the wrong consonant combination.

Trying a TH

In Table 9-2, you explore the other consonant sound made with the tip of the tongue — *TH*. Unlike the other tip consonants, the *TH* is made with the tongue tip touching the edge of the upper front teeth instead of the alveolar ridge. The first column uses a voiced *TH* sound, and the second column uses an unvoiced *TH* sound.

TABLE 9-2 Practicing TH

Voiced TH	Unvoiced TH
this	theater
the	thin
brother	tenth

Practice saying the words in Table 9-2. While shaping the *TH* in Table 9-2, take note that your

- **Tongue's** tip is touching your bottom front teeth and then moving to touch your upper front teeth.
- **Lips** may move to shape the vowel sound following the *TH.*

For American English, the *TH* sound requires air to move over the tongue. If American English isn't your first language, you may confuse the *TH* sound with *D* because the *TH* sound doesn't exist in every language. To make the *TH* specific, put the tip of the tongue against the teeth and blow a little air. The voiced *TH* sound has the sound of the voice plus air moving. That is different from a *D* sound, which temporarily stops the flow of air.

Tipping for R

The sound for the consonant *R* is the hardest to shape. An *R* can be confusing because it sometimes stands alone as an individual sound and sometimes is closely linked with a vowel. It is a voiced consonant. When you sing words that contain a consonant *R*, you may notice that your

- **Tongue's** tip rises toward the roof of your mouth behind the alveolar ridge for this consonant.
- **Lips** shape for the vowel sound that follows the R.

TIP

In other languages, *R* is rolled or flipped. Flipping an *R* means saying the *R* like a *D*, and rolling an *R* means touching the tip of your tongue on your alveolar ridge as you would with a *D*, and then blowing air over it to make your tongue vibrate like the tongue trill in Chapter 6. Flipped or rolled Rs aren't appropriate for American English. Try the following sentences to practice *R:*

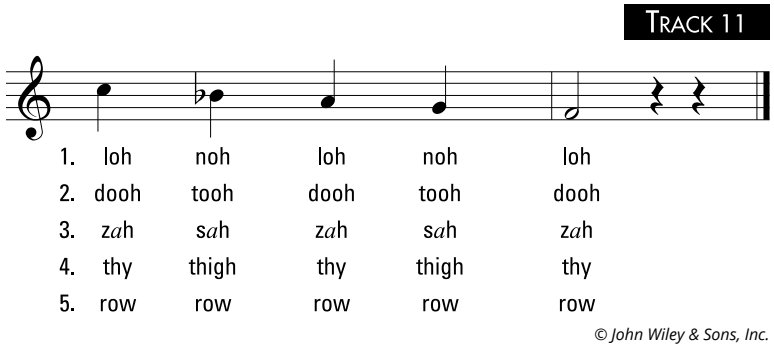
- Row, row, row the boat.
- Right the wrong.

- Race red rover.
- Run, rabbit, run.

Singing tip consonants

PLAY THIS

As you practice the pattern in Figure 9-1, speak through the syllables a couple times to get the feeling of the tip of your tongue moving to make the sound of the consonant. Practice the lines until each one is clear. Record yourself as you sing along, and listen back to hear whether your consonants were distinct.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 9-1: Singing tip consonants.

Singing through the tip consonants in this way helps you feel how the right movement of your tongue makes each consonant easy to sing and easily understood. Watch yourself in the mirror to check the movement of your tongue. Listen for the voiced consonants *L*, *N*, *D*, *Z*, and the voiced *TH*.

Making Soft Palate Consonants

If you slide your tongue along the roof of your mouth, you first feel your teeth and then feel a small section of gums, a ridge (the alveolar ridge), a hard surface, and, at the very back, a soft surface. That soft surface is your *soft palate*, where you shape the soft palate consonant sounds. To say the soft palate consonant sounds *K* (as in the words *cat* or *king*), *G* (as in the word *go*), and *NG* (as in the word *sing*), you raise the back of your tongue to meet the soft palate. Just after your tongue touches your soft palate, the back of your tongue moves back down and your soft palate raises back up. The movement happens quickly, and the back of the tongue

remains flexible and free of tension during this movement. You notice that the *K* sound occurs in words even when you see the letter *C*, as in the word *cat.*

The *Q* is included in this list even though the sound of a *Q* is the same sound as a *K.* The unvoiced *Q* is most often followed by a *W* or *ooh* sound, as you see in the list in Table 9-3. By practicing both the *K* and *Q* you get the hang of the *K* sound followed by most any vowel and the *Q*, which is followed by the *ooh* vowel sound.

TABLE 9-3 Practicing *G*, NG, *K*, and *Q*

G	NG	K	Q
get	sing	keep	quiet
gild	hung	cup	quote
gore	bang	key	quarrel
guppy	clang	caper	queen

Shaping soft palate consonants

To shape soft palate consonants, keep the tip of your tongue against your bottom teeth, lift the back of the tongue to touch the soft palate, and shape your lips for the vowel sounds before and after the consonant. The *K* consonant is unvoiced, and *G* and *NG* are voiced.

While shaping the soft palate consonants in Table 9-3, see to it that

- The back of your **tongue** rises to meet the roof of your mouth at your soft palate, while the tip of your tongue continues touching your bottom front teeth.
- Your **lips** stay free of tension and ready to make the vowel sound that follows the consonant.

If you have trouble with the sounds of *K* and *NG* because English isn't your primary language, practice saying sing and sink to feel and hear the difference between the *NG* and the *K.* The *NG* is voiced and the *K* is unvoiced.

TIP

If you struggle to sing a soft palate consonant, try this. For the first few practice sessions, make the consonant sound with the middle of your tongue arching to touch the back edge of the hard palate. By moving the consonant out of the very back of your throat, the sound won't get trapped in the back of your mouth. As you

become more comfortable with keeping the back space open while making soft palate consonants, you'll be able to touch the back of the tongue in the right spot on the soft palate.

Singing soft palate consonants

Singing the soft palate consonants, such as in Figure 9-2, gives you an opportunity to make the sounds of these consonants and practice keeping the back space open at the same time.

TRACK 12

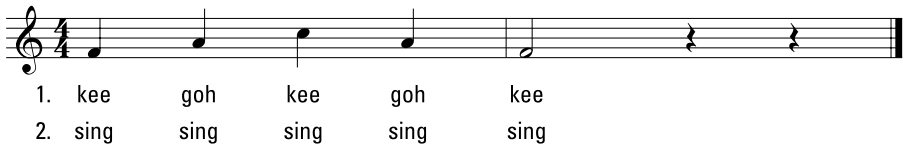


FIGURE 9-2: Singing soft palate consonants.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Working Lip Consonants

In this section, you can explore making consonants with your lips. Use both lips for the consonants *P*, *B*, *M*, and *W*, or touch your bottom lip to your top teeth for *F* and *V*. To make these sounds, keep your teeth apart and close your lips. It's similar to having an egg in your mouth and closing your lips.

Shaping lip consonants

Lip consonants are different from tip consonants (see the section, "Making Tip Consonants," earlier in this chapter for details on these consonants) because the lips move instead of the tip of the tongue. The similarity is that you can move the tip of your tongue and your lips without moving your jaw. Figuring out how to keep the space inside your mouth open as you close your lips helps you continue making those round tones as you articulate a consonant sound. The voiced consonants are *B*, *M*, and *W*; *P* and *WH* are unvoiced.

Saying P, B, M, W, and WH

While shaping the consonants in Table 9-4, you can feel your

TABLE 9-4 Practicing *P, B, M, W,* and *WH*

P	B	M	Voiced W	Unvoiced WH
pop	Bob	money	wear	when
puppy	bubba	music	weather	whether
pope	bib	mother	witch	what
pencil	bulb	mimic	winter	whisper

- **Tongue** staying steady for all these consonants.
- **Lips** close as you make each consonant sound. (But note that your teeth remain open.)

WARNING

W is different from *V*. You make the *W* sound with both lips, and you make the *V* sound with the bottom lip touching your upper teeth. *W* can also be confusing because it sounds like ooh. You glide from the ooh sound into the next vowel. Remember that the name of the consonant may be different from the sound. Make *WH* unvoiced when you read the words in Table 9-4.

WARNING

If you go overboard pronouncing the ending in some consonants, such as *B*, you may hear a shadow vowel of an uh. Bob-uh isn't what you want your audience to hear if Bob is the name of the man you're singing about!

Rehearsing with F and V

While shaping the consonants in Table 9-5, your

- **Tongue** stays touching your bottom front teeth.
- **Bottom lip** moves up to touch your upper front teeth, but your teeth stay open. You won't need to use your voice when your lips touch for the *F* because it's an unvoiced consonant. The *V* is voiced. Practice with a mirror to check that your bottom lip is touching your top teeth for the *V* and the *F*.

TABLE 9-5 Practicing *F* and *V*

F	V
father	vapor
feather	vintage
Phillip	vacant

As you may have noticed, different consonants can make the same sound. In Table 9-3 you see different words that make the sound of a *K* (*keep*, *cup*). The letters *F* and *PH* make the sound of *F*. The *P* consonant alone makes a different sound than *PH* together. You can read about the sound of *P* using both lips in Table 9-4 and *PH* using only the bottom lip touching the upper teeth in Table 9-5.

Singing lip consonants

Singing the lip consonants (see Figure 9-3) gives you a chance to make the sounds of the consonants and practice moving easily from a vowel to the consonant. Watch yourself in the mirror to make sure that you're keeping your jaw steady, your teeth open, and your lips moving. Record yourself singing so you can listen back and distinguish between voiced and unvoiced consonants.

FIGURE 9-3: Singing lip consonants.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Working Combination Consonants

Sometimes two consonants are combined to make a specific sound. Knowing how to articulate the sound makes it much easier to sing. The combinations of sounds listed in Table 9-6 are the few sounds that are made by closing the space in the front of your mouth when you're singing. They require special attention in practicing to be able to make the sound without totally closing down the space in the back of your mouth and changing the tone.

TABLE 9-6 Practicing *SH*, *ZH*, *J*, and *CH*

SH	ZH	J	CH
show	visual	jump	chump
plush	pleasure	June	choose
shop	measure	age	chance

Shaping combination consonants

For the consonant pairs in Table 9-6, your

- **Tongue's** tip moves toward the alveolar ridge and the sides of your tongue touch the upper side teeth and gums at the side at the same time. You feel air blowing between the tip of your tongue and the gums. The tip of the tongue touches the alveolar ridge momentarily at the beginning of the *CH* and *J* sounds. (See the section, "Making Tip Consonants," earlier in this chapter for more info on the alveolar ridge.)
- **Lips** should protrude slightly forward. The protrusion is slight and the movement happens quickly. When your lips move for the *ZH* and *J,* you use your voice. The *SH* and *CH* are unvoiced.

The position of the tongue is important. The *SH* requires you to blow air between your teeth and tongue, whereas you make the *CH* by momentarily stopping the flow of air by putting the tongue's tip on the alveolar ridge and then blowing air. Listen to the singers on Track 14 demonstrate for you. Be sure to note the difference between *CH* and *Y*. You make *Y* by moving the back of the tongue, and you make *CH* with the tip of the tongue.

CUTTING OFF A NOTE

One tricky part of singing is knowing how to cut off a note that has a consonant at the end of a word. Some people think you have to squeeze to cut off the last note of a phrase. Squeezing creates a tight grunt to cut off the last note of your beautiful song. You have several options, depending on the last sound in the word. For example, if the last word you sing ends with a vowel, you can simply inhale to stop singing the last note or cut off the last note. Try it: Sing out the words "I love you!" Sustain the last word for a few moments. When you're ready to cut off the note, just inhale. It feels funny at first, but it makes releasing the note a lot easier.

If that last word ends with a consonant, you want to sing through the last consonant and inhale right away. Sing out the words "Come back." As you prepare to release the end of the word *back,* move your tongue to create the *K* sound and inhale at the same time. It feels as if you sing through the *K* sound and then lift off. Some singers focus on singing through the last consonant and forget to prepare the breath for the next word or phrase. If the *K* sound is the last sound of the song, you can focus on only the consonant. If you have to sing another phrase, you want to sing the consonant and inhale right away so you're prepared for the next phrase.

REMEMBER

The consonant *G* can be pronounced two ways, as in the words *go* and *George.* I use the consonant *G* in this chapter to describe the pronunciation of the consonant *G* in the word *go.* I use the consonant *J* to describe the pronunciation for the consonant *G* in *George.*

WARNING

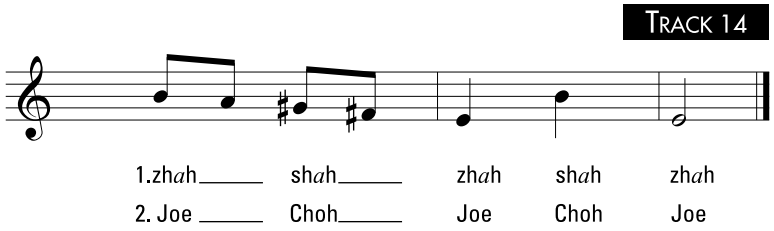
ST and *SH* are often mistakenly interchanged. An example is the word street — it shouldn't be *shtreet.* Practice *sh-t* and *s-t* so you can get it just right in your song and when you give your new friends your street address.

Singing combination consonants

Sing through the consonant combinations in Figure 9-4, following the words under each note. Sing through each one until you feel the fluid movement from consonant to vowel. Doing so enhances your ability to keep your back space open as you momentarily close the space in front.

PLAY THIS

Sing through the consonants in Figure 9-4 with a legato (smooth and connected) line, and try not to anticipate the next consonant. Allow yourself time to extend the vowel before jumping to the next syllable and consonant. Anticipating the next consonant means closing down the space in your mouth too early, and that affects the shape and sound of the vowel you're currently singing. Notice that you have to use your voice to sing through the *ZH,* but the *SH* is unvoiced. You'll feel the difference, because the *SH* is just flowing air, whereas the *ZH* requires you to make sound with your voice and move air.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 9-4: Combining your consonants.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Creating your own practice routine
- Knowing when, where, and how to practice
- Choosing exercises that fit your needs
- Keeping track of your progress

Chapter 10
Crafting a Practice Routine

Maybe you daydream of singing on a big stage, being the star of the show, taking a bow after thundering applause, and thanking your agent as you accept the award for the world's most fabulous singer. Well, I just have one little question: How do you get to Carnegie Hall? Practice, practice, practice.

Singing is no different from any other art; you have to work at it on a regular basis to improve. Knowing how to practice properly is key to making consistent progress toward that big dream of being the star attraction. A productive practice session consists of physically warming up; doing vocal exercises to improve tone, range, articulation, and breath; and then applying that work to songs. If you aren't sure how to practice your singing, this chapter is just for you: I outline some of what I routinely suggest for my students and also apply to my own practice sessions. Call me odd, but I love to practice. After reading this chapter and realizing the benefits of practice, hopefully you will, too.

Knuckling Down to a Practice Plan

Organizing your practice session greatly increases your chances of accomplishing something. If you have only 30 minutes to practice, you don't want to waste the first 20 minutes figuring out what you need to do. Make a plan.

Planning your practice time also keeps you from getting overwhelmed. I suggest many great exercises throughout the book for you to use to improve your technique. If you think about all the details of singing, you'll get discouraged. Pinpointing your goals for each practice session enables you to focus on two or three skills in each session. If you really work those areas, you can add new exercises quickly. You don't have to plan your time so much that you have no room for exploration, of course. Read on to discover other elements to include in your practice session.

REMEMBER

Every practice session should include the following elements:

- **A warm-up period:** In this part of your session, you warm up both your body (yes, your body) and your voice. Head to the section, "Warming Up," later in this chapter, for details on what to include in your warm-up and how long to spend warming up.
- **The practice period:** After you warm up, perform various exercises that you discover in the book and hear on the online tracks. Chapters 11 through 13 cover specific areas of the voice.
- **An update on how you're progressing:** To know whether you've made the progress you want, keep a practice journal and listen to your recordings from previous practice sessions. See the section, "Recording yourself," later in this chapter.

Getting Answers to Your Practicing Questions

Don't worry if you aren't sure what to do when you practice. Students frequently ask questions about practicing, so I answer them here before you start practicing. Knowing where to practice, when to practice, and what to use when you practice puts you on the right track for technique work.

TIP

"HEY! WILL YA PIPE DOWN?"

Echoing sound is great for the singer but not so great for the neighbors. Apply these tips to cut down the noise:

- Put rugs on the floor to absorb sound (carpeting is great).
- Close the door or hang a thick blanket over the doorway to absorb sound.
- Talk with your neighbors or roommates and ask them about their schedule. They may hate to hear you sing at 8 a.m. but may not mind around noon.
- Move the back of the piano away from the wall or tack a cloth on the back to dampen the sound.
- Use the soft pedal (the pedal on the left that dampens the sound) if you accompany yourself.

If you want to avoid the issue altogether, consider renting a practice room from a music store, recording studio, or church.

Where should I practice?

The number-one question concerns location. Your practice space can be anywhere you can be alone and can concentrate. You simply need space to move around comfortably during the warm-up and when you set the scene for your song. Regardless of wherever else you do your practicing, devote some of your time to standing up and practicing several times a week.

What's the best time to practice?

Anytime that works for you is best. Schedule a specific time and duration for practicing each day. If you allot time on your calendar to practice, you're more likely to practice. Many singers practice more efficiently at night because of their body clocks. You can also practice on your lunch hour or right before or after work. To maximize your concentration, turn off the TV, cellphone, and computer during your daily practice time.

TIP

Have your practice space set and ready each day. If you have to search the entire place to find all your practice tools, you're wasting valuable singing time. Stay organized so you can enjoy your time being creative!

How long should I practice?

The length of the practice session depends on your level of expertise. Someone who is new to singing can benefit from practicing 15 to 20 minutes a day. Gradually increase your practice time to 30 to 60 minutes per day. Your voice is like any other muscle group in your body: It becomes fatigued and needs rest. As long as your voice is back to normal after a few hours of rest, your practicing is on the right track. Improvement happens with frequent practice.

What do I need besides my voice?

Of course you need your voice to practice your singing. However, you need some other tools as well:

- **Keyboard:** Just about any new or used electronic keyboard works. You can also use a keyboard app on your electronic device. A piano is fine, too, as long as it's in tune. You don't have to know how to play the piano to sing, but if you want to get a better understanding of what keyboards and musical notation are all about, pick up a copy of the most recent edition of *Piano For Dummies* by Blake Neely (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).
- **Recording device:** Recording your practice sessions is a great way to monitor your progress, too. Record yourself singing through the exercises, and then rewind to hear whether you were right on pitch or whether a vowel really was precise. Using a recording app on your digital device will work fine. Experiment with the device by recording yourself and listening back to figure out how close you need to be to capture the sounds of your singing voice.
- **Music:** Developing your singing technique can be fun. See Chapter 16 for help choosing a song. For your practice session, I recommend you choose songs to help you apply the technique you read about in the chapters as well as some songs to sing for fun. See Appendix A for a list of songs that work on different aspects of technique such as breath coordination or range.

  TIP

  Warming up the muscles in your body and singing voice help your muscles feel flexible and help extend your practice session. See the following section on warming up for some suggestions.
- **Mirror:** Mirrors are so helpful for practicing. By watching yourself in the mirror, you become much more aware of how you move your body as you sing. You can find more tips on watching your practice sessions in the mirror in Chapter 3 (alignment) and Chapter 9 (consonants). If watching yourself in the mirror is confusing, video yourself with your cellphone or tablet and play it back to monitor your movements as you sing.

» **Journal and pencil:** As you listen back over the practice session recording, take notes in your practice journal or on your music. Seeing the notes from your last practice session helps you remember your goals. Check out the section, "Picking exercises that work for you," later in this chapter for more about using a journal.

Warming Up

A good vocal warm-up gets your body limber and your voice ready to practice singing. Make your body warm-up (stretching and limbering up your body) last about five minutes — long enough to get your body flexible and warm. Then spend the next ten minutes on vocal exercises that get your singing muscles warm (humming, lip trills, sirens). You need to discover what works for you; some people take longer to warm up than others. If I haven't been practicing for a few weeks, I sometimes need 10 minutes to get my body awake and 15 minutes just to get my voice warmed up to practice. During times when I'm singing quite a bit, I may need only a few minutes to get myself ready to practice because my voice warms up quickly. I know I'm warmed up and ready to practice when the muscles in my voice and body are warm and feel flexible enough to tackle more strenuous singing exercises.

Stretching to warm up your body

No matter how easy the day is, start your practice session by stretching out. You want to get your entire body ready to sing, not just your singing muscles. For the breath to really move as you sing, you need to be connected to your lower body. I recommend the following stretching routine, which begins with your head and moves to your toes. For each segment, remember to continue breathing as you move.

1. **Shake out any tension in your entire body.**

   Wiggle around until you feel the stiffness in your joints melting away. Use the exercises in Chapter 3 to help your posture and to release tension.

2. **Release your head forward.**

   Gently drop your head toward your chest at a slow pace and inhale. As you exhale, allow your head to drop a little farther. Repeat this several times, allowing the head to drop farther each time to stretch the neck muscles. Inhale and lift your head back to its balanced position.

3. **Move your head.**

   Turn your head to the left and to the right. Roll your head around, starting from the left side and rolling your chin near your chest to the right side. Don't roll your head back unless you've worked with this kind of movement before. The vertebrae in your neck may not respond well to pressure from your head rolling backward.

4. **Stretch your neck.**

   Gently drop your left ear toward your left shoulder and pause. Inhale and, as you exhale, drop your head a little farther toward your shoulder. Repeat several times, and then repeat the sequence over your right shoulder.

5. **Move all the muscles in your face.**

   Tighten them and then release to feel the flow of energy in your face.

6. **Move your tongue in and out.**

   Stick it out as far as possible and then move it back in. You can also lick your lips — move your tongue in a circle around the outside of your mouth to stretch the muscles in your tongue.

7. **Work your shoulders.**

   Lift your shoulders and then push them down. Move your shoulders forward and then back. Make circles with shoulders in one direction, and then reverse. Keep your chest steady and open.

8. **Swing one arm (and then the other) in circles.**

   As you swing, wiggle your fingers and wrist to get the blood flowing all the way down your arm. Be careful; watch out for furniture. Repeat with the other arm.

9. **Stretch your side.**

   Lift your left arm over your head and lean to the right. As you lean, feel the muscles between your ribs opening on your left side. Reverse: Lift your right arm and stretch your right side.

10. **Swing those hips around to loosen that tension.**

    Many people hold tension in their hips. You don't have to be tough now. Let 'em loose. Let the hips rock back to front, as well as around in circles.

11. **Warm up your legs.**

    Stand on your toes and then lower your feet back to the floor. Stand on one leg and shake out the other and gently stretch your ankle. Reverse to get the other leg in motion. Widen your stance and stretch your hip to the left to stretch the inside of the right leg. Repeat on the right side.

12. **Take a nice deep breath and feel the energy flowing in your body.**

Getting your blood pumping while warming up helps you focus on your task at hand. If you're having trouble connecting your breath to your song, try being more physical in your warm-up or practice session. One way to connect your body is to shoot basketball granny shots. Bend your knees, drop your arms between your legs, and throw the invisible ball up with two hands. This motion gets you connected to your lower body and really helps you connect energy to sing higher notes. If you shoot a regular free throw, you lift your body up to sing the note. I want you to "think down" — releasing down into your legs instead of pushing up — to sing the notes. See Chapter 3 for more information about releasing down into the body and engaging your legs. You can use any number of different physical movements.

REMEMBER

Keep in mind that you want fluid motion. Any movements that cause you to jerk your body are going to jerk the singing voice also. Doin' the twist is better than doing jumping jacks.

Warming up your voice

If you were scheduled to run a race this afternoon, would you just show up and start running? I doubt it. You'd work for weeks or months to prepare your body for the big event, and just before the race, you'd warm up your body. That may sound odd for singing, but remember, your singing voice is made up of muscles just like any other part of your body. These muscles need a specific type of warm-up. Baseball players spend time stretching before the big game, and you need to stretch your singing voice before practicing.

TIP

What's the difference between practicing and warming up? A warm-up gets your body ready for practicing. The difference between the end of the warm-up and the start of the practice may be only slight. Think of the warm-up as the beginning of your practice session. Everything that you do in the warm-up leads you to the work you do in your practice session.

Vocal warm-ups include making sounds to get your singing voice awake and ready to work out. Some good choices of warm-ups include the following:

- Humming easy patterns like the one on Track 2 (see Chapter 4)
- Sighing or doing vocal slides (see Chapters 5 and 6)
- Doing lip trills (see Chapter 4) or tongue trills (see Chapter 6)

REMEMBER

The basic ingredients of a good warm-up work the body, blood, and breath: You get your body moving, your blood pumping, and your breath ready to move out and sing. These three ingredients get you mentally prepared to practice.

TIP

Experimenting with different postures allows you to feel your entire body, as well as the movement of the breath. Don't always stand erect to sing — sometimes sit, squat, lie down, bend over, or create other positions that allow you to explore what's moving in your body as you breathe. Try singing in these various positions, and then compare the feelings in your body to the feelings when you're standing upright and singing. Watch out for any tension that may creep into your body while you're experimenting. If you're momentarily confused when you finally do stand up, review the alignment exercises in Chapter 3.

Don't let anyone's comments discourage you from singing. Everyone is capable of singing well with practice. Have a family meeting to explain that you won't tolerate tacky comments about your singing. Inform family members that what they think of as joking is really unacceptable. Be tough! Take no prisoners! Train your friends and family to respect your practice time.

Exercising Your Voice

This is huge! This is big! Inquiring minds want to know, what do you actually practice and how do you practice it? I thought you'd never ask. You can find many exercises throughout this book to help you develop your technique. By breaking down the practice session, you develop a routine that touches on all areas of your voice.

Picking exercises that work for you

The exercises for posture in Chapter 3 offer fun ways to create great posture. After reading Chapter 3, choose the exercises that appeal the most to you and write them in your practice journal. A practice journal is a notebook or journal (on paper, on your phone or tablet, or on your computer) that you use to take notes on your practice sessions. On each page, list the date and what exercise you need to work on. This is your to-do list for your practice session. After your practice session, write down what you discovered — what worked and what was difficult — and any thoughts about what to include in the next practice session. After working an exercise for a week, evaluate your progress. You may be ready to add more exercises for posture. Flip to Chapter 3 and find more exercises that work on another aspect of posture, and add them to your practice journal for week two. You can apply this same process for each chapter. Find exercises to begin your technical journey and add new exercises weekly as you progress.

Picking singing exercises may seem more difficult than posture exercises. Although you can pick any exercise to practice, you may find it easier to start at

the beginning of a chapter and look for the exercises that start at your level. If you've never had any lessons or any experience singing, then you're at the right place. Welcome! I wrote the chapters with your progression in mind. Readers who have some knowledge of singing may start at any point in the chapter that suits their level of expertise. If you haven't done any singing training in a few years, start at the beginning of the chapter and move at a faster pace to refresh your skills.

REMEMBER

Consider these big points when you're working on singing exercises:

- Make sure that you read the instructions enough times so you can work through the exercise and focus on your task.
- The exercise is appropriate if it's just above your level of expertise. If you've never had singing training, you may feel overwhelmed at first. However, this feeling will subside with practice because you'll gradually understand the terminology — the exercise will eventually become second nature to you. If the exercise gets easier after a week, you're on the right track.
- Reread the directions and instructions for the exercises often. After working an exercise for a week, you may find something that you forgot when you read the instructions again.
- If an exercise is confusing, ask a friend to interpret it or practice it with you. Watching other singers helps you discover a great deal about technique. Having to verbally explain an exercise to someone else helps you articulate your ideas.
- The biggest piece of advice I can offer about improving your singing technique is that it requires discipline. It's really up to you to find the time to practice and improve your technique. You have many tools in this book to help you, but the tools need a user. Schedule the time, organize your session by choosing the exercises, and have a blast!

Breaking it down

In any given practice session, you need a warm-up to get your body and brain ready to focus and sing. Following the warm-up, work on each area of technique: posture, breath, articulation of vowels and consonants, resonance, and tone production. Choose exercises that work your range, sing through patterns that develop your ear, and find songs that combine acting and singing. Breaking your session into specific areas to work on allows you to grow in each of these areas without chucking your music out the window in frustration.

Also set goals for each practice session. Consider these sample goals for each day's practice:

Monday and Tuesday:

- Explore two breathing exercises that work on quick inhalation and long exhalation, and then apply that work to your song.
- Identify three vowels that you can work in exercises, and then apply that work to your song.
- Select three consonants that you can work in combination with the vowels, and then apply that work to your song.

Wednesday and Thursday:

- Review the two breathing exercises. If one of those exercises is going well, add a third exercise.
- Sing through the exercises from Monday and Tuesday, using the three vowels. If you aren't sure of the shape, review the explanation from the group of exercises in Chapter 8. If your work on one of the vowels is going well, add a fourth vowel.
- Review the motion of the three consonants from Monday and Tuesday. Work that motion of the consonants until it's second nature. If your work on those consonants is going well, add a fourth.

Friday and Saturday:

- Review all exercises from the past four days. Make a new checklist for adding exercises.
- Add to the bottom of the list new vowels or consonants to work this weekend.

Sunday:

- Rest.
- Start your to-do list for the practicing you'll do in the coming week.

You can choose any day to rest, but be sure to take one day off from practicing each week.

Practicing Correctly

Correct practicing means that you're making consistent improvement. You're applying the technical information that you gather in the book, and your voice feels good as you're singing. Your vocal cords don't have pain receptors, so you can't assume that you'll feel pain if you do something wrong. If you do feel pain, you may be squeezing too hard and constricting the muscles surrounding your vocal cords.

Feeling tired after practicing is normal. You may have friends who can sing for hours without feeling tired, but they may have spent many years singing to build up their endurance. If your voice gets tired after a reasonable amount of time singing, don't worry about it. After a month, however, if your voice still gets tired quickly, then you're not doing something right. For help, review the exercises for releasing tension in Chapter 3, breathing exercises in Chapter 4, and especially the onset of tone exercises in Chapter 6.

Recording yourself

Record your practice session each day to monitor improvement. The first time you listen to a recording of yourself, you may not like it. That's a perfectly normal reaction. Performing artists spend big bucks in the recording studio, but they may not sound so perfect at home. The third time you hear yourself on a recording, you'll be used to the sound. Listen for the details, such as the precision of the vowel. Does it sound like an *ah* or *uh*? The two vowels are similar, but you need to be able to distinguish them in the exercise and in the text of the song. Record yourself saying *ah* and *uh* so that you figure out how to feel and hear the difference. Then go back and listen to the recording. You can also listen for silent inhalation (no gasping for air), smooth transitions between registers, varied sounds that you choose to create a vocal journey in your song, or dynamic variations.

TIP

If you have a video-recording device handy, video record yourself regularly to check out your body language. (See Chapter 3 and Chapter 18 for information on body language.) Watch the video three times in a row, to get used to your sound on video. You can even watch the video without sound to really focus on your body movement. Digital video quality is usually very good from your cellphone, tablet, or laptop. You may need to experiment to find the right distance when you sing the higher pitches. If you're too close, the sound may distort so explore the distance from the device to get the best recording of your practice session.

Applying information and exercises

As you read about each exercise in the book, give it a whirl. When you've tried the exercise for a week, then you can decide whether it's too crazy to do. Most of the time, you can't see the benefit of an exercise until you've tried it a few times. You won't know what you're capable of until you move out of your comfort zone. Mastering some of the exercises takes some time, whereas other exercises take only a few days to master. The first time you try an exercise, you may be tempted to just skim through the explanation, because you want to test it out. I totally understand. Make sure that you go back later, read the entire explanation, and work through each step. The step you skip may be the most important one of the exercise.

For each big concept, I offer several exercises. For those of you who are visual, I offer a visualization exercise. *Kinesthetic types* (those who learn through movement) can benefit from the movement description. *Aural types* (folks who learn best using their ears) will be told what to listen to as you practice the exercise. If you don't know which you prefer, try them all!

Using the online tracks to practice exercises

This book's online tracks at `www.dummies.com/go/singing3e` have so many wonderful exercises that progress and gradually get harder. If you're a more advanced singer, skip to some of the later exercises. If you're a beginner, I recommend that you start at the beginning of the book and work your way through each chapter. It may take a while, but you'll have plenty of fun along the way. Keep the tracks handy in your practice space. The exercises go in order of difficulty.

The tracks may seem boring because they don't have many bells and whistles, but the simplicity of the piano and voices allows you to completely focus on your technique. When your technique is really rocking, whip out the Karaoke songs and wow your friends. Until then, use the tracks to steadily work on your technique.

On the tracks, you hear many types of singers from a rapper, pop singers, musical theater and classical singers, belters, and singers of all ages and experience levels with different voice types. The majority of the singers were my students, and a few were colleagues that could made specific sounds for you to hear on the tracks. I used the exercises in the book to train beginners all the way up to singers who went on to win Grammy Awards.

You can hear these different types of singers making all kinds of cool sounds on the tracks. I tell you about the singers so you know that you can develop your technique with practice. The sounds you hear on the tracks are what normal singers sound like when they practice regardless of what style of music they perform.

3 Advanced Techniques to Improve Your Voice

IN THIS PART . . .

Use the exercises to get an incredible vocal workout and explore how to develop your middle voice, chest voice, and head voice.

Move to the next level of singing by finding out how to expand your range.

Add belting to your list of skills.

Understand the issues of age — young and old — along with the various musical styles.

Discover how to locate a voice teacher that helps you reach your goals.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Bridging the gap between registers
- Using your chest voice for your lower pitches
- Discovering what your head voice feels like
- Getting a handle on falsetto
- Switching into and out of the middle gracefully

Chapter 11

Developing the Parts of Your Singing Voice

You have one glorious singing voice made up of three distinct parts. Many terms for parts of the voice are called *registers* and those terms can be confusing. This chapter narrows down to the main parts of your voice that you'll use every day: chest voice, middle voice, and head voice. As you may guess, the notes in the middle part of your voice make up your middle voice, the notes in the lower part of your voice make up your chest voice, and the notes in the upper part of your voice make up your head voice.

To get a better idea of each part of the voice, you have to recognize how each area of the voice relates to the others.

- **Chest voice:** The thicker, heavier sound made in the lower part of your voice. You feel vibrations in your chest while you sing in chest voice.
- **Head voice:** The higher part of your singing voice. You feel vibrations in your head or skull as you sing in head voice.

» **Middle voice:** The bridge between your chest voice and your head voice. You feel vibrations in your mouth and neck. Middle voice feels similar to head voice for many female singers, and similar to chest voice for many male singers. Some people call middle voice a mix because, in this area of the voice, it's neither 100 percent chest voice nor 100 percent head voice. It's a combination.

Specific muscles create head voice and chest voice; these muscle groups work together to produce middle voice. In this chapter, you explore head voice and chest voice as well as the balance of these muscle groups — middle voice. You then explore the mix you can create from combining the parts of your singing voice. Falsetto is made with head voice muscles but the vocal cords are thinner than in head voice.

REMEMBER

Because the female and male voices are different, not all patterns and exercises in this chapter apply equally to women and men. Some are easier for women than they are for men; likewise, some are easier for men than they are for women. Some even work different areas for women than they do for men. For all exercises you encounter, I provide clear information on how each works for both women and men. Practice all the exercises in this chapter, no matter what part of the voice they work. The ultimate goal is to strengthen all parts of your voice — chest, middle, and head — so that they work together as a team to create beautiful sound.

TECHNICAL STUFF

If you're singing an exercise designed for the other gender, I recommend that you sing it up or down an octave. The distance between one note and the next note up or down of the same name is called an *octave.* For example, the distance between two Cs is one octave: If you start counting at the first C and count eight white notes up on the piano, you find another C.

Finding Your Middle Voice

Your *middle voice* is the bridge between your chest voice and head voice. For women, middle voice feels like a lighter version of chest voice and a fuller, thicker version of head voice. For men, the middle voice feels lighter than chest voice and fuller than falsetto. The singers on the online tracks demonstrate these sounds for you so you can explore the sounds and sensations for yourself. You can explore your middle voice or even build one if yours is missing in action. Continue reading to get an idea of what your middle voice feels like and when to use it.

Noting your middle voice range

The relationship of your middle voice to chest and head voice is the same, no matter who you are. But *how* your middle voice works, *when* it works, and *what* transitions to watch out for all depend on whether you're a woman or a man.

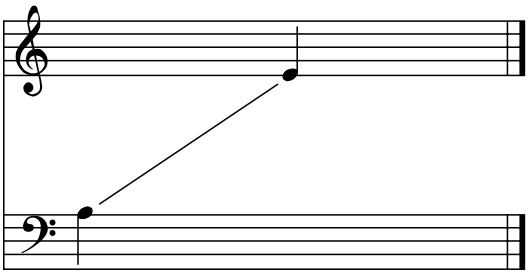
Figure 11-1 shows you the average female middle voice range. In the beginning, your middle voice may be weak as you try to figure out how to reach these notes without transitioning to head or chest voice. Depending on the song, you can take your middle voice as low as you want. If your voice gets too fuzzy or weak on the really low notes, you may need to transition into chest voice. The exercises in this chapter help you figure out how and when to make that transition.

F above Middle C (F4) to the next F (F5)

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-1: Female middle voice range.

Figure 11-2 shows you the average male middle voice range. (Exceptions are tenors who may transition into middle voice higher than the range in Figure 11-2.) The men's middle voice range isn't as large as the women's range; you may not notice a huge change when you enter this range. So understanding how your middle voice feels is important, especially when you transition from high notes or low notes. Your middle voice is less thick than chest voice and not light and spinning like head voice; it's a sound and sensation that's in between, vibrating around your mouth and throat. If you try to push up a heavy sound from the bottom, it may take you longer to gain secure control over your high notes. You get an opportunity in this chapter to work out your voice so you can easily maintain middle voice when necessary.



A below Middle C (A3) to E above Middle C (E4)

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-2: Male middle voice range.

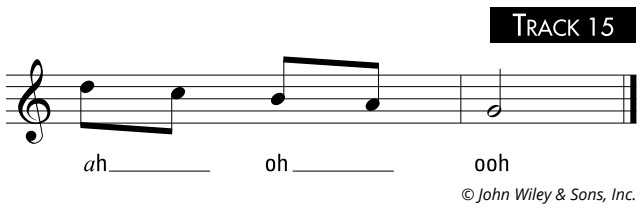
Singing in middle voice

The following exercises give you a chance to work your middle voice by itself. Follow along with the online tracks at www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e and get a feel for where your middle voice is and how it feels to sing in middle voice. For middle voice, think of singing straight out. In chest voice, the sensations are heavier as if you pull up or push up a weighted sound instead of coming straight out. For head voice, the sensation is lighter as if coming down to the note. The vibrations of resonance for middle voice are lower than head voice but higher than chest voice. If you're in doubt, sing the pattern in chest or head voice to feel the difference.

PLAY THIS

On this track, listen to the singers sing the pattern in Figure 11-3. The sound you hear is middle voice. Use the vowels listed underneath to help you find your middle voice sound.

- **Guys:** Middle voice for a male singer isn't nearly as wide a range as the middle voice for a female. I designed this exercise with the female voice in mind. Sing along with the male voice on the track, but know that you're moving from middle voice to chest voice if you sing the pattern down one octave.
- **Dolls:** Figure 11-3 was designed specifically with your middle voice range in mind.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-3: Taking it down.

PLAY THIS

Figure 11-4 shows a pattern that helps you explore your middle voice by gradually working your way up to the top of your middle voice.

- **Guys:** I designed this exercise with the female voice in mind. A male voice sings along so you guys know what to do when you join in. This pattern starts just below your middle voice but gradually works its way into middle voice. Listen to the male voice sing the pattern for you so you know what the male voice sounds like. Notice that the difference in feeling between the notes in chest voice and middle voice is only slight in the first few repetitions of this pattern. You feel the vibrations of resonance move higher as you ascend in your middle voice.

» **Dolls:** The female voice demonstrates the sounds for you on the online tracks so you can hear the sound of a female middle voice. This pattern purposely starts low in your middle voice. Notice how the vibrations move higher as you ascend in pitch. You sing the pattern to the top of your middle voice.

TRACK 16

FIGURE 11-4: Descending by step.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 11-5 specifically works the male middle voice range. Ladies, you can work your middle voice when singing this pattern if you sing the pattern one octave higher than what's written in the figure. On the online tracks, you hear a male singer demonstrate the pattern using his middle voice. Notice that as he gets higher in pitch, he attempts to lighten the sound instead of making it heavier.

» **Guys:** Your starting note is the first note that the piano plays. The pattern gradually moves through your middle voice range. To lighten the sensation as you ascend, open the space in your throat and feel the vibrations moving higher.

» **Dolls:** Even though the pattern in Figure 11-5 is written down an octave, sing the pattern an octave higher than written to work your middle voice. Listen to the piano play the second note, which is the note you use to start this pattern. This pattern also works your middle voice, but it's written out differently than the patterns in Figures 11-3 and 11-4 so that the men can understand where their middle voice starts.

TRACK 17

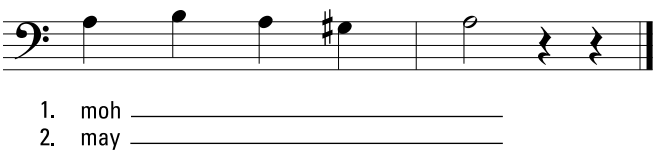


FIGURE 11-5: Gliding through the middle.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

Listen as the male singer demonstrates the pattern in Figure 11-6 in his middle voice. The sound is lighter than chest voice, but not as high or light as head voice.

- **Guys:** This pattern sits right in your middle voice range. Notice how the male voice sounds as the singer starts the note solidly in his middle voice. You'll want to open the space in the back of your mouth and throat and take a breath before you begin the pattern.
- **Dolls:** This pattern is in your middle voice range if you sing the pattern one octave higher than what's written on the page. Use the vowel listed underneath the pattern, just as the guys do.

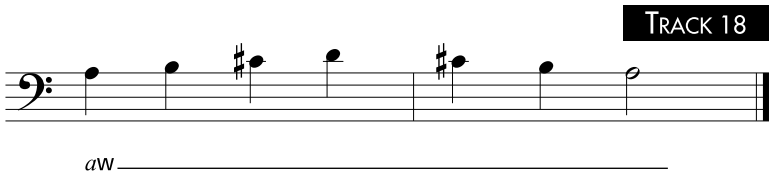


FIGURE 11-6: Moving along the four in middle voice.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Checking Out Your Chest Voice

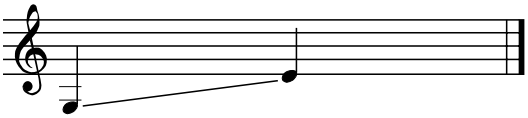
Chest voice is that thicker, heavier sound in the lower part of your voice that makes vibrations in your chest when you're singing. The sensation is much heavier in chest voice than head voice, and the vibrations of resonance are much lower. You may have felt it take over a time or two, whether you wanted it to or not. The trick to singing in chest voice is knowing how and when to use it. If you need to find out how high to take your chest voice — or even how to find your chest voice, if you haven't been introduced — continue reading to find out how to have a strong but controlled chest voice.

Zeroing in on your chest voice range

Singing in chest voice can be such a powerful feeling. However, you have to be fair to your middle voice and not let chest voice take over too soon. Explore your range so you know how soon is too soon to transition to chest voice.

In Figure 11-7, you can see the average female chest voice range. Chest voice is a strong part of the female voice — often stronger than the middle voice — and you may want to strengthen your middle voice. You need to know your chest voice range. If you take chest voice too high, you can weaken your middle voice.

Remember that you can always switch out of chest voice sooner, but preferably not later, than the range given in Figure 11-7.



G below Middle C (G3) to E (E4)

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-7: Chest voice range for women.

Figure 11-8 shows the average range of chest voice for men. Most men speak in chest voice, so they often already have a strong chest voice. You can develop yours if you think it's weak, and explore the difference between your chest voice and middle voice.

F about an octave and a half below Middle C (or lower) to A♭ below Middle C (A♭3)

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-8: Chest voice range for men.

DISTINGUISHING CHEST VOICE AND BELT

Chest voice and belt aren't the same. Chest voice is a thick, strong part of your lower range and has a much heavier and deeper sound than belt. The belt has a brassy sound and may sound like a healthy version of yelling; it may sound like it's dominated by chest voice sounds, but belting should have the ease of middle voice. A good belt is developed from the speaking voice. Most people who aren't fans of belting refer to it as yelling on pitch. But, hey, belting is what you do at home around the dinner table when the discussion of politics gets heated, and it's also what you do when you call out for a taxi to stop.

If you're interested in belting, you can check out Chapter 13 for belting exercises. But don't rush to those exercises unless your middle voice is really strong and you can distinguish between chest voice and middle voice.

Feeling your chest voice

You may already know what's supposed to be your chest voice (if not, see the section "Zeroing in on your chest voice range," earlier in this chapter), but maybe you still aren't sure what it actually is. The best way to tell is to feel it. Try some of the following exercises so you can feel those chest voice vibrations.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 11-9 gives you your first opportunity to find your chest voice. Listen to the singers on the track to hear the sounds they make in chest voice. Notice that the sound is full and thick and it feels like the sounds rise up from low in the body. Identify the sensations in your body and try to feel the vibrations as you sing.

- **Guys:** This exercise is purposely really low. Some men can sing low, and I want you to see whether your voice can sing low notes. Even if you can't, with time you may find that the notes get stronger. Some tenors may not be able to sing this pattern because it's so low. (See Chapter 2 for more information on the tenor range.) Try it several times — if it's just too low, find other patterns in the chapter that aren't quite so low, or sing up an octave for a few repetitions. Your starting note is the first note that the piano plays.
- **Dolls:** The first couple of repetitions are low for you. Some women can sing quite low, so the pattern gives you the opportunity to see how low you can sing in chest voice. With practice, you may find that the patterns gradually get easier and that you gain some strength on lower notes. The second note that the piano plays is your starting note for this pattern.

TRACK 19

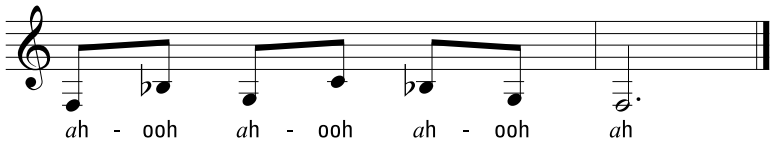


FIGURE 11-9: Singing fourth.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 11-10 begins on ah, an open vowel, to help you start with a thicker chest voice sound. You can stay in chest voice the entire time you sing this pattern.

- **Guys:** Gentlemen, sing the pattern in Figure 11-10 down an octave from what's written on the page. You can hear the male voice on the track demonstrate for you. The pattern begins low and gradually moves higher in pitch. You can continue working on this pattern on your own and go higher in pitch.

If you find the pattern too low for you, sing it as it's written on the page (up the octave) or wait until the pattern gets high enough for you.

- **Dolls:** This pattern stays in your chest voice range. If your voice is high, you may find the first few repetitions of this pattern quite low. Try singing it to feel the vibrations of chest voice and gradually widen the space in your throat and mouth as you move higher in pitch.

TRACK 20

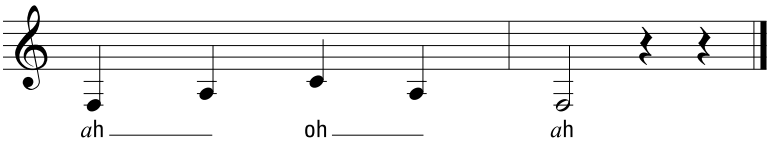


FIGURE 11-10: Bringing up chest voice.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Aiming High with Head Voice

The higher part of your singing voice is called *head voice* because most people feel the vibrations in their head or skull while singing in head voice. Having a head voice for singing is necessary to access those really high notes in the song. For some people, the notes in the middle part of your voice may not feel much different from the higher notes. As you move from the middle part of your voice to your head voice, you want to lighten the sound. In other words, you want to think of head voice as if it's lighter — lighter in the amount of effort or pressure in your throat. You may feel like you open your mouth and the sound just comes flying out or as if you come down to the note.

Finding your head voice range

Just as women struggle with the transition between the chest voice and middle voice, men have a tough transition moving into head voice. With some practice, men can successfully maneuver in this area of the voice.

Figure 11-11 shows the average female head voice range. Ladies, you may not feel much difference between your head voice and your middle voice until you get quite high in your head voice, because the vibrations gradually move up into your head as you go higher in pitch. You also feel a slight change as you descend, and the sound is fuller as the vibrations gradually move lower out of the head. You may want to explore some of the patterns that leap around so you can really feel how the vibrations change. Mezzos may have more of a struggle with head voice than

sopranos. (See Chapter 2 for more information about the differences between a mezzo and soprano.) At the transition to head voice, you may find some notes unreliable in the beginning. Keep practicing, and you'll figure out how to work your head voice, using the suggestions in this chapter.

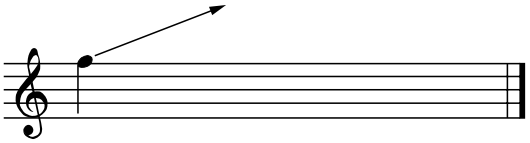


FIGURE 11-11: Female head voice range.

F about an octave and a half above Middle C (F5) and up

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Figure 11-12 shows the average male head voice range. For men, working on head voice is important for a good balance when you sing. But I recommend that you work on your falsetto before attempting to push your head voice too high. If your voice feels strained as you work on the higher patterns, working your falsetto (see "Discovering your falsetto" later in this chapter) until you can move in and out of it makes the exercises in this chapter more comfortable. You can also go back to the middle voice exercises until that part of your voice works easily. When you understand the feelings of middle voice, you can more easily understand when you're pushing too hard for head voice in ascending patterns.

FIGURE 11-12: Male head voice range.

F above Middle C (F4) and up

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Feeling head voice

Male and female singers feel the vibrations from singing in head voice in their head or skull. As you explore your head voice in this chapter, place your hand on the *crown* of your head, which is the top back part of your head. You can also put your hand on the back of your neck to feel the vibrations as you move up in pitch. As you ascend, you may feel the vibrations move from your neck or mouth to your head. When you get really high, you may feel the vibrations on the very top of your head. Singers can feel the vibrations in different locations, but you can explore how the vibrations change places as you ascend in pitch. Also be aware of the sensations in your mouth as you sing in head voice. You may feel sound on the roof of

your mouth, on your hard palate, or even in the front of your face. All these vibration locations help you find the sensations of head voice.

TIP

A great way to feel head voice is to sing *closed vowels.* When you sing closed vowels, your mouth isn't as wide open. For example, ah is wider open than *ee*, so *ee* is a closed vowel and ah is an open vowel. (Check out Chapter 8 for more information on vowels.) The closed vowels are helpful for singing in your head voice because the sound is lighter than with open vowels and creates vibrations that are easier to feel. This doesn't mean that you can't use open vowels like ah in head voice; it just means that you can explore the sensations of head voice more easily with closed vowels and then take that same ease and feeling of vibrations into your open vowels.

PLAY THIS

When you sing the pattern shown in Figure 11-13, feel the vibrations in your head. By aiming the vowels out in front of you, you're more likely to feel the vibrations in your head. Listen to the singers on the track demonstrate head voice. As you try the pattern, follow these steps to make it easier to sing in head voice:

1. **Find your alignment.**

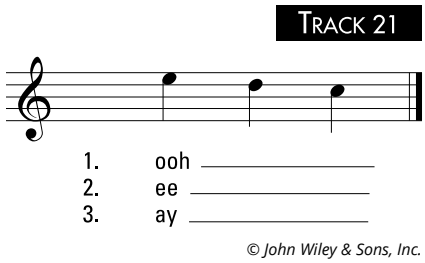
   See Chapter 3 for tips on finding your alignment.

2. **Take a breath.**

   Check out Chapter 4 if you need more details on breath work.

3. **Open the space in the back of your mouth and throat while lifting your soft palate.**

   Chapter 7 tells you what you need to know about this step.



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-13: Working with closed vowels.

PLAY THIS

Listen to the singers on the track sing the pattern in Figure 11-14. Notice that the sound is light and high, as if the sound is spinning out of the mouth. If you open the space in your throat and mouth and apply proper breathing technique, head voice often feels like the sound is just flying out of your mouth. If the feeling is heavy and takes much effort, you're using too much weight or engaging the muscles that create chest voice.

BOBBING FOR PITCHES

A common misconception about singing is that you have to move your head up to sing high notes and put your head down to sing low notes. It may work for you in the beginning, but you may look funny bobbing your head when you start singing harder songs. Instead of bobbing your head, allow yourself some time to work on the exercises listed in each of the chapters so the muscles inside your larynx figure out how to do their job. If those muscles have never worked out, they need a little time to learn what to do when you sing high notes. Raising your head tenses your vocal cords because it prevents the thyroid cartilage in your larynx from tilting. The tilt is supposed to happen as you change pitch, but tilting the thyroid cartilage isn't the same as lifting your larynx. The tilt should happen naturally — you don't have to control it. You want your larynx and your head to stay steady as the muscles inside your throat do their job.

TRACK 22

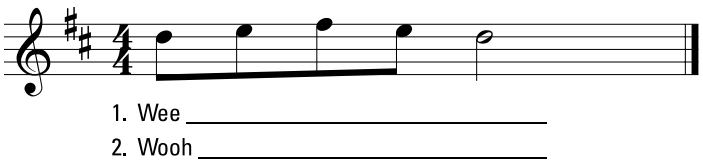


FIGURE 11-14: Spinning out in head voice.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Figuring Out Falsetto

The male voice has three registers, similar to the female voice: chest voice, middle voice, and head voice. The difference for the male singer is *falsetto* — the lighter part of your singing voice that sounds feminine. The notes in your falsetto are in the same range as your head voice, but the vocal cords are thin, like a stretched-out rubber band. Falsetto feels lighter or higher than your head voice. If you attempt to sing really high notes, you may even flip into falsetto.

Falsetto is an important area of your voice and needs to be developed to strengthen the head voice. Your head voice may be weak in the beginning of your singing training; you can explore sounds on high notes by singing in your falsetto and then later, when you have more strength, work on the same notes using your head voice. When the muscles that create head voice get stronger, you'll be able to sing the same notes in head voice that you originally could sing only precariously with your head voice or in falsetto. Experience the sounds that you can make with falsetto, and strengthen your falsetto. You may hear voice teachers referring to *falsetto* as your *head voice*, but I think using both terms is easier so you know exactly what kind of sounds to make.

TIP

Ladies, you can sing the figures in this section by using your middle voice or chest voice. Women physically have falsetto, but it's not an obvious sensation like it is for the men. Work on developing your head voice, and you'll find many fabulous sounds. (The female voice has falsetto, but those sounds are often called other terms such as *head voice*, *whistle*, or *flageolet.*) If someone says that females sing in falsetto, just know they're talking about really light sounds you make in your head voice range. Knowing the sensations and sounds of the parts of the voice is the goal and eliminates any stress about the terms.

To avoid confusion, I use the term *falsetto* for the guys because it's obvious for males when they flip into falsetto, but not as obvious for the women.

Discovering your falsetto

If you've ever imitated a woman, by either speaking or singing, you've found your falsetto. Your falsetto may not be really strong, but giving it a good workout for singing is important so that you can strengthen your head voice.

Track 23

PLAY THIS

On the track, listen as the male singer demonstrates falsetto sounds. Notice that the falsetto is light, unlike your speaking voice; it's similar to your voice when you were younger. Now try finding your falsetto by using the following tips:

- First slide around above Middle C. Most men can sing in falsetto from about the A below Middle C up to as high as they're comfortable. The male singer on the track demonstrates in the correct range for you.
- Allow yourself to just make sounds in your falsetto to get used to the feeling. You don't have to slide high in pitch, but slide around on the ooh vowel enough that you can check the position of your larynx as you ascend. See Chapter 5 for help in finding your larynx.
- As in other areas of your voice, keep the larynx steady as you ascend in pitch by opening the space in your throat. Take a breath and open the space as you prepare to sing.
- Keep the soft palate lifted as you slide around in pitch and as you sing the patterns.
- If your larynx moves up as you begin the first note, start on a lower pitch. Remember to open the space as you inhale so your larynx can descend.

Experiencing your falsetto

When you find your falsetto (see the previous section), singing in it gives you an idea of how it's supposed to feel and helps you strengthen both your falsetto and your head voice. Experience how it feels to sing in your falsetto by trying the exercises in Figures 11-15 through 11-18.

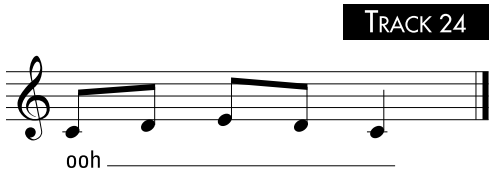


FIGURE 11-15: Checking out your falsetto.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

Sing through the pattern in Figure 11-15 to explore sounds in your falsetto. Listen to the male singer on the track demonstrate in his falsetto. Check that your larynx isn't rising. (See Chapter 5 for help finding your larynx.) As you sing the pattern, open the space in the back of your mouth and throat.

TIP

Most beginners don't need to sing below Middle C or beyond the octave above Middle C in their falsetto range. You can certainly work it higher if you think you're a higher voice type, to help develop your High C and D. Work on your falsetto for at least three weeks or until it's easy for you to keep your larynx steady (by keeping your throat open) and make clear sounds. Then move on to the exercises in the "Descending from falsetto" section, coming up next in this chapter.

Descending from falsetto

The patterns listed in this section help you work from your falsetto down to your middle voice and chest voice. This exercise may seem out of place because you're focusing on your falsetto. However, the goal is to use the easy feeling of falsetto and get your notes in your middle voice to have that same *ease* of sound without pressure.

Figure 11-16 allows you to flip out of falsetto down into your middle voice so you can really feel the difference between them. After you experience the flip, you can develop smooth transitions by gliding down from falsetto instead of falling down. You may want to visualize the lower note in front of you to prevent the bottom note from falling down and creating a big crack between the notes. When the notes in your middle voice are feeling easy, you want to find that same sensation of moving from falsetto to head voice with ease. The long-term benefit is that you'll be able to easily sing a song or musical pattern that moves from middle voice to head voice because you know how to thin out your rubber band. The shift may be bumpy in

the beginning, and that's normal. As the transitions get smoother, you can make the shift more easily. Go ahead and let it bump for now. Preventing the bump entirely prevents you from feeling the difference between the two sounds.

PLAY THIS

Using the pattern in Figure 11-16, sing from your falsetto and flip down into your middle voice on the lower note of the pattern. Let the sound flip and make a noticeable change. You want to allow big changes when you move between the pitches in the beginning. The more you work this transition, the more confident you'll feel making a smooth transition later. When this pattern is easy for you (usually after several weeks of practice), sing the pattern in Figure 11-17 and make a smooth transition to the bottom note.

TRACK 25

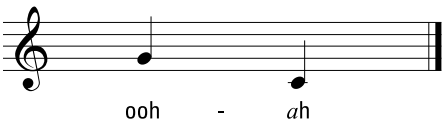


FIGURE 11-16: Flipping out of falsetto.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

In Figure 11-16, you flipped and bumped out of falsetto. In this pattern (see Figure 11-17), sing the first note in falsetto and slide down into your middle voice (or chest voice, on the last two repetitions) on the vowels, as written. You may feel confused in the beginning when you're making the transitions. To help smooth the transition, think of gliding down or sliding between the notes, and gradually open the space in your throat as you slide down. Give yourself some time to explore a smooth transition as you descend in pitch. The more you practice, the more secure you'll feel moving down out of falsetto.

TRACK 26

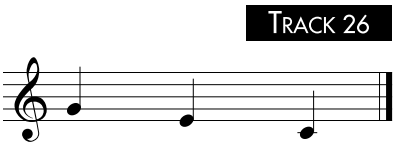


FIGURE 11-17: Gliding down out of falsetto.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Ascending into falsetto

Follow the directions for the exercises and explore the sensations of moving into the lighter sound of falsetto from the heavier feelings of chest voice or middle voice. The benefit of this exercise is that, with practice, you can figure out how to make the transition up to falsetto or your head voice. Your head voice will be stronger because you'll know how to sing the notes without adding heavy

pressure or thickness, as if you were pulling a rubber band and it remained thick. Move on to the pattern in Figure 11-18 when you feel confident of your progress in the previous patterns.

PLAY THIS

Following Figure 11-18, sing the first note in your chest voice (middle voice on the last three reps) and then slide up into falsetto. Keep the slide back down as smooth as possible. It's okay to really slide between the pitches for now. If you feel it bump as you make the transition, keep working and allow the bump to happen. Later you may find that the bump gets smoother as you get more accustomed to making this transition in and out of falsetto. As you slide up into falsetto, you feel the vibrations of resonance climbing higher in your head.

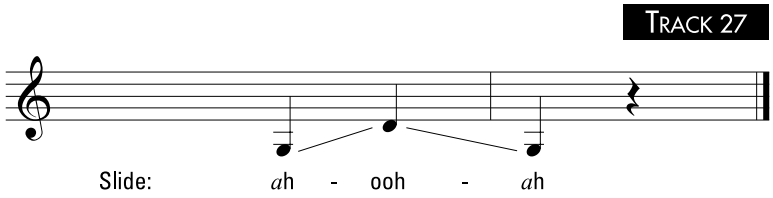


FIGURE 11-18: Sliding up to falsetto.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

SINGING SONGS THAT USE YOUR FALSETTO

Knowing which singers demonstrate falsetto in songs is really helpful when falsetto is a new concept for you. Falsetto isn't just for exercises — you can find songs that allow you to use those sounds. Check out these songs that use falsetto. You can find even more if you want an opportunity to use your newly found falsetto.

When possible, listen to the original or official recording and then a live recording. The live recordings are sometimes easier to hear the falsetto sounds. Because songs tend to have a journey of sounds, the songs also show examples of other sounds like a mix and belt. For now, just listen for the light sounds of falsetto and then go back and listen again to hear the differences between the weight in the sound when the singer moves from falsetto to mix and then adds more chest voice to belt.

Listen to two oldies, "Big Girls Don't Cry" and "Sherry Baby" as sung by The Four Seasons for examples of falsetto sounds. For mix and falsetto, listen to Eddie Holman sing "Hey There Lonely Girl," The Stylistics sing "I'm Stone in Love with You," and Justin Timberlake sing "My Love." To hear transitions back and forth between falsetto, mix, and belt, listen to Lenny Kravitz sing "Fields of Joy," Adam Levine sing "Lost Stars," or Sam Smith sing "Writing's on the Wall." In the song, "Needs" by Collective Soul, you can hear Ed Roland flip into falsetto.

Making a Smooth Transition

Middle voice is the bridge between head voice and chest voice, so you want to move easily in and out of middle voice. You may always feel a transition between the two registers, but the goal is to not hear a big change between the two. So you need to figure out where to make those transitions. Comparing the sound and feel of your middle voice to your chest voice and head voice is the easiest way to figure that out. To find out how you can transition smoothly and purposefully to avoid drastic changes in your sound, keep reading.

REMEMBER

It may be a little tricky in the beginning to get all the transitions to happen smoothly — keep trying and keep practicing.

Maneuvering in and out of chest voice

Knowing when to make the middle voice transitions can be tricky. As you sing each descending or ascending pattern, notice how it feels — you should be able to feel your chest voice wanting to take over or give up to middle voice. Knowing what's too low for your middle voice and what's too high for your chest voice allows you to figure out where you need to make the transition from middle voice to chest voice. Practicing the exercises helps you make those transitions smoothly.

Descending from middle voice to chest voice

The following exercises work on your transition from middle voice into chest voice. Because you just found your middle voice, you may not be sure what the difference is in the feeling between chest voice and middle voice. The pattern in Figure 11-19 gives you the chance to explore the differences in sound, vibrations, and feeling.

PLAY THIS

The descending pattern in Figure 11-19 moves from middle voice to chest voice. The sensations between middle voice and chest voice are a bit different, and moving down in scale enables you to feel the changes as you move into chest voice. As you move into chest voice from middle voice, you want to open the space in your throat instead of pressing down. The vibrations of resonance gradually move lower as you descend and the feeling is thicker and fuller.

» **Guys:** Gentlemen, this pattern challenges you to sing from your middle voice to your chest voice. The first time you hear the pattern played, you sing the first two notes in your middle voice and then move to chest voice. As the pattern gets lower, you can move into chest voice sooner. Notice the slight difference in feeling between the notes in middle voice and the notes in chest voice; chest voice feels thicker.

- **Dolls:** Start the first repetition of this pattern in middle voice and switch to chest voice on the bottom note. As the pattern gets lower in pitch, you may need to switch to chest voice sooner. No matter how low the pattern goes, always sing the top note in your middle voice.

TRACK 28

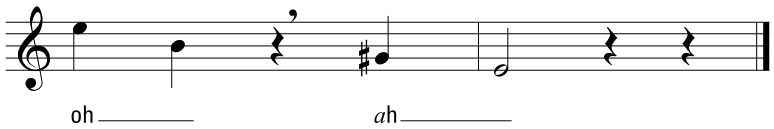


FIGURE 11-19: Smoothing the transitions.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Ascending from chest voice to middle voice

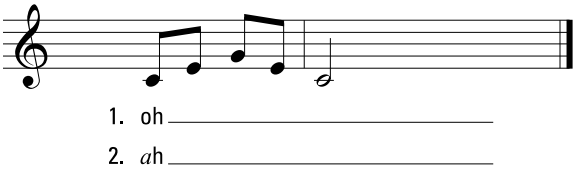
The exercise in this section moves from chest voice back up to middle voice. Doing it may be difficult for you in the beginning. Just as it's easier to gain weight than to lose it, moving from middle voice to chest voice is often easier because it's like getting thicker and gaining weight. Moving from chest voice to middle voice is about losing weight. Practice the middle voice patterns until you're confident of the sounds and feelings of middle voice. You can then work this exercise, which moves from middle voice to chest voice. When you're really confident, try the exercise in Figure 11-20.

PLAY THIS

Remember what it felt like to make that transition from middle voice to chest voice? The feeling gradually got thicker as you went down the scale. The reverse happens in the pattern in Figure 11-20. You need to gradually lighten the sound as you ascend in pitch — the vowels listed help you move from a heavier chest voice sound and lighten up as you ascend into middle voice. If you find a lighter chest voice sound that moves easily from the bottom into middle voice, you've found the gold mine. If you aren't sure what it should sound like, listen to the singers a few times to hear the differences:

- **Guys:** The first two repetitions of the pattern are in chest voice. The third repetition moves from chest voice to middle voice on the top note. Allow the sound to lighten or use less pressure as you ascend.
- **Dolls:** The first couple of repetitions start in chest voice and move to middle voice on the top note. As the pattern gets higher with each repetition, you can transition to middle voice sooner. Try to sing the top notes lighter than the bottom notes.

TRACK 29



© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

FIGURE 11-20: Creating a legato line in and out of chest voice.

Transitioning in and out of head voice

Ascending to head voice means that you have to let go of the thick weight of chest voice or middle voice and lighten up the sound. You may have to go overboard at first to lighten the sound without squeezing your throat. The key is to feel the sound vibrating higher in your head. (See the "Feeling head voice" section, earlier in this chapter.)

Ascending from middle voice to head voice

Taking the middle voice too high keeps the head voice from getting its fair share of the workout. The transitions in your voice also become more difficult if you try to push a middle voice sound too high. The transition notes won't be dependable because you'll try to sing them heavy, and maintaining that heavy sound can be tricky. You can make a choice of when to change to head voice in a particular song, but in the exercises, you want to keep the head voice strong by switching as early as possible.

PLAY THIS

Work the exercise in Figure 11-21 to help you feel the transition from middle voice to head voice. Notice that the pattern has rests in it for you to detach the notes. Make sure that you transition into head voice instead of carrying up to middle voice. Notice, too, that the vowels are laid out so that your sound is thicker at the bottom and gradually lightens as you ascend:

- **Guys:** This pattern starts in your chest voice, but you definitely move through your middle voice on your way up to head voice. As you ascend in pitch, you may be tempted to sing a full, heavy sound. Instead, feel the vibrations changing as you ascend and allow the sound to lighten, with less pressure in your throat on the higher notes.
- **Dolls:** Sing this pattern moving back and forth between middle voice and head voice. With each repetition, you can change to head voice sooner. As you descend in the pattern, notice how the middle voice feels heavier than head voice. You can start the first three reps in chest voice, but transition to middle voice on the second note. The female demonstrates this for you.

TRACK 30

FIGURE 11-21: Working from middle voice to head voice.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Descending from head voice to middle voice

When moving from head voice to middle voice, the sound and sensations gradually thicken as you move down the scale. Taking head voice too low creates a light sound, and if the sound in the middle part of the voice is too light, it's harder to make yourself heard. Try the exercises in this section to smooth that transition from head voice to middle voice.

PLAY THIS

In the pattern in Figure 11-22, you start on the high note of the pattern and work your way to the bottom. Find the spinning feeling of head voice on the first note, and gradually let the sound grow thicker as you descend. You may even feel the vibrations moving from your head to your mouth or your neck as you descend. That's just fine. The pattern starts slowly and gradually gets faster. Take your time. You may need to repeat the first few slower patterns to get accustomed to making the transition before you tackle the faster patterns:

- **Guys:** As you descend in this pattern, you land in chest voice. It's a great pattern for you to sing moving from your head voice down through your middle voice. If the top notes are too high for you right now, start in falsetto. Later, when you're more confident, you can start in head voice.
- **Dolls:** This pattern moves from head voice to middle voice. Some of the later repetitions move to your chest voice. If the first few repetitions are too high, join in whenever you can as the pattern descends.

TRACK 31

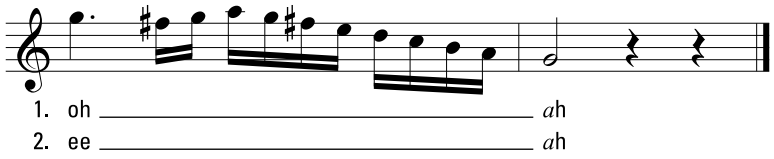


FIGURE 11-22: Spinning down.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Mixing It Up

Mix is a sound commonly used in contemporary music that you hear on the radio or in musicals. If middle voice is a transition between chest voice and head voice and uses a balance of those muscle groups, then mix occurs when you choose to vary the balance. If middle voice is a 50/50 balance of head voice and chest voice, the mix may shift those percentages. For example, you may want to use 70 percent chest voice and 30 percent head voice, to create a sound that is fuller or thicker than middle voice. Other times you may want the mix to be 40 percent chest voice and 60 percent head voice; with more head voice mixed in, this sound is lighter than chest voice but fuller than head voice. You create these variations by changing the combination of resonance, weight, and breath compression. Mix is appropriate for almost any style of singing, but it isn't as commonly used in classical music.

The terminology can be confusing, but I want you to know the phrases you may hear from other singers:

- A heavy mix or a mix that has more than 50 percent chest voice is often called a chest voice–dominated mix because it feels full like chest voice and sounds similar to chest voice. The difference is that it isn't pure chest voice; it has some head voice mixed in.
- Likewise, a mix that's lighter or has more than 50 percent head voice in it is often called a head voice–dominated mix.

No measuring scale can tell you the percentages; you discover how to hear or feel the amount of weight or resonance in a sound and know that it's a mix.

Making the most of your mix, man

Men, as your falsetto gets stronger, it's time to mix it up to strengthen the notes that were once purely falsetto sounds. If you use a blend of 50 percent chest voice and 50 percent head voice, you're describing what happens in the middle part of your voice. You can also vary that percentage to use more chest voice or head voice, or mix up the percentage. Depending on where you are in your range, the mix can be more head voice–dominated or chest voice–dominated.

In singing just one note, you can start in falsetto and then add faster airflow and a high resonance to make the note head voice-dominated. This head voice–dominated mix is more common at the higher end of the male voice; a chest voice–dominated mix is more common in the chest voice range. If you add some weight or thickness as you sing the note and keep the resonance low, you move

into a mix that is chest voice–dominated. Mix for the male voice is similar to mix for the female voice because you can vary the amount of weight and location of vibrations of resonance you use when you mix.

TECHNICAL STUFF

Mix requires you to find a balance of the muscles that create head voice and chest voice. If the muscles that help you create chest voice are too active while you try to sing high notes, the sound becomes heavy and may even break or crack. Allowing the muscles that create head voice or chest voice to engage at the appropriate time ensures smooth transitions from the top of your voice to the bottom.

REMEMBER

Remember that you can sing the exact same notes two different ways: You can sing the F just above Middle C in your falsetto or in your head voice. Having the strength to make either choice gives you a chance to decide what kind of sound you want to make in each song.

PLAY THIS

Listen while a male singer demonstrates the pattern in Figure 11-23, which moves from falsetto into a mix. Notice that as he descends, he drops into a sound that's not heavy. The sound is lighter, yet has fullness just like head voice. The feeling is of less pressure in the throat.

FIGURE 11-23: Sliding into a mix.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Getting into the mix, gals

Ladies, you can explore the female mix in this section. The female mix is a sound that you can use when you want to make a thicker sound in the middle part of your voice. Mix is appropriate for almost any style of singing but isn't as commonly used in classical music.

You can use the female mix when you want to make a thicker sound in the middle part of your voice, so you want to work your middle voice until it's quite strong. Work on the speaking voice exercises so you have command over the onset of tone, and then tackle mix. (See Chapter 13 for more on your speaking voice.) Using mix is appropriate when you don't want to use a belt sound (see Chapter 13) or when you want to explore different sounds to express the text of your song. Some songs don't need a heavy chest voice sound, but instead need a sound that's rich and full, like a mix.

MIXERS IN SONG

You can hear some pretty terrific women demonstrate a mix. Listen to Barbara Cook sing "Chain of Love." Dionne Warwick uses her mix in "Walk On By." Listen closely to the sound she uses when she says "walk on by." That's the sound of her mix. In "When I Look at You" from *Scarlet Pimpernel* as sung by Linda Eder and "You Must Love Me" from *Evita* as sung by Solea Pfeiffer, you hear terrific examples of a chest voice–dominated mix and a head voice–dominated mix.

Listen to the difference in the weight of the sound. The chest voice–dominated mix sounds a little heavier. Listen to Barbra Streisand and Celine Dion mix in their duet "Tell Him." Diana Ross sings "Ain't No Mountain High Enough" where she uses her head voice, mix, and belt compared to "Endless Love" where she stays on the head voice side in her mix. Janet Jackson uses mix when she sings "Together Again" compared to her use of much more chest voice in the duet "Scream" with her brother Michael Jackson.

If you want to try out some songs to explore your mix, try these two: "I Don't Know How to Love Him" from *Jesus Christ Superstar* and "It Might As Well Be Spring" from *State Fair.* Because of the story, the first song requires a chest voice–dominated mix and the second song requires a head voice–dominated mix. Develop your registers and then work on the mix exercises in this chapter.

To find your mix, try the opposite of what you normally do to sing in middle voice. To sing from middle voice to head voice normally, you gradually lighten the sound as you ascend in pitch. To strengthen your mix, I want you to avoid lightening the sound into head voice as you ascend.

TIP

Gentlemen, the patterns in Figures 11-24 and 11-25 are fine for you to sing. You can sing the patterns in your falsetto if you're just getting the hang of your falsetto. If your falsetto is pretty secure, you can sing the patterns in a mix by alternating the resonance and weight in the tone.

PLAY THIS

Listen to the singer demonstrate the pattern in Figure 11-24, using a mix. Notice how she ascends in pitch and how the sound vibrates in the same place in her body. As you sing through the pattern, think of singing straight out. Allow the tone to move out in front of you and not allow the vibrations of resonance to rise higher in your head as you ascend in pitch. This feels odd at first, but you'll gradually sense the sound getting wider as you ascend in pitch. You can also think of your chest opening wide as you move up in pitch. I pretend that I'm swimming into the tone. As you swim toward the tone, open your arms and your body to move into the sound. You can also imagine your chest and throat opening to make more room for the sound. Because you normally allow the vibrations of resonance

to move higher as you ascend into head voice, you want to keep the space open so the resonance stays down as you move higher in a mix. Keeping the resonance down (instead of allowing it to rise to your head as you normally do when you ascend) makes it sound as if you ascend and stay in chest voice.

FIGURE 11-24: Mixing it up.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Singing in a mix is a choice that you want to consciously make. As you explore the mix, continue to work on your middle voice transitions into head voice so that you can still make the sound gradually lighten as you ascend in pitch when you choose to do so.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 11-25 is designed to help you alternate between a chest voice–dominated mix and a head voice–dominated mix. Listen to the singer demonstrate for you. She alters each pattern between a chest voice–dominated mix and a head voice–dominated mix. She begins on a chest voice–dominated mix and continues alternating throughout the repetitions so you can hear the difference between the sounds. The second time she sings the pattern, it sounds like she's singing in her head voice even though she's not in her head voice range — she's using a head voice–dominated mix. She made this change by thinking of the sensation as lighter and higher resonance for the head voice–dominated mix and heavier and dropping the resonance lower for chest voice–dominated. After you listen to her demonstration a few times, play the track again and sing along.

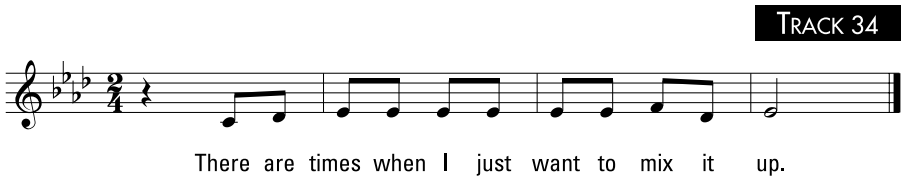


FIGURE 11-25: Alternating between chest and head voice–dominated mix.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

WICKED HIGH NOTES

Have you ever heard a woman sing notes that sounded higher than any note on the piano? Those wicked high notes that females sing have several different names: *flute register, bell register, flageolet,* and *whistle register.* I use the term *whistle,* because in the beginning, you feel that the sounds are squealing out of your body like a whistling teakettle. If you're a really low female voice, your voice may not be able to make these sounds — the notes above High C may be just too high for you right now. That's okay, because you have plenty of notes below High C to play with.

Singing in whistle feels as if the notes are turning over into a different register at the very top of head voice range — it feels out of control, really high and small, and you may feel the sensations on the top of your head. These notes may not feel big and strong, like chest voice or even middle voice. It's similar to what Mariah Carey did in her first few recordings. Not everyone can make those funky high sounds, but you can try if you want. You can find other singers demonstrating whistle register by typing in your search engine "female singers demonstrating whistle register." Some of the most notable singers who you find demonstrating whistle are Minnie Riperton, Ariana Grande, and Morisette Amon.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Shifting gears with your voice
- Singing throughout your range
- Running 'round your range: Pop

Chapter 12

Expanding Your Vocal Flexibility and Range

Singing throughout your range while making successful register transitions further fine-tunes your vocal skills. *Range* is the highest and lowest pitch that a singer sings and all the notes in between. The *vocal registers* are chest voice, middle voice and head voice; as with shifting gears in a car, you switch registers as you sing through your range. (See Chapter 2 for more information on range and Chapter 11 for information on registers, which you may know as the different parts of the voice.)

Your overall singing goals are to extend your range, make your highest and lowest notes stronger, and increase your singing agility. In striving to meet these goals, then your range for practicing and your range for performing are different. For example, I practice singing high notes, but I may not sing all those notes in public. Instead, I stick to singing the strongest notes in my range in public, but I keep practicing to extend it and make my singing voice more *agile* — able to move quickly between notes.

In this chapter, you have an opportunity to extend your own practice range so that your notes grow stronger and your voice becomes more agile. You even work on some riffs to make your pop style really hot. As you listen to the online tracks, remember that you don't have to sing every exercise today. Work a few patterns until you're comfortable and then move on to some of the harder ones.

Tackling Register Transitions

If you haven't had a chance yet, check out Chapter 11 for information on where to make transitions in your voice. Knowing where to make transitions makes it easier to figure out how to successfully sing a song. When you know the transition points, you can choose tactics, such as the following, to help you sing through the transitions when you practice:

- **Choose friendly vowels to sing.** *Closed vowels,* such as in the words *me, may,* and *to,* are often easier to sing than open vowels such as *ah.* (See Chapter 8 for more information on vowels.) The vowels I list next to each exercise are the vowels that help you the most when you first sing the patterns. If you're having trouble singing the pattern, go to Chapter 8 and find some other vowels to help you sing through those exercises.
- **Imitate a siren to feel the change in the vibrations as you go higher in pitch.** That same sensation of the vibrations rising higher in your head applies to your singing. Head voice requires a higher resonance, so the resonance or vibrations should move higher into your head as you go up the scale. See more information about sirens in Chapter 5, and check out Chapter 7 for information on resonance.
- **As you descend the scale, allow the resonance or vibrations to drop.** It may feel like the vibrations are going down a ladder on your face, gradually stepping down each rung as you go down the scale. The resonance should move lower as you descend in pitch. Middle voice requires a lower resonance or vibration than head voice. Chest voice uses even lower vibrations or resonance than head voice.
- **Go gently into chest voice.** When you descend into chest voice, you want to drop smoothly into it instead of falling down into it. You can experiment by singing a higher note and sliding down in pitch. Try this slide twice. As you slide down the first time, allow the sound or sensations of the vibrations to just fall. This creates a big clunk into chest voice. Then try the same slide again, but think of opening the throat and body as you gradually descend. You'll make a much smoother transition into chest voice. See Chapter 11 for more information on chest voice.
- **Open the back space as you ascend.** You can read about opening the back space in Chapter 6. As you ascend, you want the space in the back of the mouth and the throat to open to give those high notes plenty of room to sing. You also get better results by dropping your jaw, not just dropping your chin. You can read more about dropping the jaw in Chapter 5.
- **Keep your breath steady.** In general, you want to keep the movement of breath steady and flowing as you sing. If you're ascending in pitch, your breath

has to move faster. You don't have to blow more air, but the speed of the airflow must increase. You can read more about breath flow in Chapter 4.

- **Keep energy flowing in your body.** Singing requires a lot of effort, and you want energy to be flowing in your body. You can read more about energy exertion in Chapter 13. Move around as you sing to feel that your entire body is involved in making the sound, especially on the higher notes.

As you sing patterns throughout this chapter, use these tactics to help make smoother register transitions.

Working On Your Range

Figuring out how to sing in each of the registers in your voice is the first big step in singing. The next big step is moving between the registers smoothly, and the final step is extending your range in both directions. Because most singers already have lower notes just from speaking lower in their range, singing exercises usually focus on singing high notes. Ninety-nine percent of singers who ask me for help want to focus on singing high notes, so in this chapter I offer you exercises that work your higher range. Working on high notes can even help your low notes to strengthen; you may find that your range will expand in both directions by working for higher notes. You can explore singing lower notes by working on the exercises on chest voice in Chapter 11; those exercises give you an opportunity to develop lower notes if your voice is capable of extending downward.

Taking your range higher

A great way to increase your range upward is by singing *staccato,* which means "short and detached." Singing shorter, lighter notes helps you in singing higher notes, because you're not using as much heavy weight. To sing staccato, keep your larynx steady by opening your throat and keep the muscles in your neck still. If they flex or tighten, sing the staccato notes lighter, with less weight or pressure; that technique helps you figure out how to work the muscles inside your neck in your larynx. Make the notes light and short, and keep them connected to your breath. If the sound is airy, too much air is escaping. Find a clear sound on a longer note and then gradually sing notes that get shorter to maintain that clarity.

Figure 12-1 gives you the opportunity to explore staccato sounds as you skip notes along the scale. As you ascend in pitch, allow your back space to open. You have to open this space fast because you're moving quickly in the pattern, so think ahead as you're singing. The singer on the online tracks demonstrates the pattern,

singing staccato. You may feel your abs move as you start each note. That's normal: You want your breath to connect to each note. Blowing too much air makes it harder to sing lightly. On the other hand, if you connect just the right amount of air, the notes bounce along the scale. Use the *ee* vowel at first to keep the sound light and dominated by head voice. As your staccato gets easier, you can explore other vowels. This pattern moves from chest voice to middle voice for the male voice and middle voice to head voice for the female voice.

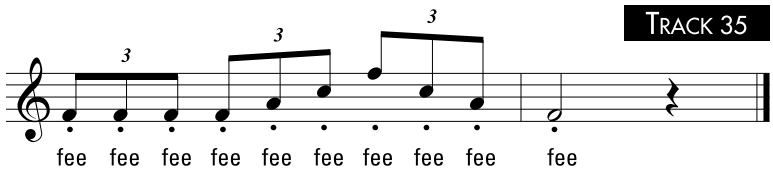


FIGURE 12-1: Skipping around on staccato.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

TIP

Break this exercise into steps: Open the space, send the breath, and then make the sound. Hopefully, it all happens at the same time, but concentrate on the individual steps if you're having trouble getting it all coordinated.

Varying the dynamics

You've probably heard singers control their voice beautifully, whether they're singing loudly or softly. As your flexibility increases in your upper register, you want to figure out how to vary the *dynamics* (volume). The exercise in Figure 12-2 is called a *messa di voce*, which means "placing the voice." In a *messa di voce* exercise, the singer begins the note softly, gradually gets louder, and then grows soft again. Working on the *messa di voce* helps you get comfortable singing loudly or softly on any given note. Allow the vibrato to happen as you work on the exercise. If you aren't sure about vibrato or how to find yours, check out Chapter 6.

PLAY THIS

The singers on the online tracks demonstrate the *messa di voce* exercise in Figure 12-2. You can try this exercise, starting on any note. Just follow these steps:

1. **Start singing the note as softly as you can manage.**
2. **Continue singing the note while gradually getting louder — *crescendo.***

   Maintain a steady flow of air as you grow louder. You want the sound to grow louder because of the increased airflow, not because you're squeezing your throat.

WARNING

You may feel a bump or wiggle as you grow louder. Don't panic: Your muscles need time to adjust to this new skill. Use a consistent flow of air to eliminate the wiggle.

3. **Continue singing the note while gradually getting softer — *decrescendo.***

   Keep the airflow constant as you grow softer. You can pretend that the note begins floating to help you gradually decrease the volume.

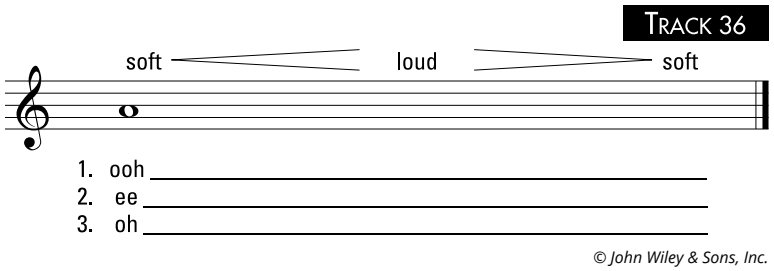


FIGURE 12-2: Messa di voce.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

As you work through this exercise, you may find that you can start the tone even softer and grow even louder. You'll gradually improve this skill with practice — sing only as softly or as loudly as you can manage for today.

Moving between registers

If you want some specific information about each register, check out Chapter 11, which describes each of the areas of your voice. Most of the patterns in the earlier chapters are slow patterns with notes right next to each other; they give you a chance to focus on every sound and sensation as you sing. When you have those specific areas down pat, you'll want the challenge of moving between registers to improve your technique even more. The patterns just ahead move faster, involve larger intervals, and require you to quickly make smooth transitions between registers as you move up and down your range.

If the patterns are too high for you right now, wait until you're more comfortable singing high notes. Listen to them and get used to all the notes so you're ready to sing them when your voice can handle the higher notes. Make sure that you keep practicing, because you want to be able to sing the higher notes and not just avoid them.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 12-3 starts on the top note and keeps returning to that top note. Remember to gradually increase the space in your throat and mouth as you ascend to the higher notes. You also need a steady airflow to make it all the way through the pattern. If you're having trouble singing from start to finish, use your

lip trill or tongue trill to work on your breath and then go back and sing the pattern on the vowels. This pattern moves from middle voice to chest voice for both the male and female voice.

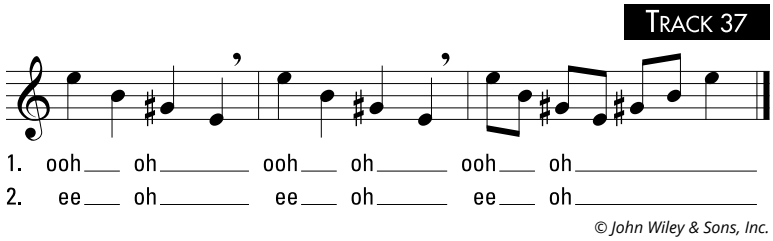


FIGURE 12-3: Descending.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

The pattern in Figure 12-4 moves quickly and ascends over an octave, which gives you a wonderful opportunity to move among chest voice, middle voice, and head voice. As you ascend, take care in making the transitions between the registers. To make the transitions into head voice, you want to allow the resonance to rise higher as you ascend. Look over the list of suggestions under the section, "Tackling Register Transitions," earlier in this chapter. You can also drop down an octave if this pattern is too high for your voice.

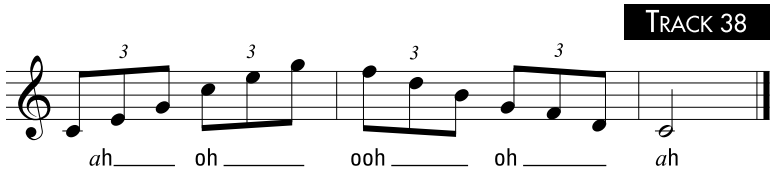


FIGURE 12-4: Stepping between registers.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Taking Your Agility to New Levels

Not every song you sing is slow, and you need to be comfortable singing both fast and slow songs. Singing fast scales develops *agility* — the ability to change notes quickly and easily. Agility is important no matter what kind of music you plan to sing. If your voice can move easily and quickly, you're much more likely to enjoy singing faster songs, because you can sing them well.

Some voices are designed to sing fast. If your voice happens to love only slow songs, be disciplined and work through these agility patterns. Later, you may be glad you did. Agility is especially important for singing classical music and upbeat pop songs. To advance your vocal agility, work through the rest of the exercises in this chapter.

Moving along the scale

The patterns in Figures 12-5 to 12-7 introduce you to patterns that move quickly. Take your time getting used to all the notes. The patterns get progressively harder and longer and include more notes as they go. In addition, the tempo starts slowly in Figure 12-6 and gradually speeds up. This gives you a chance to settle into the pattern before it starts moving too quickly.

PLAY THIS

Figure 12-5 moves along a pattern and repeats a few of the notes along the way. Notice that the first two notes are repeated as are the highest two notes in the pattern. This gives you flexibility; you don't have to try to control every note in the pattern. Be sure to notice your breath connection: You want your breath to move the voice along, not bounce your jaw or your larynx.

FIGURE 12-5: Flexing on five notes.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Picking up the pace

PLAY THIS

By practicing scales or patterns that move quickly, you can develop better agility. The pattern in Figure 12-6 helps you sing at a faster pace up and down a scale while moving through chest voice, middle voice, and head voice. This pattern is a full scale plus one extra note on the top. It's often called a nine-tone scale, in technical terms. On the online tracks, the pattern starts slowly and gradually speeds up. These tips can help you sing this track:

- Try to feel the pivot points or accents on the fifth note and the top note. You can see a line over the pivot notes. If you aim for these pivot notes, you can feel the pattern in two sections instead of one long, run-on pattern.
- Make sure that your jaw stays still as you sing the pattern and that your larynx doesn't bob up and down. Use a mirror and check the movement of both. Keep your fingers on your larynx if you can't see it in the mirror. Review Chapter 5 if you don't remember how to find your larynx.
- If you have trouble getting all the notes, add a consonant — for example, add *L* or *D* to sing *lah* or *dah.* By inserting the consonant, you feel the movement of your tongue as you sing each note, helping you land more confidently on each note. Later you can take away the consonant and sing just the vowels.

TRACK 40

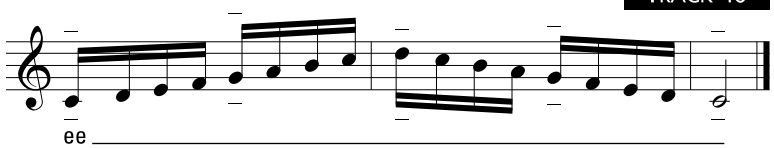


FIGURE 12-6: Sliding up the scale.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

Figure 12-7 shows the same five-note pattern that you explore in other chapters (such as Chapter 8), but I added a few notes. Try to hear that familiar five-note sequence and think of those notes as your stepping stones. You can see a line over the stepping-stone notes.

TRACK 41

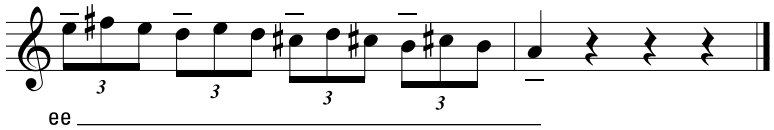


FIGURE 12-7: Tripping along the scale.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

WARNING

You really have to let go of control to sing this pattern because it moves fast. Watch yourself in the mirror and make sure that your jaw isn't bouncing with each note. If you find yourself trying to change the rhythm, sing half of the pattern each time it plays so that you can really focus on the first few notes to release the tension in your throat or jaw.

Skipping through the intervals

Not every song has notes that are right next to each other. You may have to hop all over the place, which requires agility; your voice can do that easily if you practice the following exercises.

WARNING

The patterns in Figures 12-8 and 12-9 aren't easy. I want the online tracks to be beneficial to you for quite some time, so I added some hard patterns. It may take a few times listening to the online tracks to get used to these bouncing patterns. Just keep listening and humming along while following the patterns in the accompanying figures, until you get the patterns straight. After that, you can tackle the patterns, using all the information and skills you've been developing throughout the chapter.

REMEMBER

As you sing patterns that hop around, keep your larynx steady by keeping your throat open. If you feel your larynx bobbing around, go back to some of the easier patterns from the beginning of the online tracks. When you can sing those patterns with your larynx steady, come back to this section. Read the suggestion in the section, "Tackling Register Transitions," earlier in the chapter.

PLAY THIS

Check out the spunky dotted rhythm in Figure 12-8. You've been singing mostly smooth eighth notes, but now it's time to spice them up. Because the notes jump around so quickly, be positively sure that you're not bouncing your jaw or your larynx to change notes. Remember that the note changes inside your larynx, not from your jaw bopping around.

TRACK 42

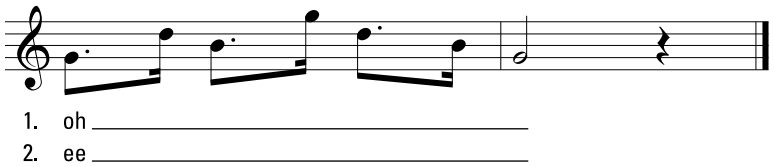


FIGURE 12-8: Spicing it up.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PLAY THIS

Notice that as the singers sing the pattern in Figure 12-9, the sound is smooth, even though the pattern is bouncing around. Feel the momentum of your breath to keep the line moving, but try not to let the notes jerk as you leap around on the intervals.

TRACK 43

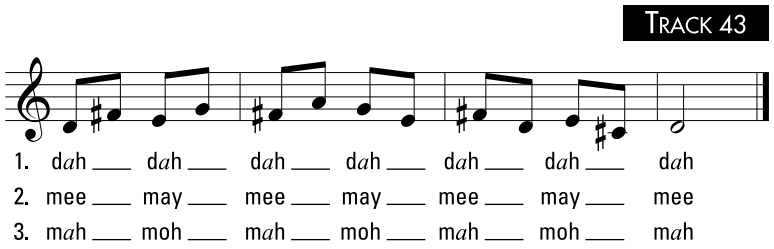


FIGURE 12-9: Bouncing on thirds.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Improvising for a Better Pop Sound

When you listen to pop singers on the radio, they sound like a million bucks. After all, they have all those instruments and backup singers behind them. At home, you probably don't have a professional sound engineer to record you every time

you sing. So how do you get your voice to sound like a million bucks without an engineer? You figure out the style of pop music and add your fabulous technique that you've been developing.

One of the key ingredients in a good pop or R&B sound is a flexible voice. This music offers a freedom of movement and sound that's unlike classical music. When you sing classical, you sing what's on the page with musical precision. With pop music, however, you sing the lyrics with your own take on the music — called *improvising.* Singers who can move their voices easily have a much easier time singing the riffs and licks in pop music. *Riffs* or *licks* are short pieces of music, commonly in pop and R&B songs, that move quickly in a specific pattern and are often improvised. The singer adds notes that express a unique version of the song. I notate some basic patterns that you can find in riffs. Naturally, you still want healthy technique as you sing cool pop sounds.

Mastering patterns in pop music

The patterns in Figures 12-10 and 12-11 are short, but they give you a chance to sing some basic riffs that you often hear in pop songs. One of the characteristics of pop music is freedom of sound: You can move along the melody line uninhibited. Try to find a free flow of the musical line as you sing.

As the singers demonstrate the pattern in Figure 12-10, they easily move without trying to sing a huge sound. You explore big sounds in the other chapters, but now you can explore a sound that's a little more casual.

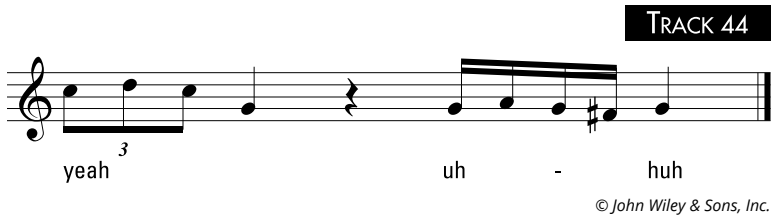


FIGURE 12-10: Checking out pop riffs.

Try the descending pop riff in Figure 12-11. Notice that it begins with the same basic notes. After you try this one, experiment on your own to create an ascending riff. Just make them funky to sound like pop music. You're precise in other exercises, but now you can spice it up.

TRACK 45

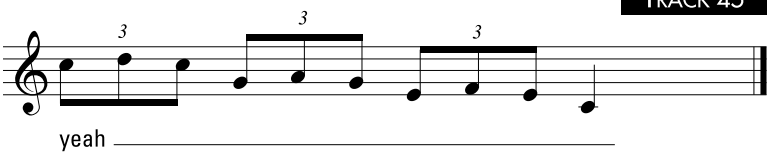


FIGURE 12-11: Descending pop riff.

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Singing pop riffs with chords

The patterns that you sing in Figures 12-10 and 12-11 help you explore a pop sound. Those patterns often arise in pop songs, so you can now sing them on your own with the chords you hear on Track 46 on the online tracks. The first couple of times you try this, you may feel frustrated. Just keep trying. Each time I try this with students who aren't used to singing pop music, they try to sing it right. Singing notes that don't blend with the chords is okay — laugh it off and try again. You can even try singing along with a familiar song and adding a few notes yourself; you hear people do that all the time.

Track 46

PLAY THIS

On Track 46, you hear a chord played and singers singing an improvised melody. They practiced the patterns listed in Figures 12-10 and 12-11 and then combined some of those musical ideas to create their own sequence of patterns. The singing is totally improvised. I simply played the chord and let them sing. After you listen to their improvisation, try it yourself. You can sing what they sang, or you can make up your own riff. After the singer demonstrates the riffs, the next few chords are for you to try to improvise by yourself. Be brave and make up something simple in the beginning. As you get better at it, you can make up longer patterns. As long as what you sing blends with the chord, you're right on target.

Track 47

PLAY THIS

On Track 47, you hear the background track to a pop song. You hear the singer improvise a melody and then call out for you to try it. You can make up your own melody by using the riffs you've explored. Listen to the track a few times to get the feel of it, and then try your hand at improvising. The first few times, you'll feel lost, but you'll get better at it.

Track 48

PLAY THIS

On Track 48, you hear the background track to another song. This time, the singer gets you started, but you get to sing the rest of it by yourself. Listen to the track a couple of times to get used to the sound. You then can make up your own pop tune with riffs.

TIP

If you just aren't sure about pop riffs, try this. Sing through your favorite song as you always do. Now sing through the song and add some riffs — embellish the melody to make it sound like a pop song. The first time you try it, add a few extra notes to the melody. Next time, add more extra notes to the melody. The more notes you add, the more flexible and agile your voice becomes.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Resonating new sounds with your speaking voice
- Figuring out how to apply good singing technique
- Discovering how to belt

Chapter 13
It's a Cinch: Belting Out Your Song

Belting is such an exciting sound for a singer. *Belting* is the high-energy sound that singers make in pop, musical theater, and rock music. It's similar to yelling on pitch, but with more of a singing tone than yelling.

Many different styles of music use belting. You've undoubtedly listened to the sounds of belting — you just may not have known how to define it. Belting (or belt) is a combination of forward resonance (see Chapter 7 for information on resonance) and mix (see Chapter 11 for information on head voice, middle voice, and chest voice). In mix, the sound isn't totally head voice or chest voice — it's a combination of the two. It's the sensation you may have already explored in Chapter 11 while working on the middle voice. In this chapter, you use your mix and add forward resonance to create a belt. This chapter offers a lot of information about belting and exercises for you to develop your belt.

The first step in learning to belt is to discover how to properly use your speaking voice. Belting is such an exciting sound that some people want to jump right in and learn to belt before they develop their singing skills. I encourage you to work through the exercises in the order they're listed in the chapter and work slowly to successfully create your belt sound. Take your time and discover that belting uses all the skills you've been exploring throughout the book. If you haven't worked through Chapters 11 and 12, I encourage you to check them out before you explore belting.

When you find a really resonant speaking voice, you can fill an entire room with little effort. For years, I didn't know how to use my speaking voice properly, and I became really tired after speaking for short periods of time. Now that I've discovered my optimum speaking pitch, applied the same breath that I use when I sing, and found resonance in my speaking voice, I'm able to chatter all day without nearly as much effort and with no strain.

By working the exercises in this chapter, you can discover a variety of resonant speaking pitches and range to make your speaking voice clear and commanding. After you work on your speaking voice, you get the chance to finally try some belting exercises. But check out the exercises *after* you've worked on your speaking voice. You need to have a healthy speaking voice that's ready for the high-energy work of belting.

TIP

Working the speaking voice helps you to feel the middle ground in your singing voice. Many people, especially women, speak on a low pitch to sound tough. That's fine, but you can also speak in your middle voice range and command attention. Men usually speak in their chest voice. If you happen to have a high speaking pitch, you may still be in chest voice. You can work the exercises in this chapter to explore variations in pitch and get your speaking voice on track by using resonance and breath coordination.

REMEMBER

No matter what sound you explore with your speaking voice, remember to apply your knowledge of breathing from Chapter 4. You may be tempted to squeeze your throat to make some of the tones, but that won't help in the long run; you still have to release that tension later. Keep exploring tones with an open throat, consistent airflow, and an abundance of gusto.

Playing around with Pitch

To get the most benefit from the speaking voice exercises in this chapter, I set up the following sections to work out your speaking voice so you go through each of these steps:

1. **Explore the tones and pitch you currently use when you speak.**

   You need to know what sounds you currently can make before you can explore other sounds and pitches with your speaking voice.

2. **Explore chanting to find an optimum speaking pitch.**

   Your optimum speaking pitch is the pitch that resonates and sounds the best in your voice.

3. **Apply that same vibrant speaking tone of your optimum speaking pitch to other pitches.**

   Being able to make vibrant tones on a variety of pitches is the precursor to handling spoken text in the middle of your song or just before your song starts. Those vibrant tones also make you sound great when you have to make a presentation at work or give a speech.

4. **Work on high-energy speaking and resonance to prepare for belting.**

5. **Explore belting.**

TIP

Because your speaking voice is so important to the health of your singing voice, the steps are detailed. To keep you speaking and singing well every day, try all the exercises in the chapter — but try them in the order they're listed to get the most benefit.

Talking to yourself

Before you explore the speaking voice exercises in the upcoming sections, record yourself speaking and listen to the tone. Just listening to yourself talk involves a different sound than when hearing your voice from a recording. When you play a recording of yourself, you can hear the tone of your speaking voice from an outside source. You can even listen to your message on your voicemail. Notice whether the pitch of your speaking voice is low or high and whether your tone is bright and forward or dark and muffled. You can also record yourself during a conversation discussing some happy event in your life: Your speaking voice may have more pitch variety because of the excitement of your emotions.

Everyone has a central pitch that they return to when speaking. You can change your central speaking pitch to find one that helps you get the most ringing and resonant tone from your speaking voice. Explore the following exercise to explore a resonant speaking voice and then find which pitch sounds the best in your speaking voice.

Chanting and speaking

To understand what I mean about resonant speaking voices, I want you to explore chanting, which is like speak-singing. Exploring chanting helps you understand the close relationship between a resonant tone for speaking and a resonant tone for singing. To explore chanting, you sing some pitches, chant the same pitches, and then speak the same pitches.

This exercise uses the opening three notes to "Three Blind Mice." You may want to sing a bit of the song just to refresh your memory before following these steps:

1. **Sing the first three notes of "Three Blind Mice" and notice the feeling in your throat.**

   Make sure that your version of the song isn't really low in your chest voice. Your optimum pitch isn't the lowest note you can sing or speak. It needs to be higher to find the most ring and resonance.

2. **Speak the opening words "Three Blind Mice."**

   Aim for a pitch that's in the vicinity of Middle C or a little higher for women and around an octave below Middle C and higher for men. You can explore higher pitches if you think that you're speaking too low.

3. **Sing the first three notes of "Three Blind Mice" again.**

4. **Chant the first three notes of the song on one note.**

   Chanting means to speak-sing the pitches, as you hear monks doing in monasteries. To speak-sing the pitches, you hold out vowels when you speak, similar to what you do when you sing. Chanting may feel silly because either it seems like you're working to get someone who's hard of hearing to understand you or it feels like singsong.

5. **Speak the first three words of the song again (speaking naturally this time) and see what pitches come out.**

   Keep the sensations of resonance similar in your singing, chanting, and speaking all on the same pitches. Remember to connect your breath to the speaking voice just as you do for singing.

You can also choose to sing "Three Blind Mice" on higher pitches, and then chant and speak into those pitches.

WARNING

You may feel strain or pressure when doing this exercise. If so, follow these instructions:

- If you feel strain, you're probably using your full chest voice to create the tone. The feeling of pulling up weight from the bottom means you're actively engaging your chest voice. Try speaking again, but use a tone more similar to your *middle voice* (a balance of muscle groups that create head voice and chest voice working together instead of just chest voice). To release the weight of chest voice, speak with a lighter tone as if you're young and innocent. That youthful sound helps release the weight of chest voice and engage more head voice.

- If you feel pressure when you're speaking, it may be because you're not maintaining a consistent airflow as you're speaking.
- If the tone is too wispy and light, engage your body. Your whole body should be ready to help you make the sound. You can pretend that you're about to leap up and dance to help you feel the commitment from your body.
- You can also explore the exercise in the section "Using body energy to find clarity of tone," later in this chapter. Try again and open your throat, find your breath, and aim the tone right in front of you.

Finding your optimum speaking pitch

In the previous section, you find that you can move from singing to chanting to speaking and apply your same breathing technique and tone production when speaking or singing. In exploring chanting, you find the pitch that sounds the best in your voice, called the *optimum pitch.* Your optimum speaking pitch, or the central speaking pitch that sounds the best in your voice, is usually where you say, "Uh-huh." The pitch on *huh* works the best for most people. If someone asks you a question and you answer without thinking about what you're doing, you probably make the tone on a pitch near your middle voice if you're a woman and near chest voice if you're a man. This is good. The tone of the optimum pitch is important, not just the pitch itself.

To find your optimum pitch, follow these steps:

1. **Say "Uh-huh."**

   Notice the second pitch that you sound for the *huh* of "Uh-huh."

2. **Say "Uh-huh" a few times and then move right into speaking by saying your name immediately after the *huh.***

   Notice the pitch when you said your name. Was it one of the pitches in "Uh-huh," or was it lower? If it was lower, try again and say your name on the same pitch as the *huh*.

Your optimum speaking pitch helps you find prominent vibrations and easy carrying power to your speaking voice. You can then take that to other pitches. If you aren't sure what sounds best, ask a friend to listen or record yourself and listen back. It's okay to explore different pitches; that's the objective of the exercise.

REMEMBER

Listen for the pitches that really buzz or really vibrate as you speak. The best speaking pitch isn't the lowest or highest note of your range; it's somewhere near the middle voice range for women and the chest voice range for men.

Increasing your speaking range

The next step in your quest of a belt is to practice speaking with a tone that uses forward resonance and high energy on various pitches. Please don't try this exercise until you explore the exercise in the previous section. By knowing your optimum speaking pitch and exploring that sound and feeling, you'll be more prepared for this exercise, because you'll understand the pitch in your speaking voice. When you're ready, try this:

1. **Try being monotone.**

   Find your optimum speaking pitch, and practice reading a recipe or an article from the newspaper in a monotone on the optimum pitch. That means saying every word on one pitch and not varying as you do when you normally speak.

2. **When the monotone is quite easy, vary your reading by alternating between two adjacent pitches.**

   Use only two pitches for now so you can connect the breath and feel the sensations in your body and face.

3. **When you're feeling confident, move up to a slightly higher pitch and repeat Steps 1 and 2.**

   On the higher pitch, you want to maintain the resonant tone of your speaking voice that you had on the previous pitch. Just as in the singing exercises, the resonance needs to move higher as you ascend in pitch. You also want to maintain a mixed sound and not flip into head voice.

4. **Each time you're confident of the pitch you're speaking, try the next-higher note and use that as the central speaking pitch when you repeat Steps 1 and 2.**

WARNING

Women, after you get to the F just above Middle C, you'll feel like you can't speak any higher. You can. Find a middle voice or mixed sound, not heavy chest voice, and continue speaking.

After you try the exercise and explore a few pitches, listen to Track 49 on the online tracks to hear a female demonstrate how to move up the scale to increase her speaking voice range. Flipping into head voice when you try this exercise is okay. Keep working on speaking in head voice and steadily develop your ability to speak in a mix by allowing the vibrations of resonance to drop lower in your body and gradually add more chest voice as you descend in pitch. Men tend to speak in chest voice so you won't feel a huge register shift when you change pitches.

Track 49

PLAY THIS

On Track 49, you can hear a female singer demonstrating the sound of speaking "Give that back!" and moving higher in pitch. She starts near Middle C and gradually works her way up the scale. Notice that as she moves up the scale, her speaking voice stays strong. The first few times you try this exercise, you may feel comfortable going up only a few steps. When those few steps are solid in your voice, try moving up a few more steps. The singer demonstrating on the track has worked on this exercise for quite some time and is confident moving quite high with her speaking voice. Notice how the resonance moves higher as she ascends. You want the resonance to move higher even though you're not going into head voice. In case you're a mezzo and discouraged because the concept of lightening your chest voice as you ascend is hard, the singer you hear on Track 49 has a deep mezzo singing voice, yet easily demonstrates her speaking voice over an octave above middle C, and she's a terrific belter. Keep practicing to develop your speaking voice range.

Using body energy to find clarity of tone

Using body energy is really helpful to get a clear speaking or singing sound, especially for belting. By *body energy*, I mean that surge of energy in your body that helps you make the sound, such as when you're about to lift something heavy or when you yell. When you apply this same kind of movement or energy to singing, you can take advantage of that purposeful flow of air to create clear tones on a specific pitch. So connecting this idea to speaking means finding your alignment from Chapter 3, finding the breath from Chapter 4, finding some energy from physical movement, and then making the sounds with your speaking voice. You find that your speaking voice can make plenty of noise just because of the breath and energy surging in your body. The surge of energy must come from the center of your body.

- As you sing part of your favorite song, rock back and forth from one foot to the other or swing your hips from side to side to feel the surge or connection of energy for your whole body.
- You can also bounce in place just to get your legs in motion or engage an imaginary fencing partner.
- Using a plié from your ballet class is another way to engage your upper and lower body. *Plié* means "to bend." In this case, you bend your knees as you gradually move toward the floor and then back up.
- You can also just hold on to something heavy as you sing. Don't go lifting the pool table, but lift a heavy book as you sing. Notice that, as you lift the book, the tone of your voice responds to the energy moving, which probably makes the tone clear. Keep your breath moving as you experiment with lifting objects.

You want your breath to keep moving. It's possible to really squeeze and make clear tones, but you know what tension feels like by now, and you know that it won't help you in the long run.

REMEMBER

To pump up the volume and make a louder tone, use a faster flow of air and add more energy. To gradually get louder (crescendo) as you speak or sing, speed up the flow of air and exert more energy. See Chapter 4 about breathing for singing. Practice speaking through some dialogue from a song or a monologue; start the tone softly and then gradually get louder to practice this idea of a consistent energy flow. Belting requires a lot of effort; you want your body — not your throat — to make the effort.

Defining Healthy Belting

Because your speaking voice is so closely related to belting, using the speaking voice to develop a belting sound allows you to use a balance of muscles to create the sound instead of just using full chest voice.

WARNING

Belting is controversial among singers and voice teachers. The most common statement you hear is that belting is dangerous and can ruin your voice. Of course, any type of bad technique can hurt your voice, including bad technique for belting.

Healthy belting is possible if you take the time to really work on your speaking voice to prepare you for the high-energy sounds. Good technique prevents you from having to use a heavy chest voice to make the belting sounds.

When you're just beginning to work on belting, you may think the sound is too intense. The feeling shouldn't be too tight, but the sound may be intense because of increased vibrations around your face from nasal resonance. Keep reading to experiment with resonating qualities and understand nasal resonance. (See Chapter 7 for more on resonance.)

If you're not a fan of belting, you can pass this section and head straight to Chapter 14 for information about training for different styles of singing. If you really want a chance to explore belting, please work on the speaking voice exercises and then come back to the belting exercises.

The steps to making a healthy belt require that you find some high-energy speaking sounds before using your singing voice. You'll have a harder time figuring out how to correctly make the sounds if you jump right to the belting on the online tracks. If you're an advanced singer and have some experience with belting, you can explore the exercises at a faster pace.

When you do return to these exercises to begin belting, take some time to practice some singing exercises to warm up your voice before you begin the belting exercises. You'll have an easier time making the sounds if your voice is warmed up.

TIP

When you figure out how to belt, move back and forth between your different styles of singing so you don't get stuck. Singers often like to belt so much that they neglect the rest of their voice. The top part of your voice — head voice — still needs a good workout to stay in shape so you're able to move back and forth between your other styles of singing.

TECHNICAL STUFF

For a beginner, I strongly suggest that you work on your singing voice by using exercises in another chapter, such as Chapter 11, and then return to this chapter. When you begin this chapter, you need to really focus on your progress in each exercise before you can move on to the next. Most beginner singers need a year or more to work on their singing voice, and then another six months to a year to belt successfully.

Comparing belt and chest voice

Belting is similar to a strong mix rather than a full, heavy chest voice. Save the heavy chest voice sounds for the bottom of your voice.

WARNING

Belting can be detrimental to your singing voice if you don't take the time to gain strength in your middle voice (see Chapter 11) and work on your speaking voice to prepare your voice for the high-energy sounds you need to make. (Use the exercises in the earlier section, "Playing around with Pitch.")

Track 50

PLAY THIS

On Track 50, listen to the female singer demonstrate the difference between the weight of a heavy chest voice sound on an *a*h vowel and the resonance of a belted sound on an "a" vowel. The chest voice sound she demonstrates is 100 percent chest voice, a heavy chest voice sound. The sensation she felt was that her chest voice was much heavier than the belt sound because she changed the resonance for the belt sound. That resonance may sound obnoxious, but by feeling the difference between the two sounds, she's able to use forward resonance to help her belt instead of just heavy chest voice. By working on her speaking voice, she was able to develop her belt without engaging her full chest voice. Listen to Track 50 again knowing that delightfully obnoxious forward resonance is a temporary tool to help you figure out lightening up chest voice, and later you can change the resonance.

Knowing your limits as a beginner belter

Belting is like any other singing skill; it takes time to master it. If you're just beginning to belt, make it part of your daily routine — but not the only part of your daily routine. You don't go to the gym on the first day you buy the membership and spend the entire day on the treadmill. Give yourself time to build up the muscle strength to make the sounds in a healthy way.

TIP

If you find yourself pushing or feel tired at the end of a work session, go back and check your technique. If all the points on your checklist are in good working order, shorten the amount of time that you work on belting at your next practice session. Continue to also work on your speaking voice to keep it in good shape. Be sure to work on all areas of your voice after you discover belting. You want to keep your technique balanced and build strength in all areas of your voice.

Noting the difference between the sexes

Belting is different not only between women and men, but also for different voice types. Keep reading to discover the differences for yourself and develop a healthy belting technique, custom designed for your voice.

Women

A healthy belt for the female voice means using a consistent flow of air, high resonance (especially nasal resonance), exertion of body energy, balance of chest voice weight, and a strong speaking voice sound that sustains into sung tones. When the belt is right, belters say it feels like middle voice but sounds like chest voice. Belting is going to be easier for the lighter sopranos than for mezzos. I'm not saying that you mezzos shouldn't try it, but you may have to work a little harder to figure out how to use a light chest voice.

Men

Belting for the male voice can be fun. It's not a huge technical feat for men to change the sound enough to create this style of singing. To create a belting sound, you need to find a forward resonating sound and a fullness of tone as you ascend in pitch. The fullness of tone can happen from using some chest voice in head voice territory. Using forward resonance may feel smaller to you, but it sounds full in the room to your audience. Because this sound is so much harder for women, the tracks on belting have only one example of a male voice belting. If you're feeling left out, Chapter 11 devotes more time to the male voice and falsetto. The exercises in this chapter are in a great range for you, too, so feel free to sing along even though the demonstrator on the track is female.

Most men allow the sound to roll back as they ascend in pitch. This is a perfectly normal action to take when singing classical music. When the sound moves back, it's called cover. In other words, the sound moves back (or uses more resonance in the throat), and the vowels slightly modify. To make a distinction between your classical sound and your belting sound, you want to keep the sound rolling forward or use more nasal resonance. All resonators are used for singing, but for belting, the prominent resonance comes from the nasal cavity.

Track 51

PLAY THIS

On Track 51, you can hear a male voice belting. The male singer sings, "Listen as I wail!" so you can hear the sounds of a high, male voice belt. Notice that the notes are in the head voice range, yet the sound is different from the other sounds you hear the male singers make on the tracks in the falsetto and head voice examples.

INTRODUCING MIX BELT

Some people use the terms *belt* and *chest voice* as if they're the same. Belt and chest voice may be related, but they're not the same. Belt uses some chest voice, but it's not pure chest voice. Mix just means that you're mixing or combining registers — combining or using head voice and chest voice at the same time and using qualities of both. The exercises in Chapter 11 help you explore the middle part of your voice, a combination of head voice and chest voice called *mix.*

Two primary muscle groups help create head voice and chest voice. When you sing in the middle part of the voice or mix, you're using both of those muscle groups at the same time. If you sing in chest voice, you're using only one of the muscle groups; the one that helps you create chest voice. One of the reasons the term *mix belt* has become popular is to help people understand that belt is not pure chest voice — it's a combination or mixture of registers used at the same time. Mix belt is exactly what you explore in the exercises in this chapter; you explore how to use some chest voice and a lot of forward resonance to create a belt. So whether you call it *belt* or *mix belt,* continue reading and exploring the exercises to create a fabulous belt.

Coordinating breath and energy

When you're making belting sounds, you must maintain a consistent flow of air. If your air isn't flowing quickly, you may find yourself squeezing or tightening to make the sounds. You must also increase energy flow as you make more intense

belting sounds. The flow of energy you need to create belting sounds may be greater than the amount of energy you need in your middle voice. Move around the room to connect your whole body to your singing, as you did earlier in the chapter in the section "Using body energy to find clarity of tone." Taking coordinated breath and energy to the next level for belting is one of the goals of this chapter.

Preparing for Belting

To feel the vibrations necessary for belting, you need to explore taking speaking voice sounds higher than you normally speak and explore some tones that aren't very pretty. Belting isn't about making pretty tones. Belting sounds like yelling on pitch. I don't think of yelling as a bad sound: Beginner belters often like the belt sounds of other singers but dislike the sounds in their own voice. Singing in head voice–dominated sounds is very different from belting. You may grow to love the sound of your voice belting, but you may not think it's pretty at first. The sounds are exciting but not pretty.

TIP

Being confused about belting in the beginning is normal. Many singers aren't sure whether they like the sound right away. Knowing that the first sounds aren't the finished product, continue to explore the sounds. As your skill develops, you can play with the tone to find a quality that you can live with. Remember that the first few songs you sing to practice belting need to be spunky, feisty characters. (Appendix A contains a list of belt songs.)

Speaking in a mix

You can use a mix not only for singing, but also for speaking. Using a mix when you speak helps you understand what you need to do when you sing. You can go back to the earlier exercises in the chapter to explore your optimum speaking pitch and then take that optimum sound to more pitches. If you explore Chapter 11, which describes the registers of the voice, you can apply that same registration work to your speaking voice. Speak some text and use a pure chest voice. It's going to feel really heavy. Speak the text again and allow it to be head voice dominated — you likely sound very young. Knowing what is chest voice and head voice when you speak allows you to now explore a combination — mix — in the following exercise.

Try the following exercise to explore the mix when you speak. Later exercises in the section "Moving Resonance to the Front" help you add forward resonance to your mix to create a mix belt. (See the nearby sidebar, "Introducing mix belt," for more information.)

Track 52

PLAY THIS

The exercise on Track 52 ("I Wanna Know!") allows you to explore speaking on a variety of pitches. Listen to the singer demonstrate for you. Notice that the sound of her speaking voice is chatty and conversational. As she moves higher in pitch, she maintains the chatty sound and the resonance moves higher. The sound is a mix — neither chest voice nor head voice but a combination of both. After you listen to the track several times, play it again and join in.

Calling out to a friend

Making high-energy speaking sounds, such as calling out to a friend or making demands of an imaginary foe, helps you find nasal resonance and coordinate breath and energy.

Pretend that your friend is across a noisy room. Try to get their attention by calling out, "Hey." Use your knowledge of breath and energy to connect to this sound. Your imaginary friend doesn't respond, so call out "Hey" again on a different pitch. Remember that it's okay to explore different pitches with your speaking voice. You can also modify this exercise: Call out phrases such as "Give me that back!" or "Back off!" or "Never!" or even try to sell your friend something. Many of the vendors at the ballpark are belting and don't even know it. Try selling some apples, oranges, or popcorn to an imaginary crowd. Use your knowledge of resonance from Chapter 7 to get the tone vibrating in your face to find nasal resonance.

Track 53

PLAY THIS

On Track 53, you hear the singer demonstrating high-energy speaking sounds. The speaking quality that you use to work this exercise feels nasal. It doesn't *sound* nasal, but it may *feel* nasal. This is perfectly legal belting. The wide-open, dark, resonant sounds are good for your classical music. This twang sound that's spoken is perfect for helping your belt. If you've never explored the type of speech I'm describing, get out the online tracks and listen to the examples before you attempt this exercise.

Moving Resonance to the Front

When you sing, you may not be aware of resonance. You can read Chapter 7 about resonance and how it varies in different styles of music. In this section, you explore resonance in different ways and locations so you know how to move it forward when it's time to belt.

Exploring vibrations of resonance

For this exercise, you divide your head into three segments. It's not as painful as it sounds. To really feel the vibrations of resonance in the front of your face, you want to explore the vibrations made in the very back, middle, and front of your face and head. Read on for an explanation of the sounds and sensations in the back, middle, and front of your head, and then listen to the examples on the online tracks:

- **Back:** Pretend that you're very proper and pompous, and say, "Oh, darling!" When you say it, you want to feel the vibrations of sound only in the back of your head or mouth. You can imitate the speaking voice of a very proper queen or royalty. Knowing what the vibrations feel like when they're really far back helps you understand when they move forward. To be sure that you understand the sensation, you want to open the back of the mouth and throat and keep the sound back there. It's as if your mouth is in the back of your head and you're sending the sound out the back of your head.
- **Middle:** Finding resonating sensations in the middle of your head allows you to feel where the vibrations are when they're halfway to the front. You can pretend that you're out with your mates at the local pub and say, "Fights like that are not for me." It may feel like the sound is going straight up from the middle of your head. The space in the back of the mouth or throat is similar to the space you use when you speak, as opposed to the space you open to create full resonant tone for classical music. Pretend you're Crocodile Dundee or Hugh Jackman for a moment, and speak to your mates. Imitating this speaking voice may help you find the sensations in the middle of the head.
- **Front:** For this segment, you want to feel the sound in your face and not at all in the back of the head. Pretend you're a kid on the playground cheering with friends, or imitate the sounds of a boisterous and overbearing relative — you know, those relatives who make a lot of noise when they speak. They tend to shout even when you're standing next to them. You want that same kind of resonance for this exercise. Choose one of the previous examples and say, "Yeah, that's what I want." If you aren't sure whether you felt the vibrations in the front of your face, try all three again — back, middle and front — to feel the vibrations gradually moving forward as you explore all three segments of your head.

Track 54

After you try the three types of resonance in this exercise, listen to the examples on Track 54 to hear the sounds demonstrated for you. For belting, you want to use the front vibrations that you just explored.

Being bratty to feel resonance

To help you feel that forward resonance needed for belting, I want you to imitate a little kid who's about to tattle on his big brother or sister. You know that taunting, singsong sound, *nya-nya-nya-nya-nya.* Be a brat for a few minutes and find that tattletale sound — feel the vibrations as you make the sound. If you didn't feel the sensation in your face, try again and be even more of a brat. Let the bratty sound buzz in your face, but with no squeezing in your throat.

When the sound is right, you feel vibrations in the front of your face or just behind your face. You want the sound to be buzzing behind or beside your nose, but not in your nose. If you think it's too nasal, hold your nose and make the sound. The sound stops if it's "in your nose," but it continues buzzing if it's just behind your nose. If the vibration is in the front of your head or face, you're on the right track. The vibrations aren't in one single area; you may feel your whole face, especially your cheeks or forehead, vibrating. Some people like to call the area behind their face "the mask." If that's a term you're familiar with, you're trying to create tones that generate plenty of vibration in the mask.

Track 55

PLAY THIS

On Track 55, you can hear a female singer demonstrate the nya sound for you. The sound needs to really buzz in your face or behind your nose — not in your nose as in nasal, but behind your nose to take advantage of nasal resonance. When you find the nya sound, speak some text from a belting song in this same manner. As you make these sounds, keep plenty of breath moving so you don't push in your throat. The sound may not be your favorite in the beginning, but you may grow to like it.

Combining Resonance and Registration

To belt successfully, you want to use both high forward resonance and mixed registration. With mixed registration, you use some chest voice and some head voice. (Check out the mix description in the nearby sidebar.) If you've been practicing the exercises earlier in the chapter to help you with registration and you've explored some really forward resonance, you're ready to work on increasing your belt range. As you belt higher in pitch, the sound or resonance is going to roll higher in your head, similar to what you do as you're singing up the scale moving from middle voice into head voice. The difference is that you keep some chest voice instead of turning over into head voice as you ascend. You may feel the vibrations from the resonance climbing higher in your head, as if you have a ladder on your face that the vibrations of sound gradually climb.

Increasing your belt range

Some people think that you can belt only to a certain pitch because that's how high they can take their chest voice. You can read throughout this chapter that belting is a combination of forward resonance plus mixed registration. Because not every voice is the same, some singers have an easier time with belting and increasing their belt range, whereas other singers find it tricky.

Higher sopranos and tenors have an easier time belting and belting high in their range. Mezzos and baritones may struggle a little more to figure out their belt. You can read more information in Chapter 2 about voice types and their range. If you're a mezzo or baritone trying to increase your belt range, you want to work slowly and deliberately. Spend about a month working on the speaking voice exercises earlier in the chapter. Work for another month or so on the forward resonance. That forward resonance may be harder for you than for your soprano or tenor buddies. Your voice tends to be darker and heavier, so finding forward resonance is going to take you a while. Be patient. If you rush to increase your belt range, you may end up pushing and making a harsh sound. If you can find the forward high resonance, you'll understand the difference between when you're using too much weight and when it's just right so you can sing higher belt songs.

PLAY THIS

On Track 56, illustrated in Figure 13-1, the singer on this track sings a short belt exercise, "That Ain't It Man." You want to use your belt sound for this exercise. If you haven't explored the exercises earlier in the chapter, you may find this exercise hard. Go back and explore the bratty resonance exercise and mixed registration explanation in the sidebar "Introducing mix belt." Work on "That Ain't It Man" until you're comfortable singing it before moving on to track 57 just ahead. This exercise on Track 56 helps you use a chatty sound in a narrow range.

TRACK 56

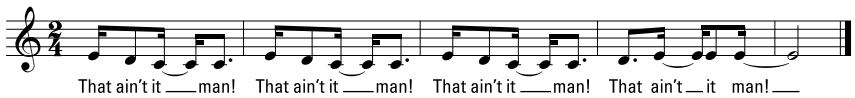


FIGURE 13-1: "That Ain't It Man."

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Belting up the scale

As you belt higher in pitch, you want to combine your high resonance and mixed registration. If you physically understand how to combine high forward resonance with mixed registration, then you can belt right up to the top of the staff. Try the next exercise to practice combining mixed registration and forward resonance to belt your way up the scale. It may seem like you're just talking on pitch higher and

higher up the scale. That's a good thing. Remember that belting is extended speech. If you use your speaking voice for this exercise, you're on the right track to becoming a proficient belter.

PLAY THIS

The exercise in Figure 13-2 allows you to climb the scale and feel that resonating ladder I talk about in the earlier section, "Combining Resonance and Registration." Think of speaking on pitch, using some chest voice no matter how high you go, and allow the resonance to climb higher as you ascend.

TRACK 57

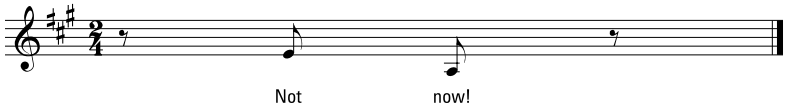


FIGURE 13-2: "Not Now."

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Advancing Your Belt

Belting is really fun but you have to get your body coordinated to make advanced belt sounds. The chatty sounds you explored earlier in the chapter help you figure out resonance and registration. Before continuing on to the exercises in this section, do the following:

- Review the information earlier in the chapter about exerting energy when you sing or speak. You want some serious energy moving when you sustain the belt sounds in these next exercises.
- Review the information about breathing (especially the exercises at the end of Chapter 4) that describe sustaining the breath. You also want really consistent breath control to help you sustain belt sounds.
- Review the exercise from "Moving Resonance to the Front," earlier in this chapter, to figure out how to find forward resonance. You can also review the mix exercises in Chapter 11 to move back and forth between a chest voice–dominated mix and a head voice–dominated mix. When you're confident that you understand mix and know the difference between a mix and a belt, practice rolling back and forth between the two. Advanced belting often requires you to move from a mix into a belt. The belt sound is going to use much more forward resonance than the mix, so you want to be confident that you can roll back and forth between the different uses of resonance.

Try the exercises ahead to explore more advanced belt sounds and sustained belt sounds.

Track 58

PLAY THIS

On Track 58, the singer sings a short belt song, "Take Shelter! I'm a Belter," that gives you an opportunity to take your belting skills a little further. Listen to the track a few times to get used to the sound. Be sure you're warmed up before you try singing this song.

Sustaining belt sounds

Developing your belt sound takes time and patience. If you've been working on the exercises throughout the chapter, you may be ready to explore sustaining belt sounds. To sustain a belt sound, you need a lot of physical exertion in your body. If you don't use physical exertion, you may end up pressing in your throat, and that's not good.

Belting requires a lot of effort, so you want the effort to come from your body, not your throat. Using physical exertion means moving energy in your body. Go back to the exercises earlier in this chapter that explore coordinating breath and energy (see the section "Using body energy to find clarity of tone"). Work on those suggestions and explore how to really use your entire body to make sound. Not only do you want this physical exertion when you sustain notes in your belt song, but you want to make sure that you're not pushing in your abs at the beginning of the phrase.

Review the exhalation exercises in Chapter 4. Using a hard push of your abs at the beginning of a phrase pushes out too much air. Your throat closes down to prevent all the air from blowing by, and you end up starting with a tight tone. Physical exertion isn't about pushing in; it's about opening your body or gradually letting the abs, ribs, and sides of your body move back in when you exhale.

PLAY THIS

Try the exercise shown in Figure 13-3 to explore the exertion required for sustaining belt sounds. You want to find the high resonance that you explored in earlier exercises and use some chest voice — but not pure chest voice. Review the mixed belt information if you aren't sure how to use some chest voice, but not 100 percent. The first word intentionally has a *TH* at the beginning. Allow your tongue to move forward for the *TH,* and allow the air to move over your tongue when you say the *TH.* This movement forward helps you release the back of the tongue and also propel the resonance forward. When you say that's the second time, you sustain it. You want to feel your body opening out — your sides, your ribs, your hips, your back — instead of pushing in. If you feel yourself pushing in, go back and cough or laugh to notice how your body moves out on the sides to create the sound. Then try the pattern again, opening your body to sustain *that's.*

TRACK 59

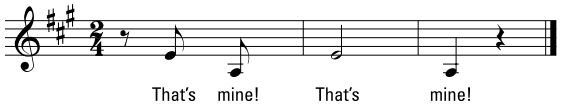


FIGURE 13-3: "That's Mine — That's Mine."

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Exploring different vowels

You may have noticed that the belt exercises in this chapter use the vowels ay (the a*y* sound as in *d*a*y*) and a (as in *cat*). Those two vowels help you find the forward resonance you need for belting. Of course, you have to sing more than those two vowels in belt songs, so you want to find the same resonance on other vowels. You can find that same resonance a couple of different ways:

- The first option is to modify the other vowels so they're similar to ay. This suggestion is good to try when you're first beginning to belt. Modifying the vowels means that you're trying to find the same resonance on all vowels that you got when you were singing the a*y* or "a". If the phrase you're about to sing is "I'm not at all in love," you want to pretend that the words look more like aaah'm naaat aaat aaaal aaaan laaaaav. That combination of letters makes no sense unless you understand that you're pretending that the vowels you're singing in that phrase use the vowel "a" as in cat or are really similar to the "a" vowel. When you find the same height of resonance that you had when singing the "a" vowel, you can sing the actual vowels within the words and keep that high resonance. If you find ay more helpful than the "a" vowel, pretend that the vowels in your phrase are all similar to ay.
- The second option to help you maintain high resonance on a variety of vowels is to speak the sound nya to feel the high resonance. You can go back to Track 55 to hear this sound demonstrated for you. When you feel the high resonance of nya, say the words of your song and try to keep the same height to the resonance. When you can speak the words and keep the high forward resonance, sing the words of your song and try to find the same height when you sing. If you're having trouble belting, you're likely having problems with the word right before that troublesome note. For example, if you sing the phrase "I'm not at all in love," you may have trouble with the word *all.* If you focus on getting the right resonant sound for the word *at,* you can maintain that same forward resonant sound on the word *all.* It's tempting to open the space in the back and allow the aw sound in the word all to fall back into a very open and head voice–dominated sound. Instead, you want to keep the sound in the front of your face. A visual that may help is pretending that you have a Jim Carey mask on your face that can expand as you belt higher. The mask is a visual of your face lifting up or expanding in the front of your face.

When you're more skilled at belting, you'll be able to sing the real vowels in your words without having to modify or change them. You still want the high resonance, but you'll be able to sing the real vowel in the word. For now, keep modifying until you're confident that the resonance is both high and forward. You'll also find later that you don't need to use the forward resonance all the time when you belt. You'll be able to roll the sound forward when it's appropriate. Listen to the belters in the later section, "Belters and Belt Songs You Should Hear," and listen to the different tone colors they use when they sing an entire song. They don't use the really forward sound all the time; they use it only when it's appropriate to the portion of the story or to help belt really high.

Track 60

On Track 60, the singer sings a short belt song for advanced belters called "Let's Celebrate." This is a more advanced belt song because the range is wider, the notes stay higher, and you have larger leaps. Continue working on the exercises in this chapter for belt strength and endurance. If you feel fatigued after singing this song, go back to the first belt song and practice it until you feel that your technique is solid. As you listen to the singer, notice how high and forward her resonance is, even when she changes vowels.

Belters and Belt Songs You Should Hear

Listening to some technically savvy belters can be helpful when you're figuring out how to make the sounds described in this chapter. In Appendix A, you can find some great suggestions of belt songs to try for yourself.

Male belters

For some skillful male belters, listen to

- Bruno Mars singing "Just The Way You Are" or "When I Was Your Man." In this one you can also hear his falsetto and mix along with belt.
- Elton John singing "Philadelphia Freedom" or "I Guess That's Why They Call It the Blues."
- John Legend singing "All of Me." He not only belts in this song but he shows off his falsetto.

- Jordan Fisher singing "All About Us." He uses contrasts in resonance throughout the song and varies the balance of registers using heavy chest voice juxtaposed with light mix sounds.
- Rod Stewart singing "Tonight's the Night" or "Do Ya Think I'm Sexy."

You may not think of those guys as belters, but they're using the same qualities you explore in this chapter.

Female belters

For female belters, listen to these ladies:

- Kristin Chenoweth singing "My New Philosophy" from *You're A Good Man Charlie Brown.* Listen for the height in the resonance in her speaking sounds and belt.
- Solea Pfeiffer singing "Astonishing" from *Little Women* where she moves from her head voice–dominated mix and on to a belt.
- Sutton Foster singing "Show Off" from *The Drowsy Chaperone.* Listen for the chatty speaking tones in the beginning that blend right into her belt all while dancing.
- Beyoncé singing "Listen" from *Dreamgirls.* Note how she varies the amount of chest voice she uses and how the tone narrows in the higher belt, making it easier for her to sing the notes.
- Jennifer Hudson singing *Respect*. She has a huge chest voice, but listen as she chooses how much weight she puts into the tone. It varies from heavier chest voice sound to a brilliant ping on the top notes.

Belt songs

You may notice that belt songs tend to start out in a mix and then gradually move into a belt. Some songs stay in the belt sound the whole time, but not all do.

Consider these examples of songs that are commonly belted for the entire song:

- "Girls Just Want to Have Fun," as sung by Cyndi Lauper
- "Joy to the World," as sung by Three Dog Night
- "Some People" from *Gypsy* as sung by Patti LuPone
- "You Can't Get a Man with a Gun," from *Annie Get Your Gun* as sung by Ethel Merman

To compare belters and the vocal journey they create, listen to several singers singing the same song. For the female belters, listen to "Memory" from *Cats.* All the singers use mix and belt within the song. Start with Barbra Streisand to hear a lot of head voice in her mix and even when she belts there is a lot of head voice in the sound. Listen to Elaine Page beautifully use her mix and belt in the London Original Cast recording. Leona Lewis sings it for the Broadway cast and begins with a head voice–dominated sound, uses chest voice on the low notes, and then uses forward resonance for the high belt. Jennifer Hudson sings it with panache in the movie version. Such diverse sounds by these artists singing the same song.

IS BELT THE SAME IN ALL STYLES OF MUSIC?

Students often ask whether belt is the same in all styles of music. That's a very good question. The answer: Some differences do exist, which I discuss here:

- **Rock:** For rock songs and a rock belt, the resonance is forward and almost harsh. You get that harsh rock belt by using straight tone, keeping the screaming sounds that rockers make in the front of your face and not letting the sound spread and press in your throat, and sliding or falling off the last note of a phrase instead of holding it out. Normally, when you sustain a note in most styles of music, you use vibrato. For a rock belt, you don't use much, if any, vibrato.
- **Pop:** A pop belt is similar to the belt sounds that you explore in this chapter. Early pop music, called *doo-wop,* uses a lighter belt sound compared to more contemporary pop music.
- **Musical theater:** For musical theater, the belt changes in contemporary material. The more traditional musical theater songs have high belt notes — but not as high as some of the newer shows, which require that females belt to the top of the staff (normally head voice territory). You have to be a pretty skilled belter to use this kind of sound on a daily basis in a show. The newer musical theater shows are also influenced by other styles, such as rock and pop.
- **R&B:** For R&B, singers often use more chest voice in their belt. If you choose to use a heavier chest voice sound in your belt, try to use it only in some parts of the song, not in the whole song. Varying the amount of weight keeps you from getting as tired as when you use a heavy chest voice throughout the song, and you can keep the balance of registration so that all parts of the voice stay equally strong.
- **Country:** For country, singers use a lot of twang in their belt, from a really high speaking voice sound that has forward resonance. Modern country music is similar to pop music, and the sounds the singers make also are quite similar. Both styles interchange the belt and mix throughout songs.

Men, you can find contrast by listening to different male singers singing "Bring Him Home" from *Les Misérables.* Listen to Colm Wilkinson and Alfie Boe for brilliant examples of falsetto, mix, and belt in the same song. Hugh Jackman uses a heavier chest voice and forward resonance in the movie version, whereas Lawrence Brownlee brings nuances of a classical sound to his rendition by using consistent vibrato and tone that resonates more in his mouth and throat. Ramin Karimloo sings with a lot of head voice in the mix, uses straight tone and vibrato, and transitions into more chest voice as the song progresses. These great performers demonstrate diverse sounds that create a journey in a song.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Training for different musical styles
- Beginning your drills at any age
- Determining whether to train with a choir

Chapter 14
Training for Singing

The training requirements for singers can be confusing. Every singer needs a basic healthy technique, but knowing what to do with that technique depends on what kind of music you want to sing. In this chapter, you find out what it takes to sing your favorite style of music, when to begin that training, and whether singing in the choir offers the right kind of training for you.

Training for singing means developing singing technique. The information about technique throughout the book is designed for all singers, not just one type of singer or style of material. So explore the rest of the book for foundational information, and read on to understand what specifics are required for different styles of music. This chapter can help you identify what to polish in your practice sessions.

Defining Training Requirements

No matter what type of music you want to sing, you need a healthy technique for a long life of singing. If you're interested in singing a specific type of music but you're not sure what it takes to sing those songs, check out what kind of sound you should be shooting for. (I also provide a list of talented singers in each genre.)

Crooning as a country singer

Country music has the good ol' boy songs about whiskey and women, as well as heartfelt ballads about lost love. The artists put on quite a show at their performances and use a variety of sounds when they sing. The biggest common denominator in country music is the story being told. It describes how the singer feels, in a sound that's similar to a speaking voice. Check out the following:

- **Sound:** Country music is slowly and surely becoming more similar to pop music. For now, you can assume that country music focuses on sounding like a real person and telling a story with simplicity in the voice. Generally, country singers use a microphone, so they don't need to carry the hall like classical singers. Country music also has more twang than you hear in the opera house. Singers create the song from their speaking voice — they think of singing as an extension of speaking. For this reason, they don't need wide, open spaces (in their mouth and throat) and round, rich tones like classical singers. You may have this ability, but you probably won't use it when you sing country.
- **Healthy technique:** You don't want to sound cultured when singing vowels in country songs. (See Chapter 8 for more on pronouncing vowels.) You want to be specific with your articulation so that your audience can understand you, but you don't want to sound like you're in class with Professor Higgins in *My Fair Lady.* Figuring out how to create healthy belt (see Chapter 13) is also a good idea, because many singers use a beltlike quality when singing their songs. Knowing the difference between a belt and heavy chest voice helps you keep your voice in balance.
- **Naming names:** Clint Black, Reba McEntire, Charley Pride, Darius Rucker, and Trisha Yearwood.

Jazzing it up

Familiar jazz songs are sometimes arrangements of songs from other styles of music. When jazz singers create an arrangement of a musical theater standard, they usually change the notes and rhythms from the original music. Jazz singers create their style with rhythmic flexibility, and the singer and pianist don't always have to be together note for note (called *back phrasing*). Check out the following for more details:

- **Sound:** The world of jazz is similar to the other contemporary fields in that the singers have to make a variety of sounds. The sounds in jazz are often more about using the voice like a musical instrument than making big vocal sounds like you hear at the opera. The singer often sings syllables or rhythmic sounds in place of words.

- **Healthy technique:** Jazz singers need to have a good ear, because their music is often improvised and changes with each nightly performance. The singer also has to know how to scat, which is using doo-wop kinds of syllables, while singing a variety of notes that may or may not be written on a page of music. The jazz singer needs a great sense of rhythm, because the musical instruments are often playing background music while the singer offers their own melody line.
- **Naming names:** Some jazz singers who apply great jazz technique include Michael Bublé, Harry Connick Jr., Ella Fitzgerald, Norah Jones, Diana Krall, and Bobby McFerrin.

Making your mark in musical theater

Unlike the opera, the musical theater production is about the story first. Singing is high on the list of priorities, but it doesn't rank first. Musical theater performers aren't cast just because they sing well (although singing ability does count!); they're cast because they look the part, can dance or move well, and can both act and sing. Musical theater singers also need to know how to make a variety of sounds. Here's more about musical theater:

- **Sound:** With musical theater repertoire, you want the sound to be conversational, not oversung. The simplicity of the voice allows the singer to portray the text, which is most important. Musical theater singers do have to make beautiful sounds, but the sound should reinforce the text. Many musical theater productions use microphones, and singers need to understand how to adjust their technique when using a hand-held mic or wearing a body mic. Those adjustments include not punching consonants (such as the T), because doing so results in a popping sound, and trusting your feeling while you're singing instead of relying on the sound to come back from the monitors or echo in the theater.
- **Healthy technique:** A healthy musical theater technique involves making the beautiful open, round sounds called *legit* (open space and round head voice–dominated sound). This technique is similar to the opera singer's, but it also includes belt. Belting is making sounds like Ethel Merman, Kristin Chenoweth, and Idina Menzel. The sound is brassier, more forward, sometimes nasal, and similar to a high chest voice. You make this sound by working to combine the sounds of your speaking voice and singing voice. See Chapter 13 for help with your belt. Musical theater productions tend to be

scheduled close together, and performers need solid technique to handle back-to-back performances. On Broadway, performers often do eight shows per week. Performing that much sounds like fun, but it requires stamina and skillful technique.

- **Naming names:** Sutton Foster, Joel Grey, Audra McDonald, Idina Menzel, Brian Stokes Mitchell, and Gwen Verdon.

Performing pop-rock

The lines in the music industry are starting to blur, and rock music is connected with pop. The styles are similar vocally, both use a wide range, more belt than head voice, and tone that ranges from funky to pretty. Rock singers have heavy guitars backing them up and make a variety of sounds, from screams to moans. Both types of singers need to know how to keep their singing voices healthy for their demanding music. Healthy technique means making sure that your voice will last over time. Check out the following for more about pop-rock:

- **Sound:** Because you have a microphone, you don't need the same kind of intensity and clarity when singing pop-rock as you do when singing opera. Having a fuzzy tone is okay, as long as that's your choice. Your microphone can help carry the sound if your tone isn't clear and focused, but you have to have some clarity to amplify. Because the lines and phrases may not be as long and drawn out in this repertoire, you also don't need the intensity of long, legato lines, as opera singers do.

  TECHNICAL STUFF

  The latest technology in sound systems can instantly correct a singer's wayward pitch. Newer karaoke machines and microphones use this technology, as do some famous singers. They don't want you to know that their mic is correcting their pitch, but it's true. A live performance of someone singing without the aid of pitch-correction technology shows imperfections or minor fluctuations, whereas a studio recording is perfectly mixed to add reverb to simulate resonance and edit out any minor slips of tone. You want solid technique so that you sound great without the aid of pitch correction.

  Choosing to delay the onset of the vibrato is also perfectly legal. You can sing with a straight tone and then allow the vibrato to happen later or at the end of the phrase. As you ascend in pitch, you can allow the sound to flip into another register or yodel. You can also allow the sound to get lighter as you ascend instead of growing stronger, as you may in opera or musical theater. Using a mix or a stronger middle voice sound is a choice that female singers make; guys can choose whether to use falsetto or head voice. (Chapter 11 tells you more about voice sounds, including head voice, falsetto, and middle voice.) You may not need a wide space in your mouth and throat as you do with other styles of music, such as classical music.

- **Healthy technique:** When singing pop-rock music, you want a basic, solid, healthy technique, but your abilities need to blossom when it comes time to strut your stuff onstage. Pop singers are expected to dance and sing, so you need to be in shape (or be famous enough that you can choose not to dance). Try dancing and singing along with your favorite video, and you find that it takes skill to sing well when you're dancing full out. Because the sounds rock singers make are often scratchy and close to screaming (think Meatloaf), rock singers need to be aware of how to keep making the funky sounds that fans adore without causing damage to their voice. Screaming too much for too long in concerts can tax the voice and cause fatigue, strain, and tone changes. To prevent damage, singers can use resonance to create sounds that they normally make by screaming. See Chapter 7 for an explanation of resonance, and see Chapter 13 for suggestions on working with resonance in the speaking voice and belt.
- **Naming names:** Janet Jackson, Michael Jackson, Elton John, Kesha, Katy Perry, Rod Stewart, Donna Summer, Tina Turner, and Ann Wilson.

Opting for opera

If you're interested in training to sing opera, you have plenty of territory to cover. Training for opera usually requires a long process of lessons or study, which isn't necessarily bad. Studying singing for a lengthy period isn't a punishment: It gives you the opportunity to master your voice. For many singers, the long process of studying also means starting early in life. Review the following list to see what you may experience as you train for opera. Check out the following for more on opera:

- **Sound:** Singing opera requires you to sing long phrases, sing loud enough to be heard over an orchestra in large halls, and sing material that's musically demanding. For opera, the performance is about the sounds the singer makes. The sounds are consistent and not as varied as they are in jazz, musical theater, and pop-rock.
- **Healthy technique:** When singing opera, the focus of the performance is on the singing technique. Opera technique is *bel canto* technique, which literally means beautiful singing; as you may expect, the space in your mouth and throat needs to be wide open. Endurance for long operas is an issue for singers. You want to practice enough that you can sing well for the length of the opera, which can be two to four hours.

- **Language:** Opera singers often sing in Italian, French, German, or Russian. You don't have to be fluent in all these languages, but you want to be familiar enough with them that you can easily sing and sound like you're fluent in them. You can work with a teacher or coach when training for each aria or opera, or you can take classes (called *diction classes*) to help you see the words and pronounce them correctly. You also want to be able to translate what your scene partner says so you know the difference between "I love you" and "I love those satin slippers." You can't react appropriately if you don't know what your scene partner said.
- **Naming names:** Some familiar names in the opera world include Marian Anderson, Olga Borodina, Renée Fleming, Juan Diego Flórez, Jessye Norman, Eric Owens, René Pape, and George Shirley.

Showing your range with R&B

The sounds of the R&B singer vary from agile riffs to high belt. Finding a voice teacher willing to work technique and apply it to this material is tricky. Most teachers insist on working classical or musical theater material to build technique. The basic technical skills the R&B singer needs are the same as any other style: solid alignment, great breathing coordination, facile articulation, and balanced registration. These skills are all addressed throughout this book. If these skills are solid, the R&B artist can seek a coach to help polish their style and material. Check out the following:

- **Sound:** The R&B singer uses vibrato on the sustained tones in ballads but a lot of phrases are conversational and don't require vibrato. The lyrics are very important and the sounds of the voice need to vary to reflect the message. R&B singers use a microphone, so projecting the tone isn't as crucial as in the opera.
- **Healthy technique:** R&B singers have to be versatile artists. An agile technique is a must to sing riffs and belt into the top part of the range. It's tempting to use full chest voice to sing this style, but balancing the weight of chest voice is crucial for your long-term vocal health. See Chapters 11 and 13 for information about balancing the weight of chest voice. The ability to be understood without overarticulating is also crucial to the fast-paced stories in R&B songs.
- **Naming names:** Beyoncé, Mary J. Blige, Maxwell, Lionel Richie, Rihanna, and Usher.

Training to Sing at Any Age

If you can speak, you can sing — and you can enjoy singing no matter what your age. I've had students in their 80s take classes, and they loved it. As long as you're ready for the work it takes to develop a healthy technique, you're never too old to begin singing. However, to develop and foster a healthy singing technique, understanding how your voice may change with age is essential. Keep reading to find out the best way to train young singers (under the age of 12) and teenagers, and get some insight into a few voice changes that you may encounter at the different stages in life.

Recognizing differences between young singers and teens

Music preference may be the most obvious difference you encounter between a young singer and a teenager, but other differences exist. Young singers and teenagers are different in the following ways:

- **Range:** Young singers have a limited range; they need songs with a narrow range that focus on subjects they enjoy. Teenagers need music that's a little more hip and cool, yet still not incredibly taxing vocally, because their voices are still developing. For teenage males who've recently experienced some voice changes, lower sounds may be new and temporarily unreliable. A young singer probably has a range of fewer than 8 notes, and a teenager likely has a range of between 8 and 16 notes.
- **Training:** Most young singers can benefit from singing in a choir or joining a group singing class just to explore music. If your youngster joins a choir or group singing class, make sure that the class focuses on sounds appropriate for his or her age. Really young singers often can't make much sound when they sing because their larynx is still growing and developing. However, plenty of sound is usually the first thing a novice director asks for. If your child ends up pushing or is really tired after rehearsals, explore other choirs or classes that work at a more appropriate level.

REMEMBER

Many young singers want to sound just like the latest pop star. They don't really realize that the pop star has all kinds of equipment and sound engineers helping make the sounds. The more you can expose your young singer to singers of the same age, the better. Take young singers to elementary-school music concerts or junior-high concerts so that they can hear their peers sing live and know what voices their age sound like.

Some teenagers with mature voices are ready for lessons and training. As long as the teacher is quite good with adolescents, lessons can be beneficial. If the teacher doesn't allow the students to choose any songs, or if the students aren't allowed to pick anything fun to sing, they may lose interest. Watch for consistent progress. You don't have to know a lot about singing to help your child. Keep asking questions, as you probably do about any other subject you aren't familiar with, and listen to your child talk about the songs (not wanting to practice is a good sign the teenager doesn't like the music) and enthusiasm for the next lesson.

TIP

Some teenagers are more ready to take direction and constructive criticism than other teenagers are. If your child's ego is still a bit delicate, you want to hire a teacher who can make positive changes in the teen's voice with humor and enthusiasm.

Developing long-term technique in teenagers

Most teenagers want to know only what they can do today to sound fabulous. They may not know the long-term benefits of healthy technique, and they may not have the patience to listen. However, using healthy technique and training their ears for singing is important for maintaining long-term technique.

Pushing the voice too far, too fast doesn't help in the long term. This concept is important for both parents and teachers to know. By pushing the voice, I mean making big sounds, such as singing material that requires a big sound before teenagers have the technical skill to support the sound. Working on chatty sounds is fine at a young age, but making pressed or pushed sounds may make producing healthy sounds more difficult later.

Having a healthy technique means singing within your range. An adult may have a wide range, but a 13-year-old may have only an octave range (see Chapter 1), which is about eight notes. Range develops with time, and pushing the singer higher offers no benefit in the long run. When the voice is ready, the singer can make huge sounds for the rest of his life. Make sure that your young teenager is aware of the advantages of using breath and resonance to help them find a variety of sounds. Let them know that they can shoot for the big guns later.

Something any singer, especially young singers, can work on to boost long-term musical life is developing their ear. Matching pitch is a skill you can read about in Chapter 4. If the youngster can match pitch but also sing a series of pitches after hearing them for the first time, they're more likely to quickly conquer new songs. Ear training can also benefit singers who end up in the choir. Singing the top

soprano part may be easy because it's on the top, but those middle parts can be tricky to hear. If the youngster already has exposure to intervals and chords, the middle part — or any part — can be a snap.

Understanding that voices change with age

All voices change with age, whether you sing or not. That's why, on the phone, you can easily tell whether you're speaking with a younger or older person. The following list describes a few types of voice changes that may affect singing and offers tips on how to work around them.

- **Puberty:** Letting young men who are going through puberty sing is okay. But because you really can't predict what their voice is going to do, puberty isn't a good time for them to make a big debut. Being in an all-male choir at that age can give the singer comfort because he knows that the rest of the guys are going through the same thing. Allow his voice to wriggle and crack, and know that it's going to become much more steady in time. The female voice also changes during puberty, but the change isn't as extreme.
- **Menstrual cycle:** One big physical aspect that affects the female voice after puberty is the menstrual cycle. Not all women experience the same symptoms during their menstrual cycle. Some experience a sluggish feeling, as if the voice is really tired or the cords are swollen. Some experience difficulty with high notes or produce low notes that feel really heavy. Other singers experience no change whatsoever.

  TIP

  Track your cycle so that you know the symptoms you experience right before, during, and after your cycle. You may find that knowing the timing of your cycle allows you to plan the concert or audition on just the right day of the month.
- **Menopause:** After menopause, women may experience a little more stiffness in their singing. This stiffness is the result of a loss of elasticity in their muscles after estrogen production slows. Menopausal women may be able to keep their voices flexible with regular workouts. Continuing to practice specific exercises for different areas of the voice increases the chance of maintaining stamina in each particular area.
- **Aging:** One common occurrence with aging is the wobble. You may have heard older singers' voices wobble when they sing. The wobble is a result of a lack of muscle toning, specifically in the singing muscles. Working your singing muscles on a regular basis can help keep that wobble at bay. Getting lax with your breath is another common factor that may contribute to a wobble in your singing. If your breath backs off, your voice is more likely to flounder or wobble. A steady flow of air helps keep the rate of the vibrato steady. You can also continue working on exercises that move back and forth from straight tone to vibrato, to help maintain your ability to support the vibrato.

REMEMBER

Vibrato and a wobble aren't the same. *Vibrato* is the normal undulation of pitch when you sing. You may feel the slight shaking feeling in your throat as the vibrato happens, and that's normal. *Wobble* happens when the vibrato rate is much slower than normal vibrato, which is about five to eight pulses per second. See Chapter 6 for exercises that explore vibrato.

Training with a Choir

As an individual singer, you want to stand out and be unique. You want your voice to carry the hall or resound so every person in the audience hears you. Because having a resonant sound that projects is desirable in solo singing, you may want to focus your attention on projecting your voice. However, when singing with a choir, you may find the director holding their hand in front of your face to get you to sing more quietly and blend in with others.

In this section, I discuss the benefits of training with a choir. I also tell you about the differences between singing as a soloist and singing in the choir. (If you decide to sing as a soloist instead of with a choir, check out Chapter 15 to find the right voice teacher for you.)

Enjoying the benefits of singing in the choir

Many people thoroughly enjoy being in a choir. You get a chance to sing different kinds of music, and you get to be around others who share your interest in music. Making music with a group of people may give you just the balance you need between practicing alone at home and singing with a group.

The following list details some of the benefits you gain from singing with a choir.

- **You discover how to listen carefully.** When singing in a choir, you have to listen so that your voice blends with the voice of the person next to you, as well as with the sounds of the particular type of song you're singing. If the music requires a specific style of singing, you have to work to make sure that you're making the appropriate sound with healthy technique.
- **You discover how to monitor your sound based on how it feels.** If you can't hear your voice standing out, you have to rely on the feeling to determine whether your technique is still in good shape. Monitoring how your voice feels is a good idea because each room is different — you can't rely on the sound bouncing back to you.

TIP

Sometimes choral singers cup their hand around their ear to hear their voice. You can try using this technique to direct the sound of your voice back to your ears. Just make sure that the person next to you doesn't think that you're trying to block out the sound of their voice.

- **You get an opportunity to work on your ear.** Picking out your part when the other voices of the choir are surrounding you is a good workout for your ear. Solo singers may not have someone else singing different notes in their ear. The choral singer may be mixed up with other voices singing other parts and may have to rely on their ability to read music or really listen for their note in a chord.
- **You get a chance to work on your social skills.** In choirs, you often find people who like similar music or are inspired by beautiful music. You may feel right at home around people with similar interests, which can boost your sense of belonging.
- **You get to travel with the choir.** You may have to raise money to go on trips, but traveling with fellow musicians who enjoy making music in beautiful concert halls can make it worth your while. Teenagers and young singers often enjoy going on the road with the choir because they get to travel around doing what they enjoy: singing with their peers.
- **You can work on reducing your performance anxiety by singing with a group.** Onstage with your peers, you may find that your anxieties about performing dissolve. If you feel comfortable within a group, you may be able to transfer that comfort level to your solo singing. If you suffer from anxiety about singing in public, slowly work your way from singing in the choir to auditioning for one of the solos with the choir.

The challenge and joy of singing in a group may be just the lift you need at the end of a long week of work. Singing is a wonderful release and opportunity to express your thoughts and feelings through music and singing. Joining a choir may give you that regular opportunity to enjoy singing if you just don't have the time to practice on your own.

Singing in the choir versus going solo

Depending on how you want to explore your own singing voice, singing with a choir may or may not be for you. Because the choral singer has different needs,

before you join a choir, you may want to explore the differences between training with a choir and going solo:

- **You may frequently be asked to sing without vibrato when singing with a choir; going solo, you often sing with vibrato.** If you can make the change in the sound without pressure, singing without vibrato need not be a problem. The sound without vibrato can be free and loose and supported. (See Chapter 6 for an exercise that helps you to move between straight tone and vibrato.)
- **You need to find a part that works for your voice and for the choir director; going solo, you can sing songs within your range.** The notes may stay pretty high or low when you sing certain parts in the choir. If you're a low female voice, you may even be asked to sing with the tenors. Good musicians who sight read well may also be asked to sing a particular part to help the choir even though it may not be appropriate for their voice. If you feel tired after singing, you may want to ask whether you can switch to a different part or ask the director for advice on how to prevent fatigue.
- **You may be asked to sing quite loudly in the choir if few people are on your part.** Use this opportunity to rely on your knowledge of resonance so that you don't push too hard. If you find yourself tired after singing loudly, you need to take it easy for a while during the rehearsal so you can rest up a bit, or talk with the choir director about how your voice feels after rehearsal. Singing alone means that you can work at any volume, without worrying about having to lead others with your voice.
- **You may be asked to stand for long periods of time when singing in a choir; while rehearsing by yourself, you can rest whenever you need to and give your legs a break.** Having to stand for a rehearsal can provide a good opportunity to practice standing with your weight evenly distributed on both legs. If you find this tiring, explore your options with the director.
- **You need to be aware of your facial expressions when moving back and forth from choir to soloist.** Sometimes choir directors tell you to raise your eyebrows or smile to keep the pitch steady. You can do this as long as you know that, when you sing alone, you need to put your eyebrows back down. You can keep the pitch steady by keeping your breath consistent and by making sure that your vowels are precise. Keeping your breath moving at a steady rate and singing precise vowel sounds is easier than trying to move each pitch up or down. The smile can also be deadly to a soloist: Smiles don't work for sad songs when you're a soloist. The smile also can cause tension inside your mouth when you try to open the back space (the *space* in the back of your mouth and throat). Find enjoyment in singing from the joy inside your body, and let it reflect on your face without the tension of a frozen smile.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Deciding what you want from lessons
- Understanding common policies of voice teachers
- Interviewing a potential teacher with specific questions

Chapter 15
Finding the Right Voice Teacher

Finding the person who's just the right voice teacher for you can be exciting. All kinds of voice teachers are waiting to help you develop your singing technique, but you may have no idea how to select a voice teacher or what to expect from the lesson itself. No matter what your level of understanding is, this chapter gives you insight and advice on selecting a voice teacher. This chapter also helps you know what to expect from the voice teacher, the lesson, and yourself.

Searching for the Best Voice Teacher

Regardless of your level of singing, if you want to improve your singing by taking voice lessons, you need to do your homework to find the one who best suits your needs. I provide you with some ways to find a voice teacher, as well as some questions to ask both yourself and the prospective teacher before you even step into the studio.

Finding a prospective voice teacher

You can track down a voice teacher in many ways. The following list makes finding a good teacher simple:

- **Get recommendations from friends who take voice lessons.** Keeping in mind that no teacher is perfect, ask your friends what they like and don't like about the teacher. Compare their preferences with your own.
- **Ask for suggestions at the local music store.** The store may even have someone on staff who can work with you. If not, the staff is probably familiar with at least a few local voice teachers.
- **Call the music school at the college nearest you.** Many graduate students make great voice teachers. They're often in the heat of their training and want to share all the juicy information they've gleaned. They may not have years of teaching under their belt, but that may work well for you: The two of you can explore singing together. Before you contact the person, have your list of questions ready.
- **Search online.** You can also find loads of ads online for voice teachers online. Most of them post videos on their website or on social media of one of their lessons. Type words such as "voice teachers near me" or "online voice lessons" in your search engine.

TIP

If possible, get input from current or former students about a particular teacher before you make contact. Although no teacher is perfect for everyone, if you hear one bad review after another, heed the warning that this teacher probably isn't the best choice.

Identifying what you want

You can't get far choosing a voice teacher if you can't identify what you want out of your lessons. You may have questions for prospective voice teachers, and they may also have some for you. To be prepared, consider the following questions before you begin chatting with prospective teachers:

- **What exactly do you want from lessons?** If you want to improve your technique, sing higher notes, hold phrases longer, or make yourself understood, discuss these goals with your prospective voice teacher. Your prospective voice teacher can tell you what they focus on and how a lesson may be structured around your goals, and you can see whether that fits your wants and needs.

- **Are you doing this for fun or are you interested in developing a career or exploring some major singing?** If you're looking for a singing career, your teacher may move you through your lessons at a faster pace and make more demands on your practicing. On the other hand, if you're taking lessons for fun, your prospective teacher may assign you different kinds of songs or not worry so much about the business aspects of singing. You may be interested in being pushed a bit harder, even if you're singing just for fun, and you want to be sure that the voice teacher is willing to adjust the pace to meet your needs.
- **How much time do you want to spend practicing?** If you're really busy and can't spend much time practicing, discuss this availability with your prospective voice teacher. Find out whether they're flexible enough to provide lessons every other week to give you enough time to practice between lessons.
- **What do you want to sing?** Check out Chapter 16 if you aren't sure about your options. When you know what you want to sing, talk with the teacher to see whether they teach that style of music. Some teachers teach only classical music and prefer that their students not sing pop music or jazz. Working on classical music has great benefits, but that may not be your cup of tea.

Interviewing a prospective teacher

Finding out basic information about a prospective voice teacher, such as qualifications and costs, is just as important as identifying what you want from a voice teacher.

REMEMBER

Really good voice teachers are probably busy and quite booked with students. They may not have time to answer all your questions. If that's the case, you may want to try a few lessons and find out the answers during that time. Either way can work quite well.

WARNING

If you contact a teacher and start quizzing them as if they're being audited, you may not get a good response. Treat the topics in upcoming sections as suggestions for steering the conversation to get the answers you need. After all this questioning, if you get a good feeling about the teacher, give it a try.

Reviewing your budget so you know how much you can spend on lessons is a great first step. You don't want to get stuck adding up costs at the last minute only to find out that you can't afford lessons with a particular teacher. The following sections include questions to help you get a grasp on how much money you're gonna have to fork over. In addition, I tell you how to get some answers about a prospective voice teacher's background.

Experience

One of the first questions you want to ask a prospective teacher is "How many years have you been teaching?" You want to find out whether this person has been teaching more than just a few years. But don't automatically assume that you don't want to work with a teacher who's just getting started. Consider the following:

- Some brand-new teachers are really great because they've recently had so many lessons themselves. A newer teacher probably charges less than someone with more experience and may have more options for lesson times or may be more open to working on contemporary music, such as pop or rock.
- A more experienced teacher may know how to address the type of vocal problems you want to focus on. They may also have years of experience explaining how to do something and may have a variety of ways to explain the technique so you're sure to understand. If the prospective teacher has been around for a while, you're also more likely to find some current or former students who can tell you about their strengths.

  If you have some serious vocal health problems, such as nodes or severe acid reflux (see Chapter 23), I recommend finding an experienced teacher who is familiar with rehabilitating voices.

TIP

TIP

Many teachers offer group singing classes and the music department at the local college may offer singing classes called Class Voice. Taking a group class might be the perfect fit for you.

Education

Be sure to ask where the teacher studied or got their singing education. You want a voice teacher who's had years of performance experience or years of lessons or training in a program that focuses on the singing voice. That doesn't mean the teacher has to have a degree from an Ivy League school to be a good teacher. They just need to know a great deal about singing and know how to pass on the knowledge of singing to their students.

If you're interested in singing classical music or choral music in other languages, find out during your conversation whether this teacher has knowledge of foreign languages. You can discover this answer by asking what kind of songs the students sing.

Choir directors and piano teachers commonly also teach voice. As long as they know quite a bit about how the voice works and how to help when something goes wrong, they're worth a try. If you do take lessons from the choir director, find out

how much of their training was about individual singing. Many degree programs allow choral directors to graduate without any knowledge of how the voice actually works. They spend many hours coaching choirs to make lovely sounds, but how to make those sounds is important for voice lessons.

Music styles

Find out whether the teacher focuses on different styles of music. For example, does the teacher understand belting and how to teach it for musical theater? You want to find out whether the teacher is interested in the same kind of music you enjoy. If they only assign songs and don't allow the student to choose, think about how you feel about their preferred style of music before you commit. If you need help with a specific type of voice, such as a countertenor (see Chapter 2), or if you want specific kinds of help with styles of singing, such as jazz, pop, or belting, make sure that the prospective teacher can work with your voice type or the particular style of singing you're interested in pursuing.

Accompaniment

The voice teacher usually plays during the first part of the lesson when you work on technique but may not play well enough to tackle the difficult accompaniment in your song. Many voice teachers who don't play the piano well hire a pianist to accompany their students. You need to find out whether the cost for this extra person is already figured into the cost of your lesson.

Many teachers use accompaniment recordings called *tracks* for the students to sing along with — that's most likely the option for online lessons. Your teacher also may have a keyboard with songs already programmed into it. You may also consider finding a rehearsal pianist to record songs for you so that you can take a recording to your lessons and sing along. Check out Chapter 16 for information about finding recordings of your song.

Location

Where the teacher conducts lessons is another consideration. The teacher may hold lessons at home, at a studio, at a school, or even at your home.

If the teacher is willing to come to your home, that certainly may be your most convenient option. However, keep in mind that you may have to pay more for this convenience (see the next section).

Just as important, you need to know where the teacher's students perform. The teacher may tell you how many of their students are performing in local productions or other local venues. Asking this question gives you an idea of how familiar

the teacher is with local performing venues, and you'll get some idea about the variety of students within the studio.

Cost

The cost of voice lessons varies depending on location. The price of voice lessons in New York City or San Francisco may cost more than in a small town in the Midwest. You may also want to ask the teacher whether you can opt for a half-hour lesson (or an hour lesson every other week), if that fits your budget better. Many voice teachers advertise on their own website or on sites that advertise voice lessons, and most include the price per hour for lessons. You can search online to get an idea of what's a common price range for your area.

If you're a beginner, you may prefer taking a half-hour lesson anyway. Your muscles are just figuring out what to do, and your voice and brain may be quite tired after a half hour of work. When your skills improve, you can increase the time.

The fame of the voice teacher can also affect the cost. Voice teachers who've had successful performance careers or famous students charge more than teachers just starting out. The famous teacher may be able to help you with contacts in the business as your technique advances, but high prices don't guarantee better results or a better teacher. You have to try some lessons to know whether it works for you.

REMEMBER

The price of lessons doesn't guarantee the best or worst teacher. You may find a young teacher just starting out who has terrific rates but doesn't know anything yet about teaching. The famous teacher who charges more than your rent may not be the right teacher for you, either, if you resent having to shell out the dough for lessons. Shop around and ask plenty of questions.

Payment policy

Ask about the teacher's payment policy. If you agree to set a specific lesson time each week with a teacher, the teacher may require that you pay in advance. This policy is common with teachers who have large studios. Other teachers may allow you to set up a lesson whenever you find enough money. Ask about scheduling during your initial conversation so that you don't encounter any surprises.

You also want to ask about the method of payment. Many teachers accept multiple types of payment from credit cards, check, cash, or via an online bank app like Zelle or Venmo. If you pay in advance, keep track of the number of lessons. Most teachers are good about keeping up with lessons, but you want to know when that next payment is due.

Cancellation policy

You need to know the cancellation policy. You don't want to be surprised when you call in sick and the teacher requires you to pay for the missed lesson. Most teachers require that you give 24 hours' notice if you need to cancel a lesson. Other teachers require that you make up a lesson within a certain period of time to avoid being penalized. Be sure to ask so that you know going in what your options are if you need to cancel.

Knowing What to Expect from a Teacher

A voice lesson is usually a time when you're alone with one person, so you want to feel comfortable and also feel positive about the work you're doing on your voice. To evaluate how well you work with your teacher, you need to know what you can expect, which the following sections discuss.

REMEMBER

You may need three to six months to really grasp the concepts in voice lessons and hear changes in your voice. You want to hear changes within the first month, but the big concepts and tough technical exercises may take a while to gel. Enjoy each lesson with the understanding that you're on a journey that you can't make in one day.

Feeling good when you leave the lesson

Feeling good about your lesson is a two-way road. The purpose of a lesson is to gain more information about singing, so you want your teacher to focus on the work. However, you need to able to shoulder criticism well.

During a voice lesson, you're doing plenty of singing, and your teacher needs to give you feedback on the sounds you're making and offer suggestions on ways to improve those sounds.

REMEMBER

Constructive criticism is about your singing technique and isn't directed at you personally. If you feel that your teacher isn't giving you positive feedback, ask for it.

Focusing on the work helps you see the teacher's constructive criticism as a means to get you to the next level. If you prefer to sing through songs without the criticism, you may be happier finding a rehearsal pianist. A voice teacher's role is to help you improve, and any teacher worth their salt is going to offer constructive criticism.

WARNING

If you find a teacher who does nothing but praise you, you're wasting your time, because that type of lesson may boost your confidence, but it doesn't help you improve.

To feel confident at each lesson, you need to know what to practice. During your lesson, your teacher needs to suggest exercises for you to practice to help you improve your technique. They then need to help you apply those concepts to songs that you're singing. If you aren't sure about what to practice, you can ask your teacher to clarify which exercises to focus on for the next lesson.

Working with imagery and other tools

Because you can't see your voice, you need some tools to help you make changes. One way to obtain these tools is to make sure that your lesson involves working with a variety of techniques, such as imagery.

The teacher may use images to help you understand how to make the best sounds. The teacher may ask you to notice the sensations as you sing, give you something to visualize as you sing, or give you something to listen for. All three approaches can work beautifully for you as you work on your voice. You may also find that one approach works best for you. Knowing your preferred approach is good because you can translate what your teacher says into your own language. For instance, if your teacher describes something to you and explains the anatomy of why that worked, you may remember what it felt like when you made the best sounds. If you enjoy working with images, you can find a way to visualize the sound to enhance your experience.

Don't fret if a teacher wants to explain physically what's happening. You may not want to know in the beginning, but later you may be glad that you understand why a particular image works.

Applying tried-and-true singing methods

Teaching people to sing is an old profession. If you encounter a teacher who claims to have a "never-before-revealed, life-altering system of teaching," be wary. You want a teacher who bases their teaching on facts, not just experiments. Your voice may be very different from your teacher's voice. That's not a problem if your teacher has been teaching for at least five years. Hopefully they've encountered different vocal problems and figured out a way to work with them.

If you discuss lessons with a prospective teacher and they don't have a "system" of teaching, that's okay. Many great teachers combine all the information they've encountered into their own method.

Knowing What to Expect from Yourself

Yes, you do have to take some responsibility for creating your own singing success. Although knowing what to expect from your teacher is important (see the previous section for details), understanding what you need to be doing in and out of your lessons is just as important.

Developing your own practice process

You may have a weekly lesson with your voice teacher, but you have to practice between lessons to apply the techniques discussed each week. Practice leads to improvement. (For more details about practicing, check out Chapter 10.)

The best way to create a practice routine that works for you is to record any lessons and practice sessions and to keep notes in a journal. You want to record the lesson so that you can listen to it to hear the changes you make during that time. Taking notes as you listen to the recording helps you figure out how you made those changes so that you can make them again on your own.

REMEMBER

The concept and purpose of an exercise is more important than the exercise itself. For example, you can find many ways to work on breath, but the principle of moving breath is more important than one exercise. So when your teacher assigns you an exercise, make sure that you understand what it's for and how to use it. Simply doing an exercise isn't going to help you improve if you don't know what to do or what to listen for.

At the end of each voice lesson, I recommend that singers recap what they need to practice before the next lesson. If you recap the big concepts that you intend to focus on, you and your teacher both have a list of goals. Your goal is to do the work, and your teacher's goal is to listen to you sing at the next lesson to determine whether you need to continue in the same direction or expand your work.

Avoiding overworking your flaws

In your lesson, you want to focus on the entire voice and find a good balance of skills in all areas. If you spend too much time on the "flaw," you may get discouraged and feel like you can't do anything. Find a balance for your practice session and your lesson so that you work on techniques you do well and others that you don't do well. Hopefully the list of what you don't do so well grows shorter with each practice session.

If you find that your teacher is focusing so much on your flaws that you're becoming discouraged, ask your teacher for feedback on what you're doing well. Don't be shy about asking for positive reinforcement in lessons. Your teacher may assume that you know what you're doing well and may not be telling you as often. If you call this to their attention, they can offer you some needed words of encouragement.

Making Your First Lesson a Success

If you've never had a voice lesson, you may be nervous during your first lesson. The teacher knows that the first lesson is a little bit scary and may encourage you to be brave and try to make some new sounds. Admit that you're nervous and know that feeling this way is perfectly normal.

After you choose a voice teacher and know what to expect from the lesson, check out the following list to get a few tips on how to make your first lesson go smoothly.

- **Before your first lesson, ask the teacher if you may record the lesson.** They may have a recording device that you can use at the studio, but plan to bring your own. For online lessons, you need a device for playing the track of your song as well as a device for recording.
- **Bring along a bottle of water to keep your throat moist during all the singing.** You want to stay hydrated too.

  WARNING

  Don't set the water on the piano unless your teacher tells you that it's okay. Pianos are expensive, and spilling your water into the baby grand makes a really bad (and expensive) lasting impression.
- **If the lesson is in a school or other location without supplies, you may also want to bring along a small mirror.** Check out the list of supplies that you may need for practicing or lessons in Chapter 10.
- **Ask how many copies of the music to bring.** If your copy of the music is digital, you'll probably need to print a copy of the music if your teacher wants to follow along as you sing or if you're singing with an accompanist instead of singing with an audio track. See Chapter 16 for ideas on locating sheet music.

4 Preparing to Perform

IN THIS PART . . .

Choose songs and find sheet music to add to your repertoire.

Find out step-by-step how to get a new song under your belt in less time and more effectively than trying to cram all the details in one session.

Get performance pointers to add to your dependable technique to help you look good and give your audience a reason to watch you sing.

Read my advice on overcoming stage fright as well as tips for a great audition, if you're interested in the bright lights of Broadway or an audition in your hometown. It's time to take your technique beyond the practice room!

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Defining beginner, intermediate, and advanced songs
- Exploring some familiar songs
- Finding songs online or in music stores

Chapter 16
Selecting Your Music Material

In this chapter, you discover how to choose an appropriate song and where to find the music. I show you how to choose the right format and key, find a song at your level, and show off your strengths. Knowing whether to buy the original score, a fake book (a book with only the melody line, chord symbols, and words), or sheet music makes your shopping experience so much easier. When you've narrowed your choices, you can even download the music digitally.

Choosing the Song

Starting a new song can be so much fun. Digging into the phrasing, the story, and the vocal challenges of a new song can provide hours of entertaining work. But the process of choosing the song can stump many singers. Keep reading for some tips on how to select the right song for you.

Finding songs at your level

Your level of expertise and technical ability at this moment in time is the primary determination when finding music to sing. Choosing a song that's too hard for

you is sure to frustrate you. On the other hand, selecting material that's too easy for you may give you fun songs to sing, but it won't help advance your singing technique.

REMEMBER

Choosing songs at your level requires you to balance your current abilities with what you want to accomplish. To advance your singing technique, you want to choose songs that are just a little outside your comfort zone. Selecting a song to sing for a performance is different from selecting songs to practice and songs that help you develop technique. Songs for a performance need to highlight your level of ability at the time of the performance. For example, you may choose to perform a song that was once a little difficult for you but that you practiced long enough to master the technical challenges.

The following list includes the three basic song levels you want to choose from. (For more info, check out Appendix A, which lists songs in different styles of music for various voice types.)

- **Beginner:** *Beginner songs* have simple rhythms, a narrow range, an accompaniment part that plays the singer's melody, and simple articulation opportunities.

  Examples of a beginner song include "The Sound of Music" and "Edelweiss" from *The Sound of Music.* "The Sound of Music" has rhythms that are fairly easy to count, and the range isn't too extreme. "Edelweiss" also has smooth lines to help you work on phrasing.

  Other beginner songs include the following:

  - "Home Sweet Home" by John Howard Payne and Henry Bishop
  - The Old Scottish Air "Auld Lang Syne" with words by Robert Burns
  - Traditional Shaker Hymn "Simple Gifts"
  - "In the Gloaming" by Mete Orred and Annie F. Harrison
  - The spiritual "He's Got the Whole World in His Hands"
  - "Love Me Tender" by Elvis Presley and Vera Matson

- **Intermediate:** *Intermediate songs* have harder rhythms that test you a bit beyond your current level. If you're an intermediate-level singer, you can opt for a wider range, a few high notes to test your top notes, more difficult intervals that challenge your ear, and opportunities to explore more detailed articulation. The piano accompaniment may not follow the melody note for note. Some of these elements are in an intermediate song, but not all of these may be in the same song.

Some intermediate songs include "Morning Has Broken" by Eleanor Farjeon and arranged by Cat Stevens and "My Favorite Things" from *The Sound of Music.* "Morning Has Broken" is an intermediate song because the melody gets you moving between registers and has a wider range with some higher notes, compared to "Edelweiss," and the leaps are wider than in songs that move in stepwise motion. "My Favorite Things" moves quickly, with more variety and more complex rhythms than "The Sound of Music" from the same show, and the articulation of text has to be much faster. After you get some experience working on slower songs, such as "Edelweiss," to get your articulation fluid, a song like "My Favorite Things" offers you the challenge of articulating faster.

The following is a list of familiar intermediate-level songs that you may recognize:

- The folk ballad "Greensleeves"
- "Beautiful Isle of Somewhere" by J.B. Pounds and J.S Fearis
- "Killing Me Softly" by Norman Gimbel and Charles Fox as sung by Roberta Flack
- "Ring of Fire" by June Carter and Merle Kilgore as sung by Johnny Cash
- "Consider Yourself" from *Oliver* by Lionel Bart
- "It's a Lovely Day Today" from *Call Me Madam* by Irving Berlin

» **Advanced:** An *advanced song* is a song that really tests your skills. The melody you sing may be completely different from the accompaniment and have intervals that don't always blend with the piano music. You may be confronted with long notes that require breath control, several high notes that demand skill in execution, a detailed story that requires you to make the journey of the text as you use your technical skill, text that enables you to portray the height of the story, and an opportunity to convey the specific style appropriate for the song, such as high belt, classical legit, or the twang of a country song. I discuss training for different styles of singing in Chapter 14. See Chapter 13 for more on belting. You know your voice well by the time you're an advanced singer, so I don't include songs for advanced singers in Appendix A.

A list of advanced songs you may know include the following:

- "Over The Rainbow" from *The Wizard of Oz* by Harold Arlen and Yip Harburg
- "Crazy" by Willie Nelson
- "You Needed Me" by Ann Murray
- "Desperado" by Don Henley and Alen Frey
- "You're So Vain" by Carly Simon
- "*O sole mio!*" by E. di Capua

These songs are in the advanced list because the intervals are large or require multiple technical skills. You can find more complicated songs, but I encourage you to gradually refine your skills as you work on technique in beginner or intermediate songs before heading on to the advanced list. The upcoming sections can help you figure out your level of expertise.

Considering your range

If your range is about eight notes, a beginner song works for you. An intermediate song has a range less than two octaves, and an advanced song may have a range wider than two octaves. For more on musical notation, see Chapter 1.

An *octave* is eight white notes on the piano, and two octaves are 16 white notes apart. To go up an octave from a black key, find the next black key in the same pair of two or three black notes.

Making leaps

How comfortable are you singing big leaps in a melody? Many beginner songs move in *stepwise motion,* which means that the notes in the melody are right next to each other. An example you may know is "Mary Had a Little Lamb." Yes, it's a nursery rhyme, but try singing it — you'll notice that most of the notes are right next to each other, and that's stepwise motion.

Intermediate songs have bigger leaps that are in the same register, and advanced songs can have leaps that require smooth register changes. Wider *intervals* (the distance between two notes) challenge your ear. Spend some time working the larger intervals in a song to make sure that your throat stays open (see Chapter 6), your breath is flowing consistently (see Chapter 4), and your larynx stays steady (see Chapter 5). Singing wider intervals also makes you listen more. If you figure out the wider intervals, you're more likely to repeat that sound when you see the same interval in your next song.

Climbing higher

What's the highest note you can sing successfully? Suppose that your highest note is F4 for a male singer (F just above middle C on the piano) or F5 for a female singer, or the top line on the treble clef staff (see Chapter 1 for an explanation about staff and note names). Then consider these strategies:

- If you're a beginner, you want to choose a song that has most notes below your highest note and maybe only one of your highest note.

- If you're an intermediate singer with the same range, you want to choose a song that has one or two opportunities to sing that highest note.
- If you're an advanced singer, you know your voice well enough to determine how many times you can sing that highest note with ease. A soprano or tenor may sing their highest note four to five times in an advanced song, but a mezzo or baritone may want only one or two repetitions of their highest note. (For more on voice types, see Chapter 2.)

Battling fatigue

What causes you to get tired as you're practicing? Many singers tire when they sing a song in which most notes stay at the top of their range. Even if the song doesn't have many repetitions of your highest note, if the majority of the notes sit near that top note, you may get tired. Think of singing as similar to lifting weights. You can lift a weight several times, but how long can you hold it up? When you're staying near the top part of your range, you're holding up the weight — in other words, you're using quite a bit of body energy to maintain that physical exertion. If the high notes come at rapid-fire pace, that may be just the thing to get you singing the notes without worrying about it, but it can also be quite a challenge.

TIP

The more you practice and get to know your singing voice, the better you can answer this question.

Speeding along

What is the song's speed? A song's speed may cause you to spit out words at the speed of lightening. If you've been working on articulation (see Chapters 8 and 9), you can spit out those words easily without getting tense from the constant movement of your *articulators* (tongue and lips). Consider the following:

- Beginner songs are often slower, so you can articulate and really notice the movement of your lips and tongue.
- Intermediate songs may move at a faster pace and have tougher combinations of sounds.
- Advanced songs may be quite fast and require you to make your words understood as your melody bounces along the page.

Following your accompaniment

How confident are you singing with a piano or other musical accompaniment? Keep reading to find out more:

- A beginner song usually has the melody line played by the piano and in an obvious way.
- An intermediate song may have the melody line in the piano part, but the chords may be thicker and your melody may be harder to pick out.
- An advanced song may have an accompaniment that is totally different from the melody written for the singer.

Paying attention to detail

How comfortable are you at combining multiple details when singing a song? When you look at a song or hear it for the first time, you probably need to hear it a few times to get a feel for it.

WARNING

If you have to listen for a few weeks to get the notes right, the song is too hard for you right now.

By breaking down the details when you figure out a song (see Chapter 17), you're more likely to get all the pieces of the song working faster. If your ear picks up a tune pretty fast, you may assume that you can take on harder songs. Give yourself some time to work on songs and master a variety of technical details, such as breathing, articulation, and storytelling, before you jump to more advanced songs.

Telling a story

How familiar are you with acting and singing at the same time? Actors on television or stage make it look so easy, but acting and singing at the same time is a skill to make the song sound good and look good at the same time. Consider these details:

- Beginner songs often work for either gender and have easier stories to tell.
- Intermediate songs often contain more detailed lyrics.
- Advanced songs often are written for a specific gender, with a throughline in the story.

See Chapter 18 for more on acting and singing.

Picking up the rhythm

How comfortable are you with rhythms? Some singers can pick up rhythms quickly, whereas others struggle to hear the difference between sounds. Keep the following in mind:

- Beginner songs often have simple rhythms to allow the singer to focus on one or two types of rhythms.
- Intermediate songs have a wider variety of rhythmic combinations.
- Advanced songs may have complex rhythms.

For more help with rhythms, check out the latest editions of *Guitar For Dummies* by Mark Phillips and Jon Chappell, or *Piano For Dummies* by Blake Neely (both published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc). If you know a bit about rhythms, you can look at the song and determine whether the piece is complicated musically.

Determining the appropriate key for you

You may hear a great song on the radio and rush online to buy the sheet music so you can sing it at home. The trick is to read music well enough to know whether the song's notes are within your range. You don't have to know everything about what's on the page; you just need to know enough to discern the difference between the right key for you and the wrong key.

When a singer says, "I need this song in a higher key," it means that they want the notes of the song higher. After looking at the song, you may also determine that you want the notes to be lower — that is, you need to sing the song in a lower key. A song's *key* just means that the song is written with one note as the *central note,* or *tonic.* That central note is the name of the key. If C is the central note, you regularly return to C in the song. You don't have to know all about reading music, but you need to know whether you want the song four steps higher or two steps higher. Wanting the song in a higher key means you want the song to sit higher in your range.

Sometimes singers ask, "What's my key?" when they actually mean, "What's my range?" Not every song that has C as the central note has the same range. You want to be able to describe your range (see Chapters 2 and 11) and to know whether you need the song in a higher or lower key.

Selecting a suitable song style

You may love to listen to operatic arias but aren't yet able to sing one. Your voice may be suited to belting out show tunes, even though your car radio is set to the

country music station. If you're choosing a song to sing for fun and for your own listening pleasure, settle on a song in a style that you like but that also challenges you to use your knowledge of technique. You can choose some songs to sing for fun and some that make you work a little harder on your technique.

Chapter 20 helps you choose an audition song that works for you. If you're going the classical route, make sure that the music is appropriate for your voice type. If you're a mezzo-soprano, opt for arias written for that voice. Arias written for the mezzo voice often have the same range as arias written for sopranos, but the notes in the soprano aria stay higher than the mezzo arias. Read Chapter 2 for information about voice types and how to determine yours. If you love classical music, then art songs (classical songs not from an opera) are a great option for working on technique. Find art songs in the song lists in Appendix A. For pop, folk, country, and other styles of singing, see Chapter 14 for more information about singing different musical styles.

Singing to your strengths

You want to emphasize your particular singing talents whether you sing at your cousin's wedding, at a family gathering, for an audition, in church, or as part of karaoke night at a local pub.

The following list highlights skills and strengths you can emphasize. If your strength is

- **A lovely tone,** choose a nice ballad that enhances your tone. Examples of songs that showcase a lovely tone include "A Dream Is a Wish Your Heart Makes" from Cinderella, "Fields of Gold" by Sting, and "To Make You Feel My Love" by Bob Dylan.
- **Acting,** choose a great story song with a conflict that you work through as you sing the song. Examples of good story songs include "I Can't Make You Love Me" by Mike Reid and Allen Shamblin and "Long Cool Woman in a Black Dress" by Allan Clarke, Roger Cook, and Roger Greenaway.
- **Strong high notes,** sing a song that has some high notes, such as "Oh, Holy Night" by D.S. Dwight and Adolphe Adam, "Ave Maria" by Schubert, "Unchained Melody" by Righteous Brothers, and "Just The Way You Are" by Bruno Mars.
- **An ability to sing notes quickly and easily,** sing "Rejoice" (female), from Messiah by Handel, "I Will Always Love You" as sung by Whitney Houston, and "I Believe I Can Fly" by R. Kelly.

- **A strong low voice,** sing "Ol' Man River" (male) from *Show Boat* by Jerome Kern and "Maybe This Time" from *Cabaret* by John Kander and Fred Ebb.
- **A strong range from top to bottom,** sing "Crying" by Roy Orbison and Joe Melson and "You Raise Me Up" by Josh Groban.
- **Your great sense of humor,** poke fun at yourself and sing "Great Balls of Fire" by Otis Blackwell and Jack Hammer, "To Keep My Love Alive" from *Connecticut Yankee* by Richard Rodgers and Lorenz Hart, and "I'm Not Wearing Underwear Today" from *Avenue Q* by Robert Lopez and Jeff Marx.

Shopping for Sheet Music

When you finally know what you want, you have to go shopping to get it. Choosing music may be the harder of the tasks. You may have a local store that sells music, but most people shop online for music. If you like to hold music in your hand before you make a decision to buy, search online for your local music store. Call the store to ask whether they carry vocal music before you hop in the car. Many stores carry a limited selection of sheet music in the store but can order something for you. Another option is to shop online and download a digital copy of your music. Keep reading for more information.

Downloading sheet music

Many music distributors have online sites for purchasing single songs called *sheet music.* When you find your song, look for the version that says piano and voice, or piano, voice, and guitar. That version will have the melody line and lyrics for the voice, chords for the guitar player, and the piano part written out for the pianist. Most sites let you see only the first page of the song due to copyright restrictions. Hal Leonard's site lets you see the entire song because they own the copyright to the music on their site. Here are some places to consider:

- Hal Leonard is the world's largest publisher of music, and you can buy sheet music directly from the company at their online store `www.sheetmusicdirect.com`. There are numerous versions of single songs called sheet music. After you choose the song, you can select the key you want (you can see all the pages of the song to determine if it's the right key for you if you sign up for an account) and then download a copy of the music. Hit the play button to hear a basic electronic version of the song, not a track but the basic accompaniment. If you aren't sure what key to choose, hearing the music played for you allows you to sing along and figure out which key is right for your voice. You can also purchase tracks that you can use for practicing, taking to your voice lesson, or

singing in public. The style of music ranges from pop-rock to Disney. See Chapter 20 for information on tracks.

- Other websites such as www.musicnotes.com allows you to see the first page of the music and use the player to hear the first page.
- Sites for classical sheet music include www.sheetmusicnow.com, which lets you view a sample of a classical song before purchasing and www.sheetmusicplus.com, which has compilation books you can order or individual sheet music that you can download.

Ordering music books

As you shop online, you have the choice to buy sheet music (single song) or a *compilation book*, which contains a collection of songs that usually follow a theme, such as movie theme songs, love songs, pop hits of a certain decade, or a particular artist's songs. You have to decide whether you want to pay a little extra to have a few more songs or just get the one song in the exact key you want for a smaller fee.

Arias and most musical theater songs are traditionally printed in the original key. Older musical theater songs called *standards* are often printed in various keys and may not be the original key. If you find a book of songs, it may also say High Voice or Low Voice or for specific voice types like soprano or baritone. If the book title says Easy Piano, check the key since those songs are in easy keys to play but not necessarily easy keys for the singer.

Some websites list the key and range of the songs in a compilation book but most don't. You can browse the song book catalog online at www.halleonard.com to find the ones that list the key and range and which books are also available in digital editions.

WARNING

Websites that offer cheaper prices may be selling a collection of lead sheets compiled into a fake book, which doesn't include the piano part. *Fake book* sounds like it's a fraud but it's just the name of the compilation of lead sheets. A *lead sheet* has just the melody, chord symbols, and the words. If you choose this copy, your accompanist has to make up the accompaniment. Some accompanists are good at this; others need all the notes visible on the page.

REMEMBER

When you're purchasing digital sheet music on a website, you may also see the term *real book.* Both fake book and real book versions offer a rough outline of the music assuming the musician knows how to create the music by reading chords instead of a fully written out piano part. The lyrics on the lead sheets are typically computer-generated, whereas real book lyrics are either written by hand or printed so they look handwritten. Some jazz musicians prefer a real book edition because they're used to reading handwritten lead sheets.

Checking out music at your local library

The library is a great place to search for music. It's free, and you can check out the book to try the song at home at your own pace. If you find that it's not in the right key, you save yourself a few dollars and some frustration. You can even take the music to a pianist to play through it for you if your music-reading skills are still pretty new. If you decide that you like the song, jot down the name of the songbook, along with the name of the publisher and edition of that publication. Some books are republished and songs are added so check the contents of the compilation book to make sure it has the songs you want when you find it online.

REMEMBER

If you own the original sheet music, making a photocopy of the song for your own use is legal. For more information about making a legal copy of your music, visit `www.copyright.gov` or type "copyright music" into your favorite search engine.

TIP

At musical theater auditions, taking along a photocopy of the song is okay. Because you usually need a shorter version of the song called a cut (8 to 16 bars of the song), it may be easier to make a photocopy of the song with just those bars. At most classical auditions, taking an original is customary. At voice competitions involving classical music, you're required to own the original. The reason? Songwriters deserve to make a living by selling their music. See Chapter 20 on auditions.

BACKING TRACKS

When a singer sings along with pre-recorded musical accompaniment, the music is called *backing tracks, instrumental tracks, accompaniment tracks,* or *tracks.* You can find tracks in many different locations from websites. Type in the search words "backing tracks" or "karaoke" to find sites that allow you to sing along for free or to create your own track for a fee. The tracks vary in difficulty, allowing you to choose the level that is best for you.

Some tracks have the melody played along, which is great for a beginner, and other tracks only have the instruments playing and no melody, which require a more developed sense of pitch. Explore both and decide which one works for you.

As your skills improve, you may become more comfortable singing without the melody played on the track. Don't get discouraged if you find it hard to sing with a track that doesn't have the melody. It's a new skill; give yourself time to adjust to hearing just the accompaniment without any melody playing. Keep practicing, and you'll get used to holding the melody by yourself.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Separating the words from the melody
- Figuring out the music as it's written on the page
- Finding ways to use your vocal technique
- Knowing when to take a breath

Chapter 17
Mastering a New Song

Mastering a new song is tough. In this chapter, you discover how to take the song apart and study it step by step. I even work through a song with you to give you hands-on practice. After reading this chapter, you'll be ready to master a new song by yourself.

Tackling a Song in Steps

Getting a new song is so much fun. The new melody and new words make you want to just burst out singing.

Many singers try to conquer all the details of a brand-new song in one session. But picking up an unfamiliar song and getting the words, rhythms, and melody right at the same time may take more than one session. The process goes much quicker if you take some time to scan the song, break it down into manageable pieces, and then conquer it one piece at a time.

By scanning, I mean checking these musical details:

- **Direction of the melody:** A melody can move up or down in stepwise motion, meaning that the notes are right next to each other or just one step away from each other, or in leaps, called intervals. The more you look at your music,

the more you get used to seeing the notes on the page and knowing what the distance between those two notes sounds like.

- **How the rhythm and the words work together:** The melody may have one note for every word or syllable, or you may have to sing two or three notes for every syllable.
- **Repeating sections:** Sometimes music is written with no repeats; other times, certain sections repeat. Look at the music for signs to indicate what you're supposed to repeat.
- **Speed:** *Tempo,* or speed, markings usually appear at the beginning of the piece. Sometimes the words describing the tempo are in Italian. Look up the word so you know the speed the composer intended.
- **Volume variations:** In music, volume (degree of loudness and softness) is called dynamics. Dynamic levels are also often written in Italian.

If you give yourself time to absorb these details one at a time, you can master the song much more quickly than if you try to cram it all into your head. Read on to find out how to create steps in your discovery process. To sing a song as the composer intended, you need to understand these notations. See the latest edition of *Music Theory For Dummies* by Michael Pilhofer and Holly Day (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.) for more help with reading musical notation.

Follow the song in Figure 17-1 as you read through the following sections.

Memorizing the lyrics as text

Look at the lyrics as a monologue or a story. Write or type the words, including the punctuation, so you can examine the lyrics apart from the melody and take a look at the big picture. If the song has words that you don't know, look them up. Find the meaning and the pronunciation of all the words in your song. Notice the punctuation, because you can breathe at the punctuation marks in a song. (See the section, "Paying attention to punctuation," later in this chapter.)

Read the lyrics out loud so you can hear the inflection of the words. As you read the lyrics, look for the operative words — the words that you emphasize in normal, natural, everyday speech. *Operative words* are nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. The rest of the words in the sentence are important but aren't usually emphasized. Keep reading the text aloud until it sounds conversational.

TIP

If you keep forgetting the words, speak through the text quickly until you no longer stumble on the words. You can also use key words in phrases to help you remember what comes next. Create a system to help you remember the order of each phrase's key word. Just knowing whether the list has some common characteristics can help you remember key words to get to the next phrase.

Simple Things
Words and Music by
Martha Sullivan
Moderato, ♩ = 96–104
mp
1. Some - times a sim - ple feel - ing comes fly - ing on the wing
2. Some - times a sim - ple mo - ment ar - rives and brings me calm,
In - to the deep - est part of me, and that's when I must sing:
Heal - ing the deep - est part of me, and so I make my psalm:
mf
These are the sim - ple things that I would cel - e - brate in song:
©2003 by Martha Sullivan, all rights reserved

FIGURE 17-1: Sample song — "Simple Things."

© John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Sun - shine at dawn, a clear blue sky, and friends with hearts so strong;
Mus - ic to dance to, songs to try, this life where we be -
long.
D. S. al Fine
ritard.

FIGURE 17-1: *(continued)*

Sometimes when you read poetry or lyrics for the first time, they don't make complete sense. The more you read them, the more you're able to understand the meaning behind the words. When you really have a grasp on the words, memorize them. You may find that it takes only a short time to memorize the words.

Tapping out the rhythm

Even if you don't read music well, you can tap out the rhythms. Just look at the rhythms on the page and try to tap them out without worrying about words or speed. The first time you try, it may be difficult, but after some practice, you get accustomed to certain rhythm patterns and can quickly master them.

Lucky for you, only a few rhythms need to be worked out in the sample song "Simple Things" (refer to Figure 17-1). The rhythm in this song is a great example of what I mean by a beginner song. (Chapter 16 has more information about beginner, intermediate, and advanced songs.) I chose a beginner song for you to explore so you can feel totally confident about figuring out rhythms.

For more help on reading rhythms, pick up a copy of the most recent edition of *Piano For Dummies,* 2nd Edition, by Blake Neely (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

TIP

After you tap out the rhythm of your new song, try speaking the words in rhythm. Speaking the words in rhythm can help you solidify some of the rhythms and divisions of syllables.

Reading the time signature

To figure out a song's rhythms, you have to know a little about reading music. At the very beginning of a song, you can find some numbers that look like a fraction. This *fraction,* or *time signature,* tells the singer how to divide the beats between each bar line. As you look at the music in Figure 17-1, notice the single vertical line between the words simple and feeling at the beginning of the song. That line is called a *bar line.* In that bar, or *measure,* the time signature indicates that you find four beats:

- The top number of the time signature 4/4 indicates how many beats you find in each bar
- The bottom note indicates what kind of note gets one beat. (4/4 is also notated as *C,* which means *common time.*)

Because the top number is four, each measure has four beats. The bottom note is also four, which means the quarter note gets one beat.

Knowing how long to hold notes

In "Simple Things," the song in Figure 17-1, you find three kinds of rhythms: eighth notes, quarter notes, and half notes. The duration of notes is similar to math.

The first three notes in "Simple Things" are a quarter note followed by eighth notes, and because quarter notes get one beat, eighth notes get half a beat each. When you see a note with a dot next to it, you hold the note for the full duration of the note plus half of the original value. For example, the quarter note with the dot next to it at the word *are* indicates that you hold the note for one beat plus another half, for a total of one and a half beats.

Track 61

PLAY THIS

On Track 61, the singer taps out the rhythm of "Simple Things" and says "T*a*h" for each note. Listen to the track several times until you can distinguish between eighth notes and quarter notes.

TIP

Try out your music reading skills by exploring what's written on the page and then listen to the artist you love to determine if their version matches what's on the sheet music. Artists commonly change the rhythm and timing of the music in a popular song. Sometimes you need to sing exactly what's on the page and that's when those music reading skills can be your new best friend.

Singing the melody (without the words)

Sing the melody without the words. This may seem like strange advice, but singing the melody without having to worry about whether you're getting the words right helps you fix the melody in your mind and also focus on your breathing technique (see Chapter 4), back space, and legato line (see Chapter 6 for both). Add the words after you have the melody down.

Track 62

PLAY THIS

On Track 62, you hear a singer singing the melody line on a single vowel. You can sing along while watching the melody line of the song in Figure 17-1. You know the rhythm, so add the melody to the familiar rhythm.

DEFINING MUSICAL ELEMENTS IN DIFFERENT STYLES

Music written on the page is the same for any style of music. The notation is the same, but how the music is performed isn't the same. In opera and classical music, singers sing exactly what's on the page. They memorize all the words, notes, musical directions, and markings. That's a lot to memorize and to get exactly right. Classical singers have to be good musicians, because they have to follow the road map exactly as the composer intended.

In musical theater, the singer follows what's on the page, especially for earlier, more traditional songs. In later musical theater songs (material influenced by pop and rock), a singer may sing the basic notation on the page but take liberties with the rhythm and timing in the measures. Singers often back phrase, or take liberties with the rhythms and timing while the piano continues playing what's on the page. The singer and pianist end up back together in the next measure.

For pop, rock, R&B, and jazz, the singer takes a lot of liberties with both the melody and the rhythms written on the page. The R&B singer adds notes to the melody, commonly called riffs. *Riffs* are musical improvisation on the melody written on the page. In Chapter 12, you can practice some of the most common riffs you hear in songs. The pop singer also riffs, but not as much as the R&B singer. The phrasing in these styles of music is more causal than in classical music, and it's more common for the singer to not hold out notes at the end of phrases, even though a long note may be written on the page. The jazz singer improvises with the pianist. The pianist may improvise a segment of the music, and the singer joins in when the piano finishes. The singer may also improv on the melody while the pianist follows along. Jazz singers need a good ear for music so they know when to come back in based on the chord progression they hear.

Putting words and music together

Are you ready for the last round? It's time to put all the puzzle pieces together. Because you already know the words, rhythm, and melody, singing the words with the melody is a breeze.

PLAY THIS

On Track 63, listen to all the parts put together. The first time through, the singer sings the song with you. The second time through, you get to sing by yourself.

Track 63

Notice how long the musical introduction lasts so that you're prepared when you sing by yourself. If you're not sure what to do during this introduction, check out Chapter 18 for some ideas on acting.

This same step-by-step process can lead you to great discoveries of new songs. Take your time when you find a new song and get all the steps down. With each new song, you get faster and faster. Pretty soon, you can get a song down in no time. Have fun singing along.

Using Vocal Technique in Your New Song

When you begin a new song, the first thing you probably want to do is sing it over and over. That's fine, as long as you take some time to apply some work to your singing technique. You can sing along with the exercises on the online tracks, which helps you advance your singing technique, and then you can apply that technical skill to songs. By breaking down your game plan for a song, you can work on technique and a song at the same time.

Giving voice to vowels

Working on single vowels in the exercises on the online tracks is a great way to make sure that you know how to make distinct vowel sounds. When you know the sounds of each vowel (see Chapter 8), you can apply the same work to your song. Taking the time to focus on which vowel sounds you make in each word helps you improve your technique in singing vowels with each practice.

Singling out one vowel

As you explore the melody of a new song, sing it on a single vowel to find a *legato* (smooth and connected) line and work on your breath moving smoothly through long phrases. You can apply this idea as you sing along to the online tracks with the melody of "Simple Things" (refer to Figure 17-1) on a single vowel. See "Singing the melody (without the words)," earlier in this chapter, to find the correct track to sing along with.

Streaming through the vowels

You can also sing the song on a stream of vowels. The *stream of vowels* in a song is the vowel sounds in the words minus the consonant sounds. When you can successfully speak through the vowels in one continuous stream of sound, apply that stream of vowels to the melody: Sing straight through the song without pausing between each vowel sound. This exercise helps you really listen to each vowel to make it distinct. Adding the consonants back in allows you to make those specific vowel sounds followed by very clear consonant sounds.

MAKING THE SONG YOUR OWN

Preparing a song for an audition means understanding how to read the sheet music a little. When you know what's written, you can work on making the song your own.

For example, if you listen to a famous singer, you may sing the song exactly the same way. At an audition, however, the music director wants to hear you, not a carbon copy of someone famous. Find out what's on the page and then make it yours by following these techniques:

- Varying dynamics, articulation, and musical emphasis
- Plotting tempo changes
- Looking for *operative words* — words that you emphasize in natural speech
- Choosing some acting objectives from Chapter 18

The composer has put some really great ideas into the music — you just need to know how to find them. See the section, "Using Musical Elements to Create Your Arrangement," later in this chapter for more ideas on how to make a song yours.

TIP

Look at the words of "Simple Things" in Figure 17-1. Speak through the text without the consonants. When you get used to pronouncing the stream of vowels without the consonants, sing that stream of vowel sounds with the melody. When you feel confident that your vowels are top notch, put the consonants back in. You may be surprised by how clear your vowels are now that you've given them your undivided attention.

Backing into phrases

Another good way to improve your technique is to work the phrases backward. No, I'm not telling you to sing the song backward — just work from the last phrase you find difficult and gradually add the preceding phrases as you master the hard one.

Sing the last few measures of a song until your phrasing is solid. When you can do that easily, make another grouping with the preceding few measures. So imagine that your text is, "The loud cows aroused the sows. The sound of the hounds resounded all around."

1. **Practice the last phrase, "resounded all around."**
2. **When that phrase sounds good, work through "The sound of the hounds resounded all around."**

3. **When that phrase is smooth as glass, add the preceding phrase, "aroused the sows."**

4. **Then work through the whole enchilada: "The loud cows aroused the sows. The sound of the hounds resounded all around."**

The phrasing and breath flow likely are more polished now. You can apply this same idea to "Simple Things" (again refer to Figure 17-1). By working some of the phrases from the last few words, you gradually practice your breath control so you can make it through the entire phrase. In "Simple Things," you can work the phrase "These are the simple things that I would celebrate in song" by starting at "I would celebrate in song." When you can successfully sing that phrase, go back and add "simple things." When that much of the phrase is easy to manage, go back and sing the entire phrase, "These are the simple things I would celebrate in song," and see whether you can tell the difference in your breath control.

Breathing heavy: Fogging up the windows

You probably already figured out that you have to pay attention to your breathing when you sing. Chapter 4 discusses breath coordination. When you add your breathing skills to a new song, you have to figure out how to coordinate the breath with the music so the breath is purposeful. The timing or speed of the breath and where and when you breathe in a song matter. This section tells you how and when to take a purposeful breath in your new song.

Knowing how to breathe when you sing is a great skill. Taking your breathing to the next level in a song means breathing with the intent to say something when you sing. For each phrase that you sing, you need to plan the amount of breath that you need to complete that phrase or thought. That concept sounds like a big one, but it's what you do every day in your conversations. As you're deciding what to say next in a conversation, you take in air and then express those thoughts.

Try taking a breath and saying, "I have some bad news." Your breath was probably slow and deliberate because you knew something unpleasant was about to follow. Take a breath and say, "I won the entire jackpot in the lottery." Wow! That breath is certainly different than your bad-news rendition. When you sing songs, you want to know clearly what you're trying to say so that you take the appropriate breath for each line and express a specific thought.

Knowing where to breathe is also helpful. In a song, you can breathe in the following locations:

- Anytime you see a rest in the music
- Anywhere you see punctuation, such as a comma or period
- Anywhere that makes sense with the musical phrase and the lyrics

Marking the places where you intend to breathe gives you an opportunity to try that breath and see whether it works for you. The place to breathe may seem logical, but then when you try the breath, you may not feel confident. Just choose another place and try again. The more you practice singing through songs and plotting out the breaths, the better you get at figuring it out.

Refer to Figure 17-1 to read through "Simple Things" again and notice the punctuation. You can breathe in a lot of places because the song has quite a few commas.

Paying attention to punctuation

The punctuation in a song tells you where the big thoughts are. As with written and spoken text, periods indicate complete thoughts and commas point to lists and auxiliary phrases. Punctuation indicates an opportunity to take a breath, so a song's punctuation can help you with phrasing and interpretation.

A series of questions in a song provides you with a different task than a series of commas. In your everyday speech, the inflection of your tone of voice usually goes up when you ask a question and goes down when you make a statement in English. In singing a song that has a list with a series of commas, you want to reflect that continuing thought. You can practice this by taking a breath in the middle of a sentence when you're speaking. Notice how the inflection of your voice stays up. That same idea happens when you sing; the inflection of your voice tells the listener that you're continuing on the same train of thought. In contrast, a period needs a sense of finality. Say the following two sentences: "Don't do that." and "You did what?" Notice the change in the tone of your voice when you read the question. This difference of inflection helps the listener know that you've just made a statement or asked a question while singing.

Breathing in a series of commas takes a little planning. You can breathe after every comma, but you may not need to. You can take a slight pause, just like you do in speaking when you pause in the middle of a sentence but don't take a breath. A series of questions is similar: Breathe where you need to, and use a slight pause in places where you don't need a breath.

REMEMBER

You can breathe after a comma as long as you remember that your train of thought doesn't stop as you take the breath. The same train of thought continues, just as when you take a breath between phrases in a conversation.

WARNING

The places where you don't want to breathe are between syllables in a word, in the middle of a grammatical phrase that needs to be kept as one thought, and between a noun and modifier. Look at the text to determine where you take a breath while speaking the words. If it doesn't sound logical to breathe at that point when you're speaking the lyrics, try to find another place to take the breath when you sing.

TIP

If you're struggling with a phrase because you need a breath, cheat the last note of a phrase instead of trying to hurry in on the first note of the next phrase. If the last note is a half note, you can cut the note off a half beat early to catch your breath. In "Simple Things" (Figure 17-1), you can take a little time away from the word *me* to make sure that you have enough breath to sing the next phrase.

Catching your breath

If you're singing an up-tempo song with quick-moving words, you have to know exactly how to get the breath in quickly to make the next line come out clearly.

Remember that the release for the next breath has to happen quickly. Open your body to allow the breath to drop in quickly and exhale slowly. Opening the throat quickly prevents gasping. Gasping doesn't allow you to get the air in as fast, and it feels more like a struggle.

Timing your breathing from the beginning

Look at and listen to your musical introduction, or prelude — the part before the lyrics come in. Before you sing that first note, you need to be ready — you need to time your breath. Sometimes timing your breath just right so you can begin the first phrase with enough air is tricky.

TIP

The best way to time the breath is to practice breathing two beats before you sing. Get your song's tempo in your head. When you have that tempo set in your mind, count one, two, breath, breath (breathe for two counts), and then begin to sing. If you find that's too much time for breath, practice taking the breath in one count. You don't want to take the breath, hold it for a few counts, and then sing. Holding your breath may get you locked up in your upper body. Remember that breath is always in motion. (See Chapter 4 for an explanation of how your body moves for breathing and singing.) For "Simple Things" in Figure 17-1, you want to start taking your first breath about two beats before you sing the first word, "Sometimes."

Changing the tone for each section

Each section of a song must have a distinct feel or tone. To convey different tones in different sections, you need to make a change of thought to create a change of tone. In "Simple Things" in Figure 17-1, you have an opportunity to change your thought as you begin the second verse. Look through your song and determine how many sections it has. You know it's a new section because one of these things happens: A piano interlude (a solo section for the piano in between the vocal section) often leads to a new section, the music changes and adds different rhythms or moves to a new key, or the text changes and a new topic arises.

You can compare this study of your music to studying poetry. Each *poem*, or grouping of words, has a certain rhythm to it, called *meter.* When you know the meter, you can look further to find the rhyme scheme. Knowing the rhyme scheme gives you a clue to how many sections the piece has.

The form of a song tells you how many sections you can expect to find.

- *Strophic,* which is similar to a *hymn,* means that the same music is repeated for each section of text, or each *stanza.*
- Two part AB means that two main sections may occur in order as AB or ABA, with the first section repeating. An example of an AABA song is the Flintstone's theme; an AB example is "(Baby You Can) Drive My Car" by The Beatles. You may think of other songs that fit because they have a verse and a chorus.
- Through composed means that the entire piece is new, with no repeats of any sections in any stanza. Examples of through composed songs include "Happiness Is A Warm Gun" by John Lennon and Paul McCartney, and "Stairway to Heaven" by Led Zeppelin.

If a section repeats, speculate about what made the composer or lyricist repeat those words. What reason necessitates saying the same words again? Exploring those reasons may help you discover how to create changes in your tone by changing what you're thinking. You need to sing a repeated part differently the second time than you did the first time. (And if it repeats a third or even fourth time, each repetition needs to be distinct from the others.)

Finding the minimum number of sections to a song tells you the minimum number of changes.

Using Musical Elements to Create Your Arrangement

When you start working on your new song, how do you create the arrangement that works for you? How do you make the song yours? You can start by listening to other arrangements to see and hear the elements each artist used to make the arrangement their own. If you look at the music for "Hound Dog" as sung by Elvis Presley, the music on the page may look bland compared to the sounds that you hear on the recording. Elvis used a variety of sounds with his voice to create a fun song. You can use variations in musical elements, such as dynamics (volume) or tempo (speed), or you can change the timbre of your voice or vary the articulation.

You want to think of the song as a journey of music and lyrics. If it's a journey, you want changes and variations in that journey. If you repeat the same lyrics exactly the same each time, it may be fun, but it's not a journey for the listener. Musicians talk about the hook in the song. The *hook* is the recurring and memorable part that gets the listener hooked. When you're searching for just the right song to arrange and make your own, remember that the hook can be the repeating rhythm, melody, or lyrics. You want a hook, but also a story to tell. Make a variety of fun sounds to keep your audience listening for the few minutes it takes to sing the song.

You may have seen television shows such as *American Idol* or *The Voice* that ask singers to bring in their own arrangement of a song or to sing a song they don't know. Because you sometimes have to sing a song a cappella, you want to know how to make it interesting without relying on the instruments. Using these suggestions on how to make the song your own, as well as what to explore to create your own arrangement, may come in handy when you're put on the spot and have to master and perform a new song in a short period of time. Build your technical skill so you can confidently apply it.

Comparing songs

"Get Down Tonight," recorded by K.C. & The Sunshine Band, is a great song for dancing, but the lyrics repeat a lot and it doesn't have a strong story. It's also a song that may sound boring with just the piano and no other instruments. "Simply Irresistible," as recorded by Robert Palmer, and "Lollipop," as recorded by The Chordettes, are two more examples of songs that have a great hook but may not have great stories or work without the instruments. They're fun songs, but not great choices to sing by yourself or without a major arrangement with your backup band.

On the other hand, "Desperado," as recorded by The Eagles, has a great story and simplicity that lends itself to a solo with piano. "Lipstick on Your Collar," as recorded by Connie Francis; "Blue Moon," written by Richard Rodgers and Lorenz Hart; and "Respect," as recorded by Aretha Franklin can also be arranged so that you sound great singing with a piano. These examples are just a few of the songs that have a great story, sound good with a piano, and work well for a one-person performance. The song lists in Appendix A also contain some great story songs to sing as a solo and are appropriate levels for readers of this book.

You can find different versions of your song on sites like `www.sheetmusicdirect.com` or you can experiment with some familiar songs to get the hang of making a song your own. Think of a familiar song that you know very well. You can use the hymn "Amazing Grace" or familiar tunes such as "Happy Birthday," "Old MacDonald," or even the song in this chapter, "Simple Things."

Articulation

Sing through the song as you normally do, noticing the articulation and flow of the melody. Now sing the song again and change the articulation. Make the consonants super crisp and really precise. When you articulate like this, you're most likely inspired to make precise sounds with your singing voice, similar to classical music. When you sing the song again, change the articulation so that the consonants and vowels are correct but not so crisp and precise. This laidback articulation is similar to what happens in a pop song or other contemporary songs that you hear on the radio. You can choose the best articulation for the type or song you're singing based on how you want to express the story of that song.

Dynamics

When you sing the song this time, sing it loudly. The meaning of the song may change when you sing it loudly. Now sing the song again, but softly. The third time you sing the song, vary the dynamics, singing some sections loudly and others softly. You want to gradually change the volume so your song builds toward the climax.

Tempo

The next element to explore is the tempo. Sing through the song slowly, and then sing through it at a fast tempo. When you've explored fast and slow, sing through the song and gradually change the tempo of the song. You can start slowly and gradually speed up, or vice versa — start fast and gradually slow it down. You want to explore which segments in the song make sense to sing faster and which sections make sense to sing slower. The changes in tempo don't have to be drastic — just change them enough to keep the song evolving.

EXPLAINING PRELUDE, INTERLUDE, AND POSTLUDE

The *prelude,* or introduction, is the beginning of the song. The prelude is the music that plays before you start to sing. A prelude is important because the first word and note grows out of the musical introduction.

The *interlude* is a segment of music in between sections of a composition. In songs, the interlude usually occurs between segments of the song, and the music plays alone.

The *postlude* is the song's ending that concludes the musical and dramatic thoughts. The song isn't over until the last note of the postlude finishes.

Using vocal variety

You can change the *timbre* of your voice by using the information in Chapters 11 and 12 about the registers of the voice and resonance. You can sing the first phrase of your song in a head voice–dominated mix, the second phrase in a chest voice–dominated mix, and the next phrase using belt. That progression may happen more slowly in your song, but using variations in registration and resonance offers you a variety of sounds in your song. Gradually changing the vocal sounds shows off your versatility and provides a changing and flowing journey of sound throughout the song.

You may choose to sing softly and use your head voice or falsetto. If you speed up the tempo, you may want to belt that section. To know which sounds work really well, record yourself singing and listen back. You may have to experiment for a while and record yourself several times before you really find the sounds that fit your new version of the song. Singers often tell me that it feels weird to change registers when they sing a song. Somehow they think that they're supposed to sing in the same register throughout the song. The singers you hear on the radio shift registers, and so can you. Unless a spunky dance beat requires you to belt it out for the entire song, you'll want variety in your sounds. Practice moving between registers in the exercises in Chapter 12 so you're ready to incorporate those transitions into your song.

Style

When performers arrange a song, they often sing through the song and change the style. They sing familiar songs but change them to sound different from what you normally hear. For example, you can sing "Amazing Grace" precisely and clearly, or you can sing it and pretend that you're an R&B star and add lots of riffs.

You can also add a lot of twang and forward resonance and make it sound like a country song. Pretending that the song is from a specific style encourages you to use sounds that you typically hear in that type of song. Understanding what makes a song sound pop or country allows you then to use those elements in the song you choose to perform.

Accompanist

When you decide how you want to sing your song, mark your music with the directions so the accompanist knows how to follow you. You can highlight the tempo and dynamic markings to make sure that your accompanist sees them; if none are written in, write them within the piano part. You often see tempo markings above the vocal line. To make sure that your accompanist sees them, go ahead and write them in the space between the two sets of five lines down in the piano part.

If you want to change the style of the song, you need to change how the accompanist plays what's on the page. Some accompanists are great at this, and you can just ask them to play a piece in the style of a country song even if that's not what's written on the page. The accompanist simply changes the way the chords are played and perhaps changes the rhythm on the page to match your vocal changes. Accompanists who don't play a lot of contemporary material may be really good at changing the tempo and dynamics, but not so good at making up an accompaniment that sounds like a pop song. Ask them if they're comfortable changing the style for you or bring a copy of the song already arranged in that style.

WARNING

Don't assume that an accompanist can change the accompaniment on the fly. If you want to change a familiar song at an audition to sound very different than how it's normally played and sung, ask in advance.

Evaluating musical elements

When you listen to your favorite song by your favorite singer, you grow fond of the sounds that performer creates when they sing. When you're exploring a new song, you use technique to sing the melody, but you use your sense of style to create the diverse sounds in the song. Using the song "Bridge Over Troubled Water" as an example, you can find numerous artists who have recorded the song in many different ways:

- Listen to the original version of Simon and Garfunkel to get a sense of how the writers thought the song should sound.
- Then listen to Linda Eder for a masterclass in sounds. She begins with a very light head voice–dominated sound and then moves on to a mix with more depth and further on to using belt.

- Compare these choices with Roberta Flack who creates a mellow ballad with luscious rich tones.
- Josh Groban uses more classical sounds.
- Elvis creates a more gospel flavor.
- Vince Gill and LeAnn Rimes are both country singers so their versions are flavored with country style.
- John Legend and Idina Menzel both have very specific ideas on how to use their voice to tell the story.

Have some fun listening to the vast number of singers who recorded this song and then try to describe the differences between styles of music. If you like the song, record yourself singing it and see if you can create your own style.

TECHNICAL STUFF

Singing isn't only wickedly fun, but it's also beneficial to your nervous system. Because singing engages muscles in the back of the throat, it helps activate the *vagus nerve*, the longest nerve in the body that connects to every organ. The vagus nerve is part of the parasympathetic nervous system known as the *rest and digest part* of the nervous system. Not only can singing bring you joy from the release of *oxytocin* (a hormone associated with pleasure), but it also helps you calm down by activating the part of the nervous system that helps you relax.

TIP

Use your best technique when exploring a brand-new song because the body remembers physically how to sing it. For example, your old technique might include squeezing to sing that high note compared to your updated technique of opening the space and coordinating your breath. It's harder to undo old habits after you drill them into a melody. Take your time with your newfound song and apply the technique you read about in the chapters. You may need a bit of practicing to get the fresh skills into your new song, but after you do, it can make a huge difference in the long run because it will be easier when you explore future songs.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Telling a song's tale
- Identifying the character behind the song
- Selling your song with appropriate nonverbals

Chapter 18
Acting the Song

If you think about the performances you've seen on television or live in a theater, you likely remember the choreography, the great scenery, or a singer jamming to a tune before a panel of judges and a huge crowd — all the pizzazz. What if you have to stand onstage and sing a song by yourself with only the piano for company? You've come to the right chapter for some ideas on making your solo routine a stellar performance.

Your biggest job as a singer is to say something when you sing. Standing up and singing memorized words is just the beginning. Apply your acting skills to a song for a powerful performance. Give your audience a reason to look at you and listen to your performance.

REMEMBER

This chapter focuses on acting while singing and using breath to tell a story. The good news is that low breath for singing moves the organs in the abdominal area and helps keep the clear fluid in the lymphatic system called *lymph flowing*. There isn't a pump in your body to move lymph so physical motion helps keep the lymph moving. Singing has so many awesome benefits.

Seeing the Song As a Story

Every well-written song takes the listener on a journey that uses text and music to tell a story. In this section, you find out how to work with the text of your song to understand it as a story, how to work with your voice to portray that text with emotion, and how to get the music and text to work together.

Chatting it up before you sing

Well-written songs offer you an opportunity to create a partnership with the words and music. Working the text as a speech or monologue, you may find that the song doesn't mean what you originally thought it did. Just as when reading a poem for the first time, you may not initially absorb all the meanings. The second time around, several new things may jump out at you. The more you read the text, the more you can enhance the relationship between your singing and the words coming out of your mouth.

WARNING

Don't fall into the trap of thinking that just singing the song well is good enough. It isn't. Singing well is a wonderful start, but you want to take it a step further and put meaning to the sounds. Saying words out loud forces you to decide what the words mean. For example, you can emphasize the words "I had a cat" in three different ways:

- If you emphasize *I,* you're saying that you — and probably you alone — had a cat.
- If you emphasize *had,* you may mean that the cat is no longer with you.
- Emphasizing the word cat may mean that you had a cat instead of a dog.

Playing with the various words makes you think about what you're trying to say and how best to say it. As you speak through the text of your song, make specific choices about what you think the text means, as you did when you said, "I had a cat." Your specific choices give listeners an opportunity to really focus on your story so they hear the words, not just the glorious sounds of your voice.

Emphasizing repeated words is just as important. When your song repeats certain lyrics, you want to say them differently, as if each time they have a new meaning. Think of a line from your song and repeat it several times. Most likely, you emphasized it differently each time to try to get your point across. When you repeat the lyrics, you have another chance to get your audience to understand you.

TIP

When you begin to work your text as a monologue or add expression to your singing, you may find that your eyebrows tend to go up. If so, put a piece of clear tape on your forehead to convince them to go back down. Place the tape vertically on your forehead so you can feel it each time your eyebrows flex. With practice, you can find a way to express your thoughts without tightening anything on your face.

Recognizing musical responses

In songs, the music has something to say about the character and the text. The music is a vehicle for the voice to tell the story. As you listen to your song (the piano part recorded by your pianist or a recording of you singing the song), think about what the music has to say about the story. Often the setting of the text with the music enhances the delivery of the text.

For example, in the song "Wouldn't It Be Loverly" from *My Fair Lady*, Eliza Doolittle's text moves at the same pace as a person speaking the text. By setting the text at a normal speaking pace, the music helps you sound as if you're talking and telling a story with music. In the song "Ya Got Trouble," from *The Music Man*, you know just by hearing the sound of the accompaniment that Harold Hill isn't going to sing about what a beautiful morning it is. The short, detached sounds from the accompaniment tell you that trouble is brewing.

REMEMBER

Some songs include times when the singer gets to rest. During these times, the music is talking, and you want to respond to the music and your upcoming text. Read on for suggestions on what to do during an interlude.

Accounting for interludes

If the song has an *interlude*, a passage in the music when you're not singing, you need to figure out how to handle that period of time. Interludes can be perplexing. What in the world do you do to kill that time? You think specific thoughts that support and continue the plot during musical interludes of a song. Subtext can take you from the musical introduction (prelude) right to the song's first line.

An example of subtext in a song could be what the girl is thinking during the prelude (introduction music) of *Love Story*, recorded by Taylor Swift. In the prelude, she's thinking about the boy and what she'll say to him. Maybe she's finally gotten up enough nerve to tell him that she likes him, and she's thinking about the best way to tell him. Or he may be packing his things because he's really mad at her, and she's thinking (subtext) during the prelude about what she can say to get him to forgive her and stay.

The interlude may be really simple, but you still want to hear the music and let it be part of your story. Think of the piano as your scene partner. Even if you're onstage alone singing a song, the piano is offering you some feedback within the structure of the music. You don't even have to read music to figure it out. You just need to listen to the music and decide how it's helping to tell the story.

Exploring Character

You want to make your performance well rounded and interesting to the audience, so you need to do some detective work on your song. Take a close look into the character singing the song. Every song has a character and a story to tell. Sometimes the character is just like you and sometimes it's someone very different.

Getting into character means temporarily inhabiting the life and circumstances of a character for a story. In this case, the story is presented in the lyrics of the song. If the lyrics are from an opera or musical, your song and your character have an entire life for you to explore. Songs from the radio usually aren't from a show, so you get to decide the circumstances.

TIP

If you just can't find the answers to some of the questions about the character singing the song, make a good guess based on the other details you've read in the script, or create a story or scenario that supports the words of the song. Making up the missing details of your character's life helps you create a complete picture of exactly who this person is. As long as your scenario leads you to say and sing the words on the page, it can work. If your scenario is so far-fetched that it distracts you and you're too busy to sing, make it a little less complicated for now. Simple is good.

Characterizing your character

Answering fundamental questions about the character singing your song leads you to some specific details about how to portray that character when you're alone onstage.

You want to uncover the facts given in the lyrics. Some basic questions to answer include

- **What is the character's name?** The character in a radio song is you.
- **How old is the character?** Your character's age and physical condition play into how you interpret the song. Young characters move differently than older characters.

- **What is the character's occupation or station in life?** Knowing that your character is the local sheriff means that he dresses, carries himself, and behaves differently than the town drunk who lives in the alley behind the gas station. The drunk may slur his words, but the sheriff may be well spoken.
- **What does the character look like?** Knowing the character's occupation gives you your first clues to how the character looks and carries himself. The town drunk probably is disheveled, with wrinkled clothes and a red face from too much alcohol. The rest of the details you can glean from the text. If you're in a theater production, often the other characters in the show say things about your character, and you can use this information to help you further decide what your character may look like.
- **Who are you singing to?** If your song is from a musical or opera, you usually know who you're singing the song to. With songs on the radio, you generally get to decide who you're singing to — even if that person isn't in the room. You simply imagine that the person is in the room and pretend that you see their reaction. All those conversations that you have with people who aren't in the room — such as when you argue with your boss while you're brushing your teeth — use the same kind of visualization you do while you sing your song. You pretend that your boss reacts and you reply. Same goes for your song: Choose someone to sing to and decide how that person reacts to what you say.
- **What do you want from the person you're singing to?** Do you want them to leave you alone and move out of the apartment? Or do you want them to forgive you for something you said or did?
- **How does your character change during the course of the song, and what stage is the character in during this song?** Eliza Doolittle changes drastically during the course of *My Fair Lady.* By knowing the story, you know what stage of character development she's in when you sing her song. If your song isn't from a show, do your detective work to determine the facts from the lyrics, and then choose what you think should happen during the course of your song. Keep your scenario simple.
- **Where does this song take place?** Knowing where the story takes place can also change how you sing a song. If the setting of your song is the middle of a hot summer afternoon, that's very different than singing a song as you watch a blizzard outside your window. Marc Cohn sang "Walking in Memphis," which gives a clear picture of where the song is taking place. Even if it's not spelled out in black and white, make a choice about where the song is set and picture that place in your mind.

Knowing your character's background gets you to dig for the basic information available about your character. Allow yourself some time to digest the lyrics as you're working on the song. See the big picture first. Summarize the details and

then move on to the smaller details. You want to know about both the inner and outer lives of the character.

If you know this basic information about your character, you know whether this person is similar to you or the exact opposite. Personally, I love playing characters who are opposite from my own personality. What better way to live a secret life?

Discovering your character's motivation

Singing is a way of expressing huge, heightened emotions. A song conveys feelings so big that the character can't just say it; they have to sing about it. Just in case you don't rush into song every few minutes in your everyday life, keep reading to discover how you can get to that huge, heightened sense of awareness that makes you just want to burst out singing.

Before singing a song, you want to know a few things. You want to know what happened just before this song to motivate your character to sing and say the words. Why does your character sing, and how does your character intend to overcome any obstacles? In this section, you uncover the answers in some familiar songs so you can fill in the blanks about your own song. Some songs aren't from a musical or opera. For these songs, you need to do enough work with the text that your imagination leads you to the right answers.

Some event usually motivates the character to sing a song. Maybe the character has a problem to overcome, is in a predicament they want to change, or they want to help someone. The character needs some sort of predicament, good or bad, to sing. The obstacles the character encounters also are pretty important. The predicament or obstacle can be unrequited love, happiness so intense you have to tell the world, or a bad relationship that you don't know how to end.

For example, Aunt Eller in *Oklahoma!* sings "The Farmer and the Cowman Should be Friends" because she wants the men to stop fighting and get along. In the movie *The Wizard of Oz,* the Lion is motivated to sing "If I Were The King of the Forest" because he wants courage, and he's tired of being afraid. Another song with a specific motivation is "Return to Sender," which you may have heard Elvis Presley sing. He's motivated to sing the song because his letters keep coming back, even though he's said he's sorry, and it's breaking his heart.

Planning actions to get something done

You want to plan an action that helps your character get what they want. An action sounds like something that you have to leap around the stage to accomplish, but it's not. You can stand still and have a plan of action. After you decide why you're

singing the song, you create a plan to get what you want and overcome the obstacle. An example of an *aria* (a song from an opera) that illustrates a specific action comes from the opera Carmen. Carmen is arrested, and Don José is supposed to take her to prison. She sings the aria "Seguidilla" to entice Don José into letting her go. Her plan of action is to get him to release her, and she gets her way because she seduces him with her body and voice.

If you're standing and singing a song without the set, costume, and a scene partner, you visualize and think through those actions as you're singing. A fun example of action in a song is "Call Me Maybe" by Carly Rae Jepsen. It's clear that she wants him to notice her and she does fun things in the video to get his attention. Thinking about all those actions (what I'm doing to get what I want) is what you want to do while you're singing.

Getting Physical

Most singers feel stiff if they just stand still and sing a song. Knowing how to move, where to move, and what to move when you sing keeps you looking good as you sing. When singing a song, your choices are to stand still or move around the stage. You find some advice on how much to move in the section, "Movin' and groovin' with your song," later in this chapter, and you get help with gesturing as you're singing in the section, "Gesturing appropriately," later in this chapter. Because focusing your eyes is important for your song, you find out just ahead who to look at while you're performing — and why keeping your eyes open keeps your audience connected to you while you sing.

Figuring out where to focus

When singing a song, you can sometimes look in one spot and sometimes look around. Knowing the story of your song helps you understand the type of song you're singing, and this understanding tells you where to focus your eyes. If you're talking to just one person, you may focus on the back wall or a place out in front of you. An example of a song in which you may talk to just one person is "I Can't Make You Love Me," by Mike Reid and Allen Shamblin. If that person isn't in the room, but you're daydreaming of him, you may gaze out into the distance longingly. An example is Elton John singing for Princess Diana's funeral. She wasn't present, but you knew that he was singing to her. Your eyes may move around when you're talking to a group of people, but they don't move like you're watching a tennis match. The eyes linger in one place for a thought and then shift on the next thought or section.

Notice other people as they're telling a story: Their eyes automatically look around in different ways. When you're trying to remember something, you may look up at the ceiling. This is a common reflex when you're trying to dig something out of your memory bank. When you're watching one person, you may hold your gaze on that person and not look away. If you start to think about what you're saying, you may look away from your audience as you think. These are all natural and normal movements of your eyes. When singing a song, you can also have this same natural movement of your eyes moving away from the person you're addressing and then back.

REMEMBER

Closing your eyes isn't the best option when you want to act and sing. In everyday conversations with other people, you keep your eyes open. You don't have a conversation with someone and close your eyes unless you're lying on the couch talking to someone across the room. Singing a song involves having a conversation with someone and telling a story. You want your eyes open to talk to your audience. Closing your eyes cuts off your biggest means of communicating with your audience. They're left out because, by closing your eyes, you're communicating only with yourself. Give your audience a reason to look at you and watch you when you sing.

If you get distracted looking someone in the eye as you're singing, try looking at their hairline instead. Try it sometime on some friends and ask them if they can tell whether you're looking them in the eye. More often than not, they probably have no idea. Ask your friend to do the same to you so you can see what you look like. Try this until you're comfortable singing your song and maintaining your focus on your task.

Gesturing appropriately

The big question beginning singers ask is what to do with their hands. Well, what do you do with your hands as you speak? If your hands normally move when you speak, you may feel stiff if they remain frozen at your side during your song. Work the song as a monologue to discover what's happening and how the character may react to the actions in the story. Basically, you gesture when you react. For example, think about how you'd move in reaction to "Whoa! Don't bring that spider any closer to me!" Or how would your hands gesture if you were saying, "I wanted to buy that doll, but the woman snatched it out of my hand" or "Here I am!" or "When are you going to clean up this incredibly messy room?" If you recognize the same kind of opportunities in a song, you feel more like yourself gesturing with your hands than trying to plan something interesting to do during your song.

You may have noticed that when you gestured and said the phrases, your arms moved to gesture and then dropped. For singing, you want the gesture to match the pace of the song. You want to gesture and then release the gesture and move

your arms and hands back down if your song is an *up-tempo* (faster paced song) but the gestures in a ballad move slower to match the pace of the song. On the other hand, sometimes people go too far in gesturing by holding the gesture for a long time. You may look frozen as if you aren't sure how to put your hands down.

TIP

The following exercise gets your hands in the right place for gesturing:

1. **Put your hands by your side.**
2. **With your thumbs leading the way, move your hands up toward each other and then out in a big arc, with your elbows away from your body and your palms up and open.**
3. **Draw the Chanel logo — two back-to-back Cs,)(— in the air.**

   Start with your hands at your side and trace your hands from the bottom of each C until your hands are out to the side of your body, with your hands about as high as your shoulders. To make the gesture look natural, you want distance between your elbows and the sides of your body.

Gestures can vary widely, but this is the most basic shape of a gesture. As you practice this movement, you'll be able to do it faster and vary it slightly by using just one arm or by moving your arms higher for those times you need a big emphasis for your text.

Avoid these gesturing pitfalls:

- **Pantomiming:** Pantomimic gestures only mime the text. For example, if you plan specific movements without thinking about why they help your story, such as lifting your hand to the sky when you say the words "Moon and stars," or placing your hand on your chest when you say "heart," you're not doing your job as an actor. What roles do those two elements play in your story? Your audience knows exactly where to find the moon and stars — give them something more. Pantomime may work if you're creating a comic character, and pantomime is one way to play the character. However, serious songs work best when the gestures come from what you're saying and thinking about the song, not from pantomime.
- **Choreographed moves:** If your song is fun and spunky, allow your joy of singing the song to reflect through your story. You don't need to plan any movements before you do your work on the text of your song. You want the gesture to feel organic, as if you're experiencing it for the first time every time you sing the song. If you've chosen a dance number for your song, you can assume that some movement is in order. Singing while dancing requires a great deal of stamina. Plan where to breathe in the song so you can practice your breath control.

TRANSLATING A SONG IN A FOREIGN LANGUAGE

Singing in another language is common in classical music. But singing a song in another language doesn't let you off the hook with your responsibilities as an actor. You want to know exactly what's happening in each phrase so you can deliver each word with conviction.

- **Create a word-for-word translation.** The first step is to look up each word so you know exactly what you're saying. It's tough to find the operative word in the line if you aren't sure what half of the words mean. When you find the definition for each word, create a paraphrased version of the text in English. If the word-for-word translation turns out to be, "To you with love I only," you can paraphrase to "I love only you," which makes perfect sense.
- **Compare the word-for-word translation with a paraphrased version of the text.** You may find the paraphrased version on the copy of your song underneath the foreign-language text. Remember that you can't really commit to the paraphrase until you know which word means what in the original language. Sometimes the poetic translation underneath the original text has little to do with the original meaning of the poem. Always do your own translation as well, just to check.
- **Practice speaking the word-for-word translation in English, the paraphrase in English, and the text in the foreign language.** After you do all your homework, you want to work the text as a monologue, both in English and in the foreign language. The operative words in the English language may not be in the same order as in the foreign language. Strive to be a great actor and singer, regardless of the language or style of music.

Some of the newer books being published for classical songs or songs from operas, called arias, include word-for-word translations and paraphrases of the text. If you want to sink your teeth into the language, search online for websites that translate text and offer a pronunciation guide as well as the definitions of the words. You can also consult numerous websites that offer an aural pronunciation guide so you can hear the text spoken aloud.

Movin' and groovin' with your song

When you sing for an audience, you want the listener to both see and hear you connect your story and singing. Whatever movements you make around a stage or around the room need to enhance your singing and the story. Being able to move

and sing is important, yet starting small is best. Consider these tips on coordinating movement with music:

- At home, practice singing while doing simple tasks, just to practice doing two things at once.
- When you're comfortable moving and singing, speak through your song lyrics and notice what gestures you make. Knowing how you gesture when you speak helps you figure out how to move when you're singing.
- Some songs don't require much movement. Err on the busy side at first when you're practicing, and then pare the movements until you're sure that you're moving in response to what you're saying. Just moving for its own sake when you're singing doesn't enhance your song.

If singing is new to you, adding some sort of movement may be too much for you right now. Take it one step at a time when you're figuring out how to perform your new technique with a new song.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Identifying the root of the anxiety
- Tackling the anxiety by preparing
- Evaluating your progress at each performance

Chapter 19
Confronting Your Fear of Performing

Performance anxiety is a big problem among performers of all kinds and at all levels of experience. Finding ways of dealing with anxiety and turning nerves and adrenaline into positive forces in your performance are just as important as great technique. For the times when those butterflies in your stomach get out of hand, this chapter offers some dependable methods of working through your anxiety.

Facing the Symptoms

Knowing what you're afraid of is half the battle. After you pinpoint the source of your fear, you can take charge of it.

These fears are the most common fears:

- Cracking during the performance and not being able to hit the high note
- Looking stupid in front of friends

- Forgetting the words to the song
- Fearing success or failure, rejection, or the unknown

Naming the fear enables you to go after the problem and beat it. Throughout this chapter, you can read about the common concerns and determine what's scaring you. After you find the source, move forward and find a solution to eliminate the whole problem, not just the symptom.

REMEMBER

You may find comforting the knowledge that thousands of other singers face the same icky anxiety you feel right before a performance. The symptoms include butterflies in the stomach, shaky knees, dry mouth (sometimes called cotton-mouth), a sudden urge to cry or run away, trembling hands, a racing heart rate, nausea, cold hands but sweaty underarms, and the urge to pee no matter how many times you visit the bathroom. Did you find any of your symptoms on that list? I certainly see mine.

News flash: Adrenaline isn't the enemy! In all honesty, you want a little adrenaline to boost your performance.

Assuming that you must be calm before a performance sets you up for pangs of anxiety when you don't turn out to be as cool as a cucumber. Expecting to be nervous and jittery, on the other hand, can enable you to sing through your anxiety. In fact, you can use the fight-or-flight excitement of adrenaline coursing through your body to enhance your performance. In reframing your thoughts about the performance, you change from fight-or-flight adrenaline to a rush of excitement that can help you seize an opportunity.

RUNNING IN PLACE SIMULATES ADRENALINE

TIP

A rush of adrenaline brings about a racing heart. You can duplicate that feeling by running in place until you're out of breath . . . and then singing your song. Being out of breath while you practice helps you get used to singing phrases when you desperately want to just exhale and not sing. Breathlessness is similar to what happens when anxiety strikes during a performance. Every time you take the breath, you can feel it falling into your body. As it falls into your body, realize that you can sing even when your heart is pounding. It's just not easy.

Alleviating Anxiety through Preparation

With your symptoms out in the open, you can talk about how to relieve your anxiety. Make a choice to change your thoughts about your performance. If you continually dread the symptoms that you know are going to arise, you won't get past the first paragraph without thinking that this tactic won't work. So remind yourself that you're anxious because you fear something; the symptoms don't just randomly appear.

Practicing well

The biggest key to alleviating anxiety is preparation. *Preparing* isn't the same as overpracticing or aiming for perfection. *Overpracticing* is practicing so much that you lose sight of the joy of singing and focus only on singing perfectly. Aiming for perfection takes the fun out of singing because everything becomes a contest, if only with yourself.

The following pointers can help get you prepared for performing.

- **Stay positive and motivated as you practice.** Figure out a way to motivate yourself. What kind of reward do you need to get yourself to practice regularly? People who don't like being alone often don't like to practice. You must recognize that and then be disciplined to do your work. Your positive thinking during your practice sessions carries over into your performance.
- **Set goals for each practice session.** The first practice session goal may be to successfully sing through the song without words to find consistent breath flow (see Chapter 4). The second practice session goal may be to keep that same easy flow of breath as you sing the words. Trying to tackle too many goals at once causes frustration.
- **Practice at the level you intend to perform.** You have to practice all the details of your song separately, and then gradually put them all together until you consistently create the sounds that you want to create in your performance.
- **Set a deadline for memorizing the song.** Your long-term memory needs to have locked in the melody and words of the song. If you attempt to memorize the song the night before the performance, you may be overwhelmed trying to deal with the excitement of performing and the details of remembering the words at the same time.

TIP

I recommend having the song memorized at least one week before a performance. You then have seven days to work on the song without looking at the music. If you're singing a group of songs, you may want to have them memorized earlier so you have time to work with the accompanist and work on your acting objectives (see Chapter 18) as you use your singing technique.

- **Speak quickly through your text to help you remember the words.** Forgetting the words of a song that you've memorized usually happens because your concentration momentarily slips. For example, you may start thinking about being happy that the high note sounded good and, suddenly, as you're getting back to business, you have no idea where you are in the song. Practicing your concentration and speaking quickly through the text on a regular basis helps you commit the text to your long-term memory, not just your short-term memory. After you memorize the text of your song, speak the words aloud quickly without pausing for punctuation.

Playing to your strengths

Doing things that you know you're good at builds confidence and relieves anxiety. Setting yourself up for success by playing to your strengths makes even more sense when you're nervous about performing.

TIP

Use the following tips to put yourself in a winning frame of mind:

- **Choose pieces that enhance your strengths.** Singing one song in a performance means that you have an opportunity to find a piece that really shows your areas of expertise. When you need to choose ten minutes of music, the task naturally gets harder, but finding the appropriate material is part of the preparation. Chapter 16 deals with choosing music.
- **Focus on your strengths.** Singing songs that require agility is a great goal when you feel confident with that material. If not, make the performance showcase your fabulous tone, breath control, or any other aspect that you feel confident sharing.

Managing your thoughts

Performers who don't experience performance anxiety may tell you to just get over it and stop being afraid. I like to call those people adrenaline junkies. They love that rush of adrenaline just before the performance. But trying to stop being afraid may only frustrate you. You have to deal with your anxiety, which is different from adrenaline. Anxiety adds a sickening sensation on top of the adrenaline.

You don't want to stop the adrenaline — you want to eliminate the underlying fear that leads to anxiety about performing.

WARNING

Anxiety brings negative thoughts into your head. Negative thoughts may try to convince you that you're going to forget the words even though you know the song well. Just hearing so much busy talking inside your head can ruin your concentration and make you forget the words.

Sometimes you can use negative practice to find the extremes of your symptoms. Try making the symptoms worse the next time you practice — for instance, visualize or imagine a critical audience. You may experience some symptoms of anxiety. Notice what those symptoms are and how you feel about the audience. As you feel that sense of dread, sing through your music. Visualize yourself being able to complete your task, regardless of how grumpy your imaginary audience looks.

Making a list of the negative thoughts that frequently pop into your mind is a way to manage your thoughts. Facing those thoughts helps you recognize that they aren't helpful and can prompt a switch to positive thoughts instead. Making a list of affirmations to counter your negative thoughts also can help you retrain your mind to focus on the positive. Affirmations include saying things such as, "My singing is improving each day" and "I'm confident that my breath control gets better with each practice session." Some people find it helpful to combine their affirmations with tapping. Check out `www.thetappingsolution.com` for sample videos on using tapping for anxiety.

TIP

You can create a performance cue that summarizes your goal and helps you focus on the positive. For example, your performance cue can be "Release and breathe" (release tension when you open the muscles in the body to inhale) or "Drop and open" (release all the way down into your feet as you inhale and open the back space for the next phrase). Keep the cue positive — something to do instead of what *not* to do. Instead of saying "Don't mess up," you can use "Stay focused" as a positive cue that helps you remember to stay in the moment.

Getting up the nerve

Your thoughts may turn to the audience whenever you become concerned about what they think of you and your singing. You can't get rid of the audience; after all, an audience is a necessity for your performance. You can, however, pretend that the members of the audience aren't really in the audience. You don't have to sing directly to the audience or look them in the eyes. You can look over their heads so you don't have to worry about reading the expression on their faces when you look them right in the eyes.

Doing your job as you sing means that you must tell a story. Insecurity can lead you to believe that everyone is looking at you harshly. Reframing your thoughts so that you accept the audience and let go of the hostile image you may have of the audience can go a long way toward overcoming your doubts. You've probably heard this suggestion for overcoming stage fright: Imagine that all the people in the audience are sitting in their underwear. You can also remind yourself that the audience chose to attend your performance, and they want to hear you sing well.

Building performance focus

Have you ever been so focused on a task that you lost track of time or were startled when someone came up behind you? You want this same kind of focus as you perform. Focus totally on your task at hand, leaving the rest of the stuff for later.

TIP

To help you practice concentrating, try these suggestions:

- **Stage some distractions.** Practice in front of an audience of friends and ask them to randomly whisper, rustle paper, drop a book, or stand up and walk around while you're singing. The first few times, you may lose your composure, but just laugh it off and keep trying until you can hold your concentration and ignore the distractions.
- **Practice concentration.** Set a timer for five minutes and practice focusing totally on your singing for those five minutes. Five minutes may seem like a short amount of time — until you have to fill it with only one task. You may find your mind wandering and thinking about something else. That's okay. Set the timer and try again.

  Working up to concentrating for the full five minutes may take a few days. You can also practice focusing and then intentionally letting your mind wander so you can tell the difference.
- **Leave distractions at the door.** That fight you had earlier in the day, the report that's due tomorrow, your upcoming vacation — any number of everyday concerns may occupy your mind. Create a ceremony that enables you to leave those distractions at the door.

  For example, you may want to put a basket outside your practice room door and mentally dump all your worries and frustrations into it before you enter the room. You can also write a to-do list before your session so you know exactly what you need to think about right after you practice. Acknowledge that you still have to resolve those issues in your mind, and then move to the current task at hand.

CRACKING ISN'T THE END OF THE WORLD

Cracking happens when the singing muscles stop working properly just long enough for the sound to stop. Maintaining a steady flow of air, especially on high notes, helps prevent the crack. Sometimes singers crack when they're suffering from severe allergy problems or other ailments that make their voices feel different. Young singers may crack as they figure out how to sing higher notes. Young men may experience some cracking during puberty and afterward as they discover how to sing higher notes without too much pressure in the throat.

Giving yourself permission to experience the crack enables your body to release some of the tension associated with the fear. Ninety-nine percent of the time, whenever I give my students permission to crack or ask them to please let the note crack just to know what it feels like, they don't crack. Give yourself permission to not be perfect. It's impossible to be perfect. If you average the one note that isn't so perfect with the other hundred notes in the song, you have pretty slim odds for cracking.

And if you do crack on a high note, it isn't the end of the world. I've seen singers crack, and members of the audience didn't boo, because they understood that it was just part of the growing experience for that singer. The first time I saw a professional crack in a concert, I was secretly thrilled — not because the singer cracked, but because he kept going, with the understanding that his voice wasn't working properly at that one moment in time. The rest of the notes in the concert were glorious, but the cracked one gave me hope.

The fear of cracking may disappear after you sing the same phrase several times without any problem. Make a list of all the things you have to do when you sing (your practice to-do list from Chapter 10) and keep practicing them until you can do them all at the same time. You may have to practice doing two skills at once before you try to do four. Practicing these skills helps prevent cracking: keeping a steady flow of air moving as you sing (see Chapter 4), opening your throat (see Chapter 6), and knowing your capabilities by understanding what your voice can do in each area, such as your head voice (see Chapter 11). Enabling yourself to do several things at one time takes courage and determination. Practice your singing skills until the tasks are second nature (long-term memory) and don't require your full attention. You can drive your car, change the station on the radio, and have a conversation with the person in the passenger's seat all at the same time. You can certainly apply this same process to singing.

You may find that acting helps you sing the high note without cracking. You may get so caught up with your story in the heat of the moment that you go to sing the high note and the breath just moves for you. How cool is that?

TIP

One of my colleagues gave me two pieces of great advice a few years ago: "Never let anyone live in your head rent free" and "Have conversations only with people who are in the room." Table any conversations in your head with people who aren't in the room with you. What great advice!

Performing to Build Confidence

Even with all the tips I offer in these sections, you must perform to get over performance anxiety. Put yourself in the hot seat on a regular basis to find your groove. Basketball players practice their shots so their bodies remember those sensations in the heat of the moment. You, too, must put your skills to the test in the heat of the moment. You know you're ready to take it public when:

- You have a burning desire to move past the anxiety.
- Your technical skills are polished enough that you can depend on them.
- You find a song that complements your current abilities.

TIP

Find a small gig to get you started. By *gig*, I mean anywhere you can sing. Sing for one friend, then for your family, and then for a small gathering, such as at a nursing home. Sing in the church choir with the group, and then sing a solo for a Sunday school class before singing it for the entire congregation. Or sing with the community chorus: Sing with the chorus, then sing small solos, and then shoot for the solo in front of the community.

Devising a game plan

For every performance, make a plan of action for success. Assuming that you're going to succeed means that you will. Assuming that you're going to fail is the same as giving in to those voices in your head.

Reframe those stupid things people have said to you in the past about your performing abilities. Being critical is human nature, but remember that it's only one person's opinion. If I'd listened to things people said to me, I'd never have written this book or dared to be a singer in New York.

TIP

Try these tips to get your game plan in place:

- **Make a specific timeline to get yourself ready to sing at the time of your performance.** See Chapter 10 for more on creating a practice routine. After you develop your practice routine, you'll know how long it takes for your voice

to be ready to sing at your best. You can plan your warm-up time for the day of your performance to get ready. Consider these suggestions:

- Take time to vocalize or warm up the notes you'll sing in the performance.
- Vocalize long enough for your voice to be singing at your peak when you walk on the stage.
- On the performance day, sing through your song enough times that you feel confident, but not so many times that your voice feels tired.

- **Invite someone who helps boost your confidence.** Do you know someone who can encourage you as you walk out for the performance? Discuss your fears with this friend or confidant and then discuss your feelings after the performance. You may find that your perception of that awful note isn't what your friend heard. Having a support system with you helps you quiet negative thoughts that may creep into your head.
- **Look at each performance as an opportunity to succeed.** You have to expect success before you can achieve it. Success doesn't just happen, but you can make it happen.
- **Practice what you intend to do.** If you plan to take a moment and take a breath before you begin to sing your song, practice it that way. Taking that moment to quiet your mind and settle your racing heart is worth it. By practicing and visualizing your success, you can more easily make it happen. You can also practice walking across the stage (breathing as you walk), singing your song, and then bowing. You may have to practice this in your living room, but you want to practice what you're going to experience in the performance. (See Chapter 24 for more tips on performing well.)
- **Chart your improvement.** Make a list of what you want to accomplish, and, with each performance, shoot to accomplish one more task on the list.

  For example, the first task may be remembering all the words. By practicing with distractions at home, you boost your ability to concentrate. When you remember all the words at your first performance, you may want to try remembering the words and breathing consistently at the second performance. Just getting the breath in your body and then using it helps with many other technical problems. Give yourself a gold star when you achieve each goal.

TIP

Before singing your song in public, try it in front of some friends. If you give smaller performances a few times before your big one, the song may seem familiar and not so scary.

Evaluating your performance

Progress happens because of each step you take. After every performance, look at how you did and how you felt, using the lists in the following sections. Because everything in your life affects your singing, decide what steps worked well for you and modify the ones that didn't.

Looking at preparation and performance issues

Check the technical aspects of your performance to discover what you can improve upon. Look at what did and didn't work well, and then make adjustments for next time. Ask these questions after your performance:

- Did you rehearse enough with the accompanist or your track?
- Did you work the song enough from memory?
- What did you do well during the performance?
- Did you get enough sleep the night before or in the days before the performance?
- Was your warm-up long enough, high enough, and early or late enough in the day?
- Were you focused on the moment (or on the audience's reaction to your singing)?
- Did the steps in your pre-performance routine work well?
- Did you leave enough time for dressing?
- Did you take time to visualize the performance in your mind?

Be fair when charting your progress. Seeing gradual improvement in your quest to manage adrenaline and fear is important. Several months may pass before you feel comfortable singing in public, so give yourself some time. After each performance, list what you did well. When you accomplish more than what's on your list, recognizing that accomplishment is important. Taking consistent steps toward your goal is the key.

REMEMBER

Be brave. Take a risk. You won't know until you dare to try.

Checking your anxieties

To ease your anxiety, answer the following questions to help you remember how you felt.

- How did you feel right before the performance? If this performance is the first one you're evaluating, the answer to this question may be, "I felt unprepared, nervous, or nauseous." Recognizing these symptoms may help you realize that they aren't debilitating and may ease up over time.
- What were your symptoms of anxiety, if any? The symptoms may include sweating, a racing heart, and the urge to run away. By tracking the symptom, you can see that it lessens with each performance or that you just make the choice not to run away because you enjoy the performance after you get to the stage.
- What was your level of anxiety at the beginning of the performance? In the middle of the performance? At the end of the performance? After the performance? Many singers say their anxiety is worse just before the performance but that it goes away as they begin singing. If the anxiety hits in the middle of the performance, you're probably anticipating the high note and worrying about how to sing it. Continuing to work on your technique allows you to gain more confidence in your technique, to alleviate the stress over that part of your voice. Stress after the performance may mean that you're worried about what people may say to you after the performance.

Asking these questions helps you see your progress over the course of a few weeks or months.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Getting the lowdown on auditions
- Picking a winning song
- Preparing for the big day and more
- Finding out who and what to expect

Chapter 20
Auditioning a Song

Want to audition for the local theater or opera company? A Broadway show? Reality TV? A rock band? Before planning your debut, you need to know how to prepare for an audition. In this chapter, you explore how to choose and prepare an appropriate song for the audition. You also find out about what to expect at an audition so that you're prepared to knock their socks off!

Auditioning is a skill that you can develop. For auditions, you want to make sure that your singing technique is in tip-top shape for the style of music you want to sing. Check out Chapter 14 for training for different styles of singing. This chapter outlines what you need to know when you're ready to audition for a performance.

TIP

You may also want to get some advice from someone who understands the audition process, such as a voice teacher, acting teacher, or coach. This person can help you choose your song, hone some basic skills that will help you present yourself at the audition, and decide whether your material is good for your voice.

Tailoring Your Audition for Any Venue and Any Style of Music

Different styles of music have specific guidelines for auditioning. No matter what style you sing, here are the big things you want to keep in mind for any audition:

- **You want a great song to showcase your talent.** Sometimes you're told what to sing at an audition and sometimes you choose. Either way, you want the song to showcase you and your talent. The people you're auditioning for are meeting you through your song. What kind of song you choose and how you prepare for an audition says a lot about you.
- **You need to prove that you're an entertainer.** If you're shy, you need to step out of your shell at an audition to be a soloist. If you're auditioning, you're saying that you want to be in front of an audience and entertain people. The person hiring you needs to know that you can sell your song. Think about the successful performers you've seen. They show spunk and personality and really put themselves into their song.

The following sections include basic guidelines for auditions for different styles of music.

At the opera

In the operatic world, knowing your specific voice type or voice category, which is also called a *fach* (pronounced "*f*ahk"), and sticking to it is important. See Chapter 2 for more details about the different types of voices and voice categories. Listing only *arias* (songs from an opera) within a specific vocal category on your audition form or resume is a good idea.

WARNING

By listing arias from several different categories, you give the impression that you haven't yet determined your voice type. Check out Chapter 2 to get started.

Skills that you have to demonstrate at the opera audition include the following:

- Solid musicianship
- An ability to present the music exactly as it is written on the page
- Versatility in several languages
- Acting ability

Opera companies are looking for singers who sing well, look the part, and can also act.

Onstage at the theater

In musical theater, you need to switch your style of singing with ease. Right after you sing your lovely head voice selection, such as "I Could Have Danced All Night" from *My Fair Lady*, you may be asked for your belt song (an example of a belt song is "Tomorrow" from *Annie*) or pop-rock song (such as "Take Me or Leave Me" from *Rent*). Bouncing back and forth between the styles is expected, and you have to practice all three until they're comfy. You may find some musical theater performers who aren't belters, but you're better off knowing how to do all three.

At the musical theater audition, you're expected to use great acting skills to portray the story and take the listener on a journey in a variety of songs ranging from standards to pop-rock songs. The journey may last only 16 bars, but you have to take the audience for a ride, no matter how short the trip. You also want to dance well, or at least move really well. Sometimes auditions are held for nondancers, but most of the time you have to dance or move well to get into the musical.

TIP

Research performers who have previously played the role you're auditioning for to see whether your look is similar. After you make it through the doors, you may be *typed.* Typing at a musical theater audition doesn't mean that your fingertips fly across a keyboard. *Typing* refers to whether you're the right type for the role. The casting panel (usually made up of the casting director, director, musical director, and choreographer) look at you to determine whether you're physically right for the role. If you physically fit what they're looking for, you get to stay at the audition and sing and dance.

In the club

If you're a jazz, country, pop-rock, or R&B singer, you may want to audition for gigs in clubs. If you have a chance to audition for a local bar or nightclub (or a similar venue), your audition works much differently than an audition for opera or theater. In those genres, the show usually is already written; you're auditioning for a specific part. When you audition to play in a club, you make up the show!

You may write the music or perform groups of songs that have a particular theme to keep an audience clapping and singing along. Skills that you have to show off include great storytelling while singing and showmanship. You need a spark in your performance so that people want to watch you. For this kind of audition, you want to have a group of songs ready to show that you can hold the audience's attention for at least a half-hour set. You may sing only one song at the audition, but you want to have more options ready.

During an audition for a band, the singer sings some songs along with the band members so they can get a sense of how the singer's voice sounds and how well

that singer blends with the group. You need a good ear to hold your melody and blend with the instruments, and you need to be confident when you sing so the band follows you. Vocally, you need to purposely make varied sounds, from clear tones to breathy and wispy tones, to portray the text of the song.

REMEMBER

Club singers often perform in dark, dusty clubs late into the night and need to keep their body and voice healthy. Check out the tips on maintaining vocal health in Chapter 23.

If you're not auditioning with a band, find songs that work well with piano and don't require a back-up band to sound good. Or bring your own tracks. When you perform pop-rock or R&B, you may have to dance and sing at the same time. Showmanship counts a great deal in this business, but the showmanship should enhance great singing technique.

On television

Auditioning for television is thrilling, but it may feel like a different world if you've performed only in small theaters or the church choir. Here are some basic guidelines for auditioning your song for a televised performance:

- **Self-confidence is a must.** Being confident means letting go of your shyness but not being cocky. You want to be mentally prepared so you can handle the stress of a high-pressure audition. Self-confidence makes your audience feel at ease because they don't have to worry about you — they can enjoy your performance. Being cocky may turn them off because it may look like you think you're too good for them. You want to show a spark of star power without being arrogant.
- **The material is important.** Choose material that highlights your strength and is appropriate for the audition. You have to determine your strength and which song will show off your assets. If you aren't sure about the material, hire a reputable coach to give you feedback.
- **The camera is your friend.** If someone asks you to slate, they want you to announce your name and your song to the camera. The camera picks up every little detail, so practice in front of a camera prior to the audition. The camera on your cellphone or tablet is fine. Record yourself practicing your audition. Pay attention to your body language; do you appear confident? Ask someone who has done television auditions to give you feedback.
- **Your outfit really matters.** Wearing something that shows your body at its best is key for a television audition. The outfit should show your style and represent your personality.

Choosing Audition Songs to Highlight Your Strengths

Selecting songs to practice is different than selecting songs for an audition. You want to practice songs that expand and challenge your vocal technique. But songs for the audition need to highlight your strengths and accomplishments from all those hours of practice. When you audition, you want a variety of stories and acting choices, as well as multiple vocal timbre and good range. You also can research the audition and then highlight your strengths appropriately. The following sections explain in more detail.

REMEMBER

The hardest part of auditioning is choosing the songs to sing. Selecting songs that are perfect for you and that show off your talents is an art. This artful skill takes time to develop, so keep looking at songs to continue expanding your book of audition songs.

TIP

If you can, find out what kind of song is appropriate for your audition. If you're auditioning for musical theater in a big city, for example, the ad for the audition may tell you what kind of song to prepare. Sometimes the ad tells you to sing something from the show you're auditioning for; sometimes it tells you not to sing something from the show. You want to choose a song that's similar to the show you're auditioning for and similar to the character you want to play. Having a variety of song choices ready gives you a chance to choose something on the spot when you're asked for a contrasting song.

Showing versatility

Yes, variety is the spice of life, and your choice of songs should offer variety. A little variety gives you an opportunity to show off a well-balanced set of skills. Song number one can be a song that shows off glorious high notes, and song number two may have a sassy belt that shows off your ability to change gears quickly.

Find songs that show off your strengths as a singer, and try to find variety within each song. The biggest pitfall to avoid is choosing only songs that develop the same kind of character (or same personality) and showcase the same kind of vocal sound. If you show only one side of you, the auditioner can't see that you're a skilled performer who can sing different kinds of songs and can add variety and spice throughout the show.

The following list offers ways to show versatility at specific types of auditions:

- **Opera:** When you know your voice type, choose a variety of arias based on language and characters that you think fit you and your voice. (If you don't know your voice type, check out Chapter 2 for the basics of voice types.) The most common languages the opera company expects you to know or to sing well in are French, German, Italian, and English. Get some help from your coach on polishing your languages so that you sound like you actually speak the language, even if you don't.
- **Musical theater:** At many musical theater auditions, you may be asked to sing a pop song, but to show a variety of song styles, you want to have early musical theater songs (not just the shows that have been written in the last ten years), later songs, and pop-rock songs, too. Often singers confine themselves to singing contemporary songs, but to show versatility, they choose one ballad and one up-tempo song from the top three broad categories: musical theater songs written before 1960, musical theater songs written after 1960, and pop-rock songs. If you have one song from each of these three periods, continue to branch out and add more contrasting songs to your repertoire that highlight your voice and acting skills.
- **Radio songs:** If you're auditioning with a song from the radio in pop-rock, country, or R&B, you want to show the versatility of your voice. Choose a song that shows off your vocal skills. You have to show that you can belt the high notes and make it sound like it's easy, use the right kind of sound for the style, and prove that you can entertain an audience. The sound for a rock song isn't the same as the sound for an aria — see Chapter 13 for help with your belt and Chapters 11 and 12 for help with the registers of your voice.

TIP

Some auditions require that you sing *a capella* (without accompaniment). Choose a song that sounds good without accompaniment and one that you can confidently sing without backup. Record your practice sessions so that you're aware of how your voice sounds on your song and how well it works when you're singing alone.

Connecting with the lyrics

You can't choose a song just because you sing it well. If you just sing it well, you can sell a recording instead of asking an audience to watch you sing it. When you find a song that you sing really well, you need to figure out how to make it work for you as an actor. Keep these tips in mind:

- **Don't sing a song if you don't like the words.** Make sure that you can relate to the story. Take the time to really home in on a great story that supports the song and gives you a reason to sing it. Check out Chapter 18 for some help on telling a story while singing.

- **Choose age-appropriate stories.** A 15-year-old could choose an age-appropriate story about growing up in a small town but shouldn't be singing about struggling to pay the mortgage.
- **Make sure the stories in the songs vary to show different aspects of your personality and acting abilities.** After you find that wonderful ballad about your long-lost love, find a funny song that shows off your comic timing, or another song that contrasts with the love song. The two songs should vary in tempo to create even more contrast. But don't get off the bus yet. Stay on and keep searching for a song that shows off fire and determination.

Avoiding the wrong audition song

WARNING

It's the wrong audition song if one of these conditions applies:

- You don't like the song.
- It's out of your league as a singer or musician. For example, the song is out of your range, most notes sit too high, or it's too difficult musically.
- If the audition is live with an accompanist playing the piano and not a track, then make sure the copy of the song you bring works with only a piano. Listen to the accompaniment played on the website where you purchased the music to check out how it sounds with a piano. Some songs really need the whole band to sound good and others sound great with just a piano.
- The song makes the listener think of the famous person who made the song a hit. You want the listener to hear you and focus attention on you. Finding great songs that no one famous has performed is hard, but be aware of this point as you're choosing your song. If you remember that famous performance, chances are good that someone else will too. The reality-show contestants who sing the famous song really well are the ones who figured out how to make the song their own.
- You couldn't sing the song on your worst day. If you constantly have to be aware of your singing technique when you sing it, choose something else.
- Making a 30-second cut is impossible.
- You can't get through the song without crying.
- Every accompanist you've worked with has trouble sight reading it.
- The song is really negative. Because singers should choose songs that represent their personality and their skills, a negative song may make you look negative. Most people prefer to work with someone positive.

- The song is overdone. The eternal question is "What's overdone?" Each year, the answer to this question can change. Assume that if it's a song that everyone knows and loves to sing, it's probably done quite a bit. If you have a copy of the song in a popular music book, so do several thousand other people. You don't have to find obscure songs, but if ten other people sang your favorite song at the last audition, it may be overdone.

Choosing the key

I highly recommend that you try to find the song in the key that is best for your voice. If you sing a song that's in the wrong key, you may end up sounding more like Kermit the Frog than Kelly Clarkson or John Legend on those high notes. See Chapter 16 for websites that allow you to find out what key sheet music is in or choose the key you want before you buy it. Opera arias are seldom transposed. You may find art songs in different keys, but the arias are usually sung in the original key. Keep reading for help if you plan to sing something other than arias at your audition.

REMEMBER

You can't assume that your audition accompanist can or will transpose by sight (put the song in a higher or lower key while playing). An accompanist may refuse to transpose at sight if the song is just too difficult, and it's their choice. You don't want them to transpose something at your audition if they think they may mess it up. You need the piano to sound really good as you sing.

Still, if you finally find a wonderful song that's almost perfect for you — maybe the notes are a tad too low or too high — you can transpose it. When a song is transposed, someone — you or someone you hire — puts the song in a key other than the one it was originally written in so the melody sounds higher or lower.

If you transpose your song (or have someone else do it), keep these points in mind:

- **You may want the beginning of the song much higher, but that means that the tricky middle section also gets higher.** It's one thing to have some really cool high notes, yet it's quite another to sing those cool high notes over and over when you raise the key. Look at the range and tessitura (where most of the notes sit in the song) to determine how much higher or lower to change the key. Practice the song in the new key, whether higher or lower, to make sure that you can manage all the notes in the new key.

- **Download in a different key.** The easiest way to get your song in another key is to go back to the website where you purchased the digital version and download it in a different key. Most sites allow you to see the copy of the music (or at least the first page) so you can make sure it is the key you like. Even if you don't read music, you can look and see if those notes you really need changed are now higher or lower. The second easiest way is to use your computer to transpose the music using software like Finale.
- **Make sure that you have an accompanist read the transposed copy of your music before the audition.** It won't take long for someone to play through it, and then you know exactly how it sounds in the new key and whether this key really does fit your voice.

Making the cut

In the beginning of your audition quest, you may not have the opportunity to sing your entire song. For each song that you plan to sing at your audition, choose 16 bars or 8 bars (called a *cut*) in advance and prepare this selection. Still, knowing the entire song is best, just in case you're asked to sing it. Opera companies and many local community auditions, for example, may allow you to sing the whole song. That opportunity is great for you, but even in these situations, be prepared with a cut, in case they start to run late.

A bar or measure is what's between the bar lines. Notice the vertical line going down through the five lines on the musical staff. That's a bar line. In between two bar lines is a *measure* (which is also known as a *bar*).

When you cut the song, you can count out the measures or assume that you have about 30 seconds to sing. That's a short amount of time, so make the most of it. When deciding on the 16 bars, keep these points in mind:

- The 16 measures (or 16 bars) need a sense of completion. The cut must make sense lyrically, and the music must have a sense of completion. Successful cuts are often the last 16 bars or go from the middle of the song (called the bridge) to the end.
- The biggest mistake is assuming that you can start at the beginning and just go until the end. You're going to be cut off, and that cutoff may happen right before the best part of the song.
- In the heat of the moment, choosing which section to sing is difficult. Making the decision before the audition gives you time to think about the cut, practice the cut to make sure that you really get to say something, practice hearing the starting note, and then start on that phrase.

- Choose a section that really shows off your vocal range and your acting abilities.
- These sites offer ready-made cuts of musical theater songs and pop-rock songs. Check them out if trying to figure out the cut on your own is too stressful:
  - `www.halleonard.com` has books of audition cuts from musical theater songs.
  - `www.musicnotes.com` has cuts of pop-rock songs.

Marking the music

As you rehearse and prepare your music, highlight whatever an accompanist may find tricky in the song. If you're taking it to a pianist to play it for you, ask them to mark it. Assuming that you're on your own and feel confident that you can mark your music yourself, use a highlighter and highlight the following on your printed music or the digital copy:

- **Directional symbols,** such as a repeat sign, and *DS al Coda* are signs that require an accompanist to go back somewhere in the song. (See the latest edition of *Music Theory For Dummies* by Michael Pilhofer and Holly Day [John Wiley & Sons, Inc.], for an explanation of these markings.) For classical auditions, the accompanist probably knows that piece and music is more similar between publications. They may not mind turning the pages back to find the repeat. Highlight the repeats so that the accompanist can see them ahead of time. You can also point out the marking so that the accompanist knows how to map out the page turns. Expecting an accompanist to turn back in other styles is tricky because the song arrangements don't all look the same. Copy the pages again so they can continue reading the song straight through without having to turn back.
- **Tempo changes** that are important and that may not be well marked in the music. You can provide your starting tempo, but mark any changes so that the accompanist can easily follow along.
- **Places where you ad-lib what's on the page.** If you're singing a section very freely, mark it so that the accompanist can follow you, or create chords to support you while you ad-lib or riff.

TIP

KEEPING TRACK OF YOUR AUDITIONS

In addition to your collection of songs for audition purposes, keep a journal or an Excel spreadsheet noting your auditions. Record what you sang, who was at the audition, where the audition was held, who helped you get the audition, what kind of audition it was, whether you got a callback or a job offer, any comments that were made during the interview, and the names of the people you met. It's surprising how fast you can forget these details.

When you go back to sing for the same company at a later date, you want to refresh yourself on what changes they asked you to make to your song, to see whether you're easy to direct; who was there so you can say hello; which songs they liked or didn't like so you can choose something else, if necessary; and any other information that may improve the next audition.

Rehearsing with an accompanist

Hearing a pianist play your song or aria before you take it to an audition is important. If you don't read music, this is even more important. You may erroneously assume that your song is the exact same version that you heard on the radio, so it may come as quite a shock when you hear your song for the first time at an audition and have no earthly idea what those sounds are. Remember that publishing companies often publish songs in keys that are easy to play. If the singer on the radio sings the song in a really hard key with many *accidentals* (sharp, flat, or natural signs placed before individual notes to indicate that they're a half step higher or lower), the publishing company may change the key to make it more accessible to beginning pianists.

TIP

Singers who also play guitar may really enjoy accompanying themselves for an audition. Adrenaline may cause your hands to shake, so practice in front of an audience before the audition to work out the nerves. When you audition or practice with a guitar, you want to maintain your alignment, coordinate your breath just as you do with the exercises in Chapter 4, and look at your audience. You can look at your guitar, but look up frequently so that the audience can see your eyes and connect with you.

By having a pianist read your music for you before an audition, you get an opportunity to check the key to make sure that it's exactly in the range where you want to sing. The following sections explain what an accompanist can do for you.

Taking the lead

Your voice teacher may have been playing the song for you, and you may be comfortable with that version. When you take it to someone else to read it for you, you have to be much more specific when you lead.

REMEMBER

A good pianist waits to hear the consonant on the downbeat before playing the chord. If you wait to hear the chord from the pianist, you may be waiting a long time. You may get an audition pianist who wants to lead you, but that usually happens because you're not leading or the accompanist feels like you're in trouble. Sometimes the pianist speeds up if you're struggling to maintain the airflow in longer phrases because they assume that you won't struggle so much. You have to be confident enough to lead and know that, when you lead, the accompanist will follow.

The speed with which you take your first breath also indicates your tempo. If you take a quick breath, the accompanist assumes that the song is going to move out. If your first breath is slow and deliberate, they can assume that the piece is going to move slowly.

Getting help with musical notation

The pianist can check the cuts you made or new directional markings that you inserted. If they have trouble following the markings, ask them how to write it out to make it clear to someone who's never seen the song.

If you've changed the key and put new chord symbols over the line to indicate the new sequence of chords, make sure that the pianist checks these for you. One tiny error can lead you to the wrong high note at the end.

You may also want to ask the pianist to help you mark the song to make your needs clear. If you want to slow down at the end or get louder in one section, ask them to help you mark the piece so that any accompanist can read ahead and see those changes coming. If your tempo is really important, you may want to ask the pianist to write in a tempo marking to indicate exactly the speed at which you want to sing. The audition pianist can see the marking and estimate your desired tempo.

Preparing the Music

You have several options for preparing music for an audition, which I discuss in greater detail in the following sections:

- Preparing hard copies of sheet music for an accompanist to read
- Bringing a digital copy of the music on an electronic device for the live accompanist to read
- Playing a track from your electronic device

TIP

Stay flexible and know that the most important part of the audition is how you present you and your singing voice. The technical side of how you play the accompaniment may seem complicated but keep your focus on how much fun it is to perform rather than any complications.

Preparing hard copies

Preparing music for auditions is an art, and notebook preparation is a big part of your audition success. If your music is easy to read and the accompanist plays it well, your audition will run smoothly. Having a notebook with songs is common in all types of auditions.

REMEMBER

The biggest rule of notebook preparation is that whatever is in your notebook or on your digital device is fair game at the audition. The audition panel will most likely ask you what you want to sing first. If you sing your favorite song and they ask to hear something else, be sure that your notebook of audition songs includes only songs you've rehearsed.

TIP

To prepare your songs for your audition notebook, follow these guidelines:

- **Punch holes in the music and insert the pages into a three-ring notebook.** Put the sheets back to back, just like they appear in a book or copy the music double-sided, and punch the holes. When turning the page, the accompanist should see two new pages of music just like a book. Tape (don't staple!) the sheets together on the top and bottom-right corners if your pages aren't double-sided.

  Another option is to photocopy the song and slip the pages back to back into nonglare sheet protectors. You can purchase them at most office supply stores. Be sure to purchase the nonglare protectors so the lights in the room don't create a glare.

  Some pianists refuse to play music in nonglare sheet protectors in a notebook, and some love it. If nonglare sheet protectors aren't an option, copy the music and tape the pages to file folders (or something that stands up easily and won't blow over), or tape the pages together so they're connected and the pianist can spread out the music on the music rack. You want the pages to be connected with tape because a breeze in the room can blow away single sheets.

- **Find a copy of the music because original handwritten scores are hard to read.** When the earlier musical theater shows were written, the composer wrote out the music by hand. Those older copies of handwritten original scores are difficult to read. If you have to err on the safe side, find a copy of the music that's a little easier to read. Chapter 16 offers tips on finding digital music and information on Real books (music text that looks handwritten).
- **Know when to bring a copy of the song or a lead sheet.** Bring a full copy of the song (and your cut) for opera and musical theater auditions. Other genres, such as pop-rock, R&B, or jazz, require that you either have a copy of the music or a *lead sheet* — a sheet with the melody, chord progressions, and lyrics written out; the accompaniment part isn't shown. A collection of lead sheets is called a Fake book. For auditions other than opera and musical theater, bringing your lead sheet may be okay.
- **Keep your music in two different-colored notebooks and bring only the notebook with songs you know.** To avoid putting an unprepared song in your audition notebook, keep two notebooks: one with your songs that are ready and one with works still in progress. Don't even bring the notebook with the songs you haven't rehearsed to the audition to avoid having the accompanist select a song you're not ready to sing.

Taking digital sheet music

If you plan to take your digital copy of your music on your electronic device for the accompanist to play, be sure to ask if doing so is okay. Some accompanists are willing to read the music on your device and some aren't. You may be able to see the digital music really well on your small device, but your accompanist may not be able to see it well and will need the photocopy. Have someone play the music for you before the audition on the device. Because the accompanist has to turn pages fast, they may knock over the device when swiping a page turn.

Bringing a recording

Providing your own recording to sing along with at the audition gives you a chance to rehearse and get familiar with the accompaniment. Make sure that your audio file is a good-quality recording to sing along with. Whether you use computer software or hire an accompanist to record it, use a good-quality recording system so that the sounds on your audio file make a good impression at the audition. You can search online for sites that sell tracks of your song using keywords "backing tracks."

Audition rooms aren't all the same so you want to ask what equipment will be available in the room for playing your track. Some have a hookup for your electronic device, but the type of equipment may vary. Practice singing and

connecting your electronic device to different kinds of equipment to get used to quickly figuring out how to hook up your device and hearing your voice with different acoustics and speakers or bring your own.

Nailing the Audition

To nail your audition, you want to be prepared. Your audition may draw a lot of competition; being really prepared increases your chances of getting the gig. The following sections offer some preparation tips.

Doing your prep work

Knowing your style, choosing your song, and preparing your music are the most important steps you take in preparing for your audition. But you don't want to let the small things fall through the cracks, either! Depending on your selected genre of music or the size of your city, you may not have to do all these things. In bigger cities with more competition (particularly in the musical theater genre), you want to make sure that you do everything you can to be prepared.

- **Know the scene.** Read articles about auditioning at `www.backstage.com`, and for opera, do the same at `www.csmusic.net`. At Backstage online, look for a list of cities/countries near you. Reading about auditions gives you some time to get used to the audition listings and to prepare your audition book (a notebook that has photocopies of all the songs you're prepared to sing for auditions) for any type of show. As you're preparing, set some goals — both short term and long term — so you have a plan of action.
- **Create an online profile.** You want casting directors to easily be able to find your information. The profile usually consists of your headshot (professional photo), resume, and videos. The options may vary depending on where you live but check out these sites if you live in North America: `www.actorsaccess.com` and `www.playbill.com`.
- **Be ready to audition live online.** Many companies hold live online auditions. After your online materials are reviewed and the casting directors want to see more, you may be contacted for a live audition (think audition over a platform like Zoom). Similar to waiting outside the audition room, you wait online for your chance to present your materials live. Each site tells you what to prepare so you know what to organize for the audition.

- **Polish your resume.** A resume is like a calling card for the entertainment industry. When you put together your resume, list your important credits and assume that someone will spend only about 30 seconds looking at it. If you list every single thing you've done, the audition panel may miss the credits you really want them to see.

  REMEMBER

  Keep your resume to one page only. Don't fib or stretch the truth on special skills. Be specific when listing your voice type for classical auditions; adding information about belting is important for musical theater auditions (mezzo belter, soprano with high belt, baritenor, and so on). You want to list your range along with your voice type on your resume. They want to know your performance range, the notes you're confident singing in performance. Even if your resume is posted online, keep a copy with you just in case. Websites with audition listings tend to have articles about preparing your resume.

- **Say cheese.** At most auditions, singers bring a photograph called a headshot. This headshot is usually an 8-x-10-inch, color photograph of just the head or upper body. The photo also usually has the singer's name printed on the bottom in the border. Your photo needs to look like you at the audition. Even if your photo is posted online, have a few copies on hand just in case. Staple the headshot and resume together, with the smooth side of the staple facing the resume side, or use double-sided tape to attach them.

  TIP

  If you're not sure whether you should take a resume and headshot to your audition, you can ask. (Call the theater office or the contact person listed in the audition ad.) But assume that the answer will be "yes"; it's better to have it ready, just in case.

- **Pick up audition skills from classes or advice from teachers.** You can find ads for classes on websites that have audition postings.

- **Practice the way you'll audition.** If you know you'll use a microphone at the audition, practice with one. At the audition without a microphone, you'll have to show that you can project your voice. Work on creating a resonant sound to project at the audition. Chapter 7 contains information about projecting sound and Chapter 24 has some tips on singing with a microphone.

- **Prepare your speaking voice for the sides.** *Sides are the* material from the show that you're asked to sight read or prepare for the callback. See Chapter 13 for help with your speaking voice.

Dressing in the right outfit

At your audition, remember that other people are looking at you from the minute you walk in the door — not just when you sing. You want to show off your body and look great in your outfit. If you're auditioning for a musical or a production with a specific character, think about what the character you're auditioning for

looks like. You want to suggest the character but not dress exactly like the character. For an opera audition, you want to look classy. Wearing jeans and your cool tennis shoes is fine for a pop-rock audition, but not for an opera audition. If you're not auditioning for a character role, choose an outfit that shows off your personality and highlights your figure.

TIP

Also remember that you may not be cast the first time you audition, but you still need to make a good impression. Sometimes directors ask you back to audition again to make sure that you're outstanding every time you audition, not just on a good day. Though your mother may not like it, wear the same outfit for the callback.

Knowing how to audition online

For every musical production from a video to a musical to a singing contest, an audition is part of the process to get the gig. Whether the audition is live or online, the information in the chapter helps you prepare. These tips can help you specifically with online auditions:

- **Read carefully.** After you find the posting for the audition, read through the guidelines carefully several times. The song requirements can vary between auditions so make sure you decide which song and which video version to send based on the guidelines. For example, if the guidelines say they want a rock song, send them a video of you singing a rock song even though the video of you singing the aria is your best video. Sending in a video of the opposite of what they want is an indication that you can't follow instructions.
- **Record your videos ahead of time.** You can create videos ahead of time so you have them ready to submit when you see an audition listed online. Record videos of full songs, cuts of songs, and a capella songs so you have a variety of videos for different types of auditions. Creating a video for an audition can take some time so plan ahead if you want to start submitting videos for online auditions.

REMEMBER

Choosing the right place and equipment to record your video is a big decision. Even though you sound awesome singing in the shower, record yourself in rooms with good acoustics and controlled acoustics (room where you don't hear other noises), and then listen to the recordings to compare the sound.

TIP

Experiment with recording equipment that you already have at home. For most recordings, using your phone or your digital device is fine. Record with different apps on your phone or your laptop to see which one offers the best sound and video options. When you begin submitting videos for more advanced performances like a musical production or televised singing contest, you may want to invest in more advanced equipment like a professional quality microphone that is compatible with software to record on a computer.

- **Include an a capella selection.** Some online auditions want an *a capella* song, which means you sing alone with no background music. Other auditions allow you to sing with accompaniment from a piano or a track. Practice recording yourself singing without accompaniment and listen back to make sure you're confident staying on pitch. Staying right in tune when you're singing alone may be hard for a beginner, but you'll get better at it with practice and listening back to your recordings to monitor your technique.
- **Add live performance links.** Sometimes you can submit a link to a live performance. Explore postings of online auditions so you know what kinds of cuts you need of your live performances. The casting directors may want you to submit the link for the entire performance, but most likely they'll want a link so they can see a cut of the live performance. Finding the best parts and creating a video of those segments is another task on the to-do list.

TIP

Be nice to everyone at an audition. You never know who you're talking to. That person may be the director's assistant — or he may end up directing the next show you audition for.

Greeting the audition accompanist

The audition pianist can be your friend or foe, based on how you behave. Most of the time, the pianist who is at the audition is a cool person who plays like a dream.

A few simple actions that seem harmless to you can really set off an accompanist. Allow me to share a few tips:

- **Don't try to shake hands with the audition pianist, even if you think it's good manners.** Shaking hands translates to squeezing someone's hands, no matter how gently. The pianist doesn't want swollen fingers after shaking hundreds of hands during a long audition day.
- **Smile and address the pianist with respect when you provide your tempo or point out the road map in your song.** Briefly, but very nicely, describe what you've highlighted or point out any tough spots. Your conversation with the pianist has to be quick — be brief and to the point. Practice briefly describing your tempo and the road map of the song, and practice how you'll indicate to start.
- **Never snap your fingers to give the accompanist the tempo.** Snapping may be an easy way to describe your tempo, but many accompanists take offense to it. Instead, quietly speak a few words at the speed you want to sing.
- **Explain how you plan to indicate that you're ready to begin.** You can nod your head or look up to let the pianist know that you're ready to begin.

REMEMBER

- **You can hope that the audition pianist can transpose at sight, but you can't assume this skill.** Feel free to ask whether they can transpose, but if they hesitate or say no, choose something else to sing.

  Reading music on the page and transposing at sight are two different skills. Unless someone is used to transposing a song, it may not be their strongest skill. You may also hear more wrong notes as the pianist attempts to read it in your favorite key. Be safe, and get the song transposed well in advance of your audition. See the section, "Choosing the key," earlier in this chapter, for details on choosing a song in the right key.

- **Thank the pianist just before you leave.** You may not know the pianist personally and may assume that they only play the piano. But the audition pianist may be the musical director. Be sure to read the suggestions on how to prepare your music for the audition so that the pianist enjoys meeting you and playing your song.

Acting at the audition

Acting while singing is a must. Your acting preparation of your song needs to be as detailed as your musical preparation. Check out Chapter 18 for information on acting while singing. You want your audience to watch you during your audition, and if you aren't acting, they have no reason to look at you.

At an audition, your choice of where to direct your eyes is similar to where you direct your eyes if you're telling a story. The only decision you have to make is whether to look at the person you're singing to. Most of the time, the answer to that question is to not make eye contact. However, if you have a fun song that has spunk and character, do look at your audience. Songs that address your invisible scene partner are best directed to that imaginary partner on the wall directly in front of you. Because you're pretending that you're talking to that scene partner, you want to look at them as if they're in the room with you, but not stare at them. When you have a conversation with someone, you look at that person and then look away, but you don't stare at them. You don't want to stare at the wall when you sing your song at your audition.

Assuming that the casting director for whom you're auditioning is sitting near the middle of one wall in the audition room, focus your eyes a few feet on either side of them (there may be more than one person). Most acting teachers tell you to keep your eyes centered in one spot on the wall so that you don't have any odd body angles in an audition. That's good advice in the beginning of your training. As you get more accustomed to different kinds of focus and multitasking, you can widen your focus.

KNOWING WHEN TO HIRE AN AGENT

You need an agent when you have enough performing experience that you need to get into the bigger, more prominent auditions. An agent helps you get performing jobs, but the agent doesn't do all the work. The agent can only get you the audition. You have to be good enough to land the gig. An agent usually takes 10 percent of your performance income, whether they get you the gig or not, but the commission can be much higher depending on the artist and type of job. If you think you may be interested in an agent, start reading the articles in the trade papers Backstage or Classical Singer about agents and managers to see whether you're ready for that kind of business relationship. For more detailed information about agents, managers, freelancing, auditions, and contracts, pick up a copy of the second edition of *Breaking into Acting For Dummies* by Larry Garrison and Wallace Wang (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

Preparing mentally

Being mentally prepared for an audition means doing your preparation work (practicing, preparing your headshot and resume, researching the audition, and so on) and visualizing yourself successful at the audition. You want to mentally prepare for success because with success comes the responsibility of performing well under pressure. Mentally preparing is as important as preparing your singing voice. Check out Chapter 19 to help with performance anxiety.

5 The Part of Tens

IN THIS PART . . .

Discover a diverse array of singers who demonstrate great technique.

Find out the answers to ten most frequently asked questions about singing.

Delve into ten tips for maintaining your vocal health.

Peruse ten great performing tips to help make your next performance fabulous.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Crediting singers with versatility and range
- Meeting a few of my favorites

Chapter 21
Ten Performers with Good Technique

Which singers have good technique? Some great performers have great vocal technique, and some great performers are still working on theirs. Check out this list of ten singers to see whether I list your favorite. You find pop-rock, country, musical theater, R&B, and classical music performers on this list.

These ten singers demonstrate the sounds I describe in the chapters from falsetto and whistle to mix, head voice, and belt. For each singer, I list the specific sounds for you to examine. Listen to their official videos and recordings as well as live performances to hear the level of technique they bring to their live performances. Listening to these singers helps you identify the sounds associated with the words describing technique in the chapters and the singers on the online tracks at `www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e`. These singers also are able to merge their technique and style to easily maneuver back and forth between diverse sounds.

Although I limit the number of singers with great vocal technique to ten, you can be sure that the true number of wonderful singers with great technique is much higher. The eclectic nature of this list just goes to show that good technique crosses the lines of style, gender, age, race, and song.

Xiomara Alfaro

Cuban soprano Xiomara Alfaro was also affectionately known as The Nightingale of Song. Her most famous song, "Siboney" by Ernesto Lecuona, is a masterclass in head voice–dominated sounds. Listen to the sounds carefully to hear what may at first sound like head voice, but the tone has depth because she incorporates chest voice into the mixture. Hear her operatic training coming through the runs on the higher notes. Her song "Luna Rosa" shows her agility as well as her consistent vibrato. She plays with articulation, uses staccato, and slides between notes creating a lilting feeling to keep the melody moving. In "Malagueña" hear her rolling her R and running through the melody of alternating intervals with spunk and sass. She has operatic training, but she uses layers of depth in her head voice and keeps the resonance forward instead of allowing it to fall back like an opera singer would do if singing classical music. Her fame shows that working on her strength in the right material is electrifying. If you're a singer who has a strong head voice, she's an inspiration.

Juan Diego Flórez

Tenor Juan Diego Flórez brings great passion to his singing and uses his whole body to create sound. Look for evidence in the videos of his live performances. It looks as if he is about to levitate because he's so eager to make the sound. He seems as comfortable playing guitar and singing folk songs such as "Cucurrucucú Paloma" by Tomás Méndez as he's singing his florid arias such as "Ah! Mes amis'" from *La Fille du Regiment* with outrageous high notes (did you count nine high Cs?) to his florid agility in "Ecco, ridente in cielo" from *Il Barbiere di Siviglia*.

What makes the sound classical is the consistent use of vibrato, long phrases with an even tone to the very end of the phrase, resonance that is focused inside the head in the mouth and throat, no straight tone, runs that are sung as written on the page or adhere to a standard in the style of music, and true head voice tones without chest voice taking over. Find more information about this Peruvian gem at `www.juandiegoflorez.com`.

Lady Gaga

Lady Gaga has made a name for herself for so many reasons: singing, songwriting, acting, and her larger-than-life persona on and off the stage. Her diverse singing style shows through her jazz recordings such as "Bang Bang" where she

uses contrasting vocal sounds from soft whispers to chest voice–dominated sounds with high resonance in the climax. Listen to her head voice–dominated sounds singing "But Beautiful" with Tony Bennet. She deserves a shout out for her depth and variety of sounds in chest voice in the movie "A Star is Born."

She demonstrates complex layers in her chest voice in "La Vie en Rose," "Shallow," and in "I'll Never Love Again" she showcases her ability to carry an ease of chest voice way up into head voice territory. Listen to her recording of "Heal Me" for examples of head voice–dominated mix and "Before I Cry" to hear heavier chest voice sounds alternating with light mix with high resonance. She could easily just push heavy chest voice all the time, but she chooses to layer the weight of chest voice for vocal variety. Go Gaga! Check out `www.ladygaga.com`.

Eddie Kendricks

Eddie Kendricks is a mix master. With the singing group, Temptations, he sings "You're My Everything." The 1960s recording shows his superb mix, falsetto, and his ability to blend chest voice into the sound smoothly from top to bottom. He easily moves back and forth between straight tone and vibrato. "Keep on Truckin'" shows his use of mix, with several purposeful scratchy sounds, "Intimate Friends" uses a truckload of mix, and live or studio recordings of "Can I" show the same ease of mix proving that his technique was solid and not crafted by a sound engineer. Kendricks also was singing in the days before autotune. Check out this mix master for inspiration as you explore your mix.

Bruno Mars

Megastar Bruno Mars shows diverse sounds that keep getting better with each new song. Listen to "Talking to The Moon" and "Locked Out of Heaven" and notice how high the tessitura is (where most of the notes in the song lie). He makes it sound like it is easy-peasy. He demonstrates his skill with falsetto and mix in "When I Was Your Man" and then contrasts that with much more chest voice in the sound for huge diversity.

His articulation is clear but not so properly enunciated that you even notice. In "Just The Way You Are" he has fun with accents on repeated words and shows playfulness in the way he accents consonants. He shows off high belt, and it just sounds like he's talking on pitch even though those notes are at the top of the staff. Find more about him at `www.brunomars.com`.

Minnie Riperton

I have loved Minnie Riperton's voice since the first time I heard her ages ago. Her singing always has a gentleness that draws the listener in and leaves you wanting more. Look for her official recordings of "Loving You" for her remarkable ability to fly up into whistle register. Whistle notes come flying out like butterflies on a summer day, followed by super high head voice notes. Her song "Back Down Memory Lane" shows more fullness in her tone that contrasts with sustained high light tones in whistle register.

Listen for the difference between her head voice and the highest notes in her whistle register. Can you hear the difference between the two? The whistle register notes feel very small in her head, but they sound big. "Inside My Love" starts with freestyle riffs in a head voice–dominated mix, and she gradually adds more depth in the tone as the song progresses. She also uses straight tone and breathy sounds both typical for this style of music. "Baby, This Love I Have" shows her belt with more chest voice in it. You can hear her soprano quality throughout because the notes, no matter how high, sound easy for her. Her riffs are fluid, and she easily ascends into head voice sounds. Kudos! Thank you for the fabulous examples of diverse technique.

Sofia Shkidchenko

The reason people sing is because it's fun and brings joy. Ukrainian yodeler Sofia Shkidchenko is a great example of someone who has mastered a specific technique and wants to share it with the world. Her yodeling ability is off the charts starting from her earliest videos as a kid on the television show, *Ukraine Has Talent* to her current recordings as a yodeler and belter.

Check her out for some fun sounds flipping between chest voice and head voice like it's as easy as making a sandwich. Tracking her from childhood to her recent videos shows that her skill just keeps on getting better with age. Guys, don't feel left out. Type in "Auf und Auf Voll Lebenslust" in your search engine to hear Sofia yodeling as well as plenty of men yodeling and flipping from chest into falsetto. Chapter 11 has information about men flipping registers in and out of falsetto, but women can make the same flips from chest voice to head voice, which Sofia makes sound as easy as pie.

Meryl Streep

Meryl Streep is well known as an actor, but her ability to create diverse sounds with her singing voice makes her a perfect addition to this list. She easily belts out rock tunes such as "I'm Checking Out" in the movie *Postcards from the Edge* and excels as the witch in the movie production of "Into the Woods," but her finest example of diverse sounds is her portrayal of Florence Foster Jenkins in the movie of the same name. Even if you know nothing about operatic singing, just a few moments of listening to her portray Florence makes you realize how hard it would be to sing that badly and do it so well. To sing so consistently off pitch and miss the high notes took skill. Listen to the recordings of Streep (or Florence Foster Jenkins) singing the Queen of The Night aria "*Der Hölle Rache*" from *The Magic Flute* (*Die Zauberflöte*) and try to articulate how you know she is off. What is she doing to make the sound so inconsistent? It's a great workout for the ears to identify what is off about the singing — off on purpose.

Josh Turner

Country singer Josh Turner is known for his deep voice and his ability to highlight that depth in his songs. His articulation is clear, he nails the low notes, seems comfy singing higher notes, and uses this contrast of range as a means to tell a story. Listen to "Your Man" to hear his use of lower notes when he's talking about being alone with his girl. In "Why Don't We Just Dance," you hear big leaps into his higher range that sound easy, and in one song you hear both the baritone and the bass side of his voice.

He begins "Firecracker" with a vocal fry and uses vocal inflections that help tell the story. He emphasizes operative words by playing with the vowels and changing the shape as he sings them, a common stylistic choice — a classical singer strives to keep the same shape of the vowel until the release of the tone. He also puts accents on consonants to help you follow the fun of the story. He sings a long phrase, but it's different from a legato line in a classical song. A classical phrase has a consistent tone throughout the line, but the phrasing in this country song sounds conversational without trying to make each note sound the same. In "Forever And Ever, Amen" you hear the baritone side of his voice more than the bass. Find more about Turner at `www.joshturner.com`.

Colm Wilkinson

Colm Wilkinson sang in the original London cast of "Les Misérables" in 1985, and his rendition of "Bring Him Home" is one of the finest examples of mix for the male voice that you'll hear. His ability to float from falsetto to mix to belt in this song is a masterclass in technique. He uses these diverse sounds of the singing voice to tell a story. "Soliloquy" shows his facile articulation and his super high sustained belt in a live performance for the Tenth Anniversary Concert at Royal Albert Hall.

"Till You Came Into My Life" from *Jekyll & Hyde* shows a very different side of his voice with brighter timbre, more sustained tones, higher belt, and more vibrato. His technique was still going strong in 2007 when he recorded "Gethsemane" from *Jesus Christ Superstar* live, a tour de force piece requiring rock solid technique. You can find other recordings, but his superb demonstration of mix is what sets him apart from other singers. Read more about this terrific performer at `www.colmwilkinson.com`.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Belting out a tune even if you're a soprano
- Eating and drinking before you sing

Chapter 22

Ten Frequently Asked Questions about Singing

If you don't know the answer to a question, then it's not a stupid question. Most new singers ask the same questions, so I've compiled the answers to ten frequently asked questions about singing. Read through the following questions and their answers to help with your singing. The answers may inspire you to ask your voice teacher other questions that aren't covered in this chapter.

Is Belting Bad?

Belting isn't bad for you if you do it right, and sopranos can certainly belt. In fact, sopranos often have an easier time with belting than mezzos. Belting *is* bad for you if you use heavy chest voice high in your range to create the belt sound. Check out Chapter 13 for information about working with your speaking voice and creating a healthy belt sound. You can also hear singers on the online tracks demonstrate healthy belting.

What Should I Do If My Voice Feels Off?

Plenty of factors can cause your voice to sound less than its best. Consider three possibilities:

- Thinking too much about how you sound as you sing may make you nervous, and then your voice may not sound your best. Check out Chapter 19 for some help with performance anxiety, or see Chapter 18 for help with acting and singing.
- Not getting enough sleep can cause your voice to feel sluggish and not respond as easily as it normally does. Singing too much the day before or the day of an audition also can cause your voice to get tired. See Chapter 23 for more information about maintaining a healthy voice.

  Your singing muscles are like other muscles in your body. Working out is just fine, but they need a rest after the workout.

REMEMBER

- Emotions affect your singing voice. Crying can make your vocal cords swell and feel puffy, too. Wait until after your performance to watch that sad movie.

If your voice is husky, breathy, strident, muffled, hooty, or off in any other way, first read about onset of tone in Chapter 6. If after working on onset of tone your voice still isn't clear, take some time to read about healthy speaking habits in Chapter 13. If you're abusing your speaking voice, you may also be making your singing voice work much harder to produce gorgeous sounds. Husky tones usually result from some sort of abuse of the singing voice or the speaking voice. Medications may cause your throat to be dry and scratchy. You can read Chapter 23 for more information about medications and their effect on the singing voice. Breathy tones usually indicate that the cords aren't closing completely and are allowing too much air to escape. Strident tones typically result from too much physical pressure or not enough balance of sound in the resonators. Try the exercises in Chapters 4 and 6 on opening the throat to feel the release of the added physical pressure. Muffled or hooty tones usually come from not making specific vowels or allowing the resonance to live too far in the back of your throat. Read Chapter 8 on vowels and the shape of vowels, and then read Chapters 5 and 6 for some help with tone.

How Are an Accompanist, a Coach, and a Voice Teacher Different?

Three specialists can help you prepare your song or help you with singing technique. They have different skills and strengths; read on to figure out which one is right for you:

- A *pianist or accompanist* is someone who plays the piano for you to practice singing but doesn't offer advice on singing technique. An accompanist can be a valuable resource for trying out that new sheet music you purchased or practicing for a performance. Their strength is great piano skills.

  WARNING

  The word *accompanist* is often mispronounced. The correct pronunciation is uh-*kum*-puh-nist — there's no "knee" in the word.

- A *coach* is someone who plays the piano well and can give you tips on your singing. During a work session with a coach, you may practice hearing the piano cue for your entrances in your song, work on the pronunciation of words, get tips on how to sing with the correct style, and find good places to breathe within the text. A coach helps with some basic tips on technique and supports the work of your voice teacher.

- A *voice teacher* is a technique specialist. Although the coach may have knowledge of technique, the voice teacher is the expert. The voice teacher may not play the piano so well but makes up for it in knowledge and advice on your technique. In your voice lesson, you can expect to work at least half of the session on technique and the other half applying that technique to repertoire. For more information about finding a voice teacher and what to expect in lessons, check out Chapter 15.

If My Voice Is Scratchy, Do I Have Nodes?

Your voice has to take quite a bit of abuse for you to get nodes (small calluses that form on the vocal cords). For example, you can't get nodes from yelling for your favorite team for only one day. Your cords may swell or feel uncomfortable the next day, but you have to abuse your voice for a longer period to develop nodes. (See Chapter 23 for information on vocal abuse.)

REMEMBER

If you don't rub the cords the wrong way, you won't have this problem. If the scratchy sounds continue, try vocalizing high in your range. Nodes usually affect the higher part of your voice. If the sound is husky only in the middle part of your voice, you probably have another kind of swelling. Check out Chapter 23 for more information on vocal health, and see Chapter 13 for help with your speaking voice.

Do I Have to Be Big to Have a Big Voice?

Your voice size isn't related to your waistline. If it were, all great singers would be big and every large person would be a great singer. Actually, having extra weight around the middle makes it harder to move your body to breathe. If you're used to that movement, it's not a problem. The size of your throat and head make a bigger difference in your voice than your girth. A wide neck means your vocal cords are longer than someone with a narrow neck. A narrow neck means shorter vocal cords; singers with narrow necks are often the higher voice types. A larger head means more space for the sound to bounce around. One size isn't better than another, but they make for exciting differences between voices.

What's the Best Singing Method?

The best singing method is the one that works best for you. You can find singers and teachers who are quick to recommend their method, claiming, "It's the best." But as long as the method introduces you to breath and breath management, tone and resonance, articulation that allows you to be understood without causing tension, and the general principles of good singing, then it's a good method. My method of teaching is a combination of all the teachers I've studied with.

TECHNICAL STUFF

You may hear singers talking about the *bel canto* method of singing. *Bel canto* literally means "beautiful singing" in Italian and implies the use of smooth, open tones. This method of singing and teaching began early in the 18th century. Today bel canto implies beautiful singing in a more classical style.

Do I Have to Speak Italian to Sing Well?

Speaking Italian never hurt anyone and can only enhance your singing. Italians have been singing beautifully for many years and those singers are great role models. However, Italians aren't the only people making beautiful sounds in the

concert halls. Singers of every nationality can sing well. Enjoy your native tongue, whatever it is, and sing your little heart out. Teachers often recommend Italian songs because they have a long history of teaching singing using Italian art songs, and the Italian language contains fewer vowel sounds, making it easy to learn precise vowel production.

Can I Have a Few Drinks Before the Performance to Calm My Nerves?

WARNING

Drinking alcohol and singing isn't a great combination. You can read in Chapter 23 about how alcohol dehydrates you. Alcohol also slows your reactions, and you want a clear head for singing and performing. When you mix singing and drinking, the small muscles in the throat may get too relaxed, causing you to lose coordination when you try to multitask during the performance.

Chapter 19 has some tips for dealing with performance anxiety. You may find those tips so helpful that you grow to love adrenaline (nerves) and look forward to your performance.

Why Can't I Eat Ice Cream Before I Sing?

Ice cream causes phlegm and mucus to build up. That mucus is thick and makes you want to clear your throat. Unless dairy products don't bother you, I recommend avoiding ice cream and any other dairy products before singing. Make the mad dash to the ice cream store after practicing.

REMEMBER

What should you eat or drink? Water is a safe bet. Some singers say they don't like cold water right before they sing because muscles are warm from singing and the cold water makes the muscles contract. You can experiment with it to see whether it makes your voice feel different.

Other singers may tell you to drink water with lemon or fruit juice to clean out your throat. It won't do any harm if you want to try it on a day you'll be practicing. In fact, lemon water has plenty of health benefits.

TIP

Experiment with any food or drinks before the day of a performance so that you know exactly how your throat feels afterward. Eating a couple of hours before a performance also gives your body a chance to digest the food and gives you some energy for the performance. Some people like to sing on a full stomach, but you need to experiment singing right after eating to know whether it affects you. On the day of a performance, eat familiar foods; you don't want any surprise digestive problems during the show.

How Long Will It Take Me to Learn to Sing?

Great question — and I have no blanket answer to give you. If you know nothing about singing and the information in the book is all new to you, you'll start to hear improvement after a few weeks of consistent practice. You may not be ready for your debut at the Grammy Awards, but you'll hear improvement in your tone and your ability to transition between registers of your voice. (See Chapter 11 for more information on vocal registers.)

Moving from a basic level to an intermediate level of singing takes about six months to a year of consistent practice. As with other sports, the consistent repetition develops muscle memory. Basketball players execute drills every practice. They run laps to build stamina and practice all kinds of coordination drills. Your singing practice session needs to include drills and exercises (the kind of exercises you see throughout the book) to develop your skill and coordination. Most beginners can expect about 50 percent of their technique to stay with them under pressure. You want to work on your technique until it's solid so that your percentage of skill under pressure reaches a higher level. Intermediate-level singers may achieve about 75 percent of their potential during a performance.

Advanced singing takes years to develop — but that fact shouldn't discourage you. Great athletes continue to practice and develop their skills long into their careers. The more you practice, the more advanced level of exercises you can add to your routine.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Speaking in a way that's good for your voice
- Figuring out how to nourish your voice
- Getting the lowdown on vocal problems

Chapter 23

Ten Tips for Maintaining Vocal Health

Long-term *vocal abuse* — any activity that causes strain on your voice — can change the quality of your singing. And your voice may not always be able to repair itself. Although most singers can minimize long-term problems with vocal rest, you need to avoid continued vocal abuse. Make your vocal health a priority now.

REMEMBER

Regardless of whether you sing in your church choir or tour endlessly, maintaining healthy habits is essential to maintaining your vocal health.

Identifying Everyday Abuses

The following list is by no means all-inclusive. You may find other factors that greatly affect your vocal health over a period of time. Be sure to recognize problems and keep them at bay before a big performance. In particular, keep these common everyday factors in mind:

- **Alcohol:** Alcohol dilates blood vessels in your body, which isn't good for your vocal cords if you plan to sing. When the blood vessels dilate, the blood thins and comes to the surface, which makes you more susceptible to a

hemorrhage on your vocal cords. Limit your alcohol, and avoid it on days when you have to practice or perform. Drink plenty of water on days when you do choose to drink, because alcohol dehydrates you and stays in your system up to three days.

- **Smoking:** The smoke from cigarettes, cigars, and marijuana often cause inflammation of the tissues in the throat, which makes singing more difficult. Avoid smoking and secondhand smoke at all times, because long-term use or association can permanently damage your vocal cords. You especially want to avoid smoke for several days before a lesson or performance.
- **Food:** Certain foods can irritate your voice. Dairy products often cause mucus to build up, which makes you clear your throat frequently. Pay attention to how your body reacts to certain foods so you know what to avoid the day before or day of a big concert or performance.
- **Medications:** Many medications dry out your throat. If you need to take the medications, compensate by drinking more water so you don't get dry when you sing. Talk to your doctor to see whether you can avoid medications (or change the timing of the dosage) on days when you have to do plenty of singing. Look for more information about medications in the section, "Medicating a Sore Throat," later in the chapter.
- **Pollen or dust:** Sensitivities to allergens, such as pollen or dust, may cause the vocal folds and throat to swell. Ask your doctor for suggestions to help with allergy problems. In the meantime, take some basic precautions: Clean your house regularly to prevent dust bunnies from collecting and bothering you, choose nonallergenic materials for your bed linens, use a vacuum cleaner that removes all pet hair, and avoid areas with large quantities of dust. Listen to the local weather report for the pollen count. Most areas have higher pollen counts in the early morning or early evening. If you limit outdoor activities to the middle of the day, you're less likely to encounter the highest levels of pollen.
- **Throat clearing:** If you're a habitual throat clearer, now is the time to break that habit and get to the root of the problem. Maybe you clear your throat excessively because mucus builds up from postnasal drip or acid reflux. Swallow instead of clearing your throat, and talk with your doctor about the cause. For many singers, throat clearing is just an unconscious habit that results from trying to clear the vocal cords for singing. Singing with a little mucus isn't going to hurt.

Incorporating Healthy Speech into Your Singing

Your speaking voice directly affects your singing. By taking good care of your voice while speaking, you ensure better health for your singing voice. (In case you missed it, Chapter 13 tells you about the speaking voice.) Try making your speaking habits more healthy with these tips:

- Apply your knowledge of breathing while talking — including talking on the phone. Use your body as if you were singing; pay attention to your posture and the pitch of your voice.
- Use full volume when you need to be heard (usually at sports events, parties, or clubs), but don't scream. You can also slightly raise the pitch of your speaking voice to help it carry over the noise and use your knowledge of resonance to project the sound.
- Talk at a reasonable volume; don't speak loudly all the time.
- Notice your articulation as you speak — avoid speaking with tension, such as jaw tension, tongue tension, or glottals.
- Find your optimum speaking pitch so you don't speak on a pitch that's too low for you (speaking too low usually causes a grinding sound).
- Practice the speaking exercises in Chapter 13 to work on your speaking habits.

WARNING

Prolonged vocal abuse — including abuse of the speaking voice — can lead to *nodes* (small calluses on the vocal cords). If you catch the node early enough, vocal rest and eliminating the vocal abuse often take care of the situation. Of course, the root of the problem is just as important as the symptom. Identify what behavior caused the problem so you can prevent any reoccurrence.

Knowing When to Seek Help

Being tired after a long rehearsal or after a series of rehearsals is normal. But a problem may be brewing if your voice isn't returning to normal and you're having trouble singing. If your voice feels tired, notes that used to be clear are now fuzzy, you're experiencing a loss of range, or your voice doesn't feel normal even after a good warm-up, you may want to problem-solve for about two weeks before you head to the doctor.

REMEMBER

First, go back to the basics. Even seasoned singers need to check in with the basics of technique (refer to Part 1 for more specifics):

- Review your breathing exercises.
- Practice speaking exercises to review the coordination of breathing while speaking.
- Check your posture.
- Practice in front of a mirror to see what you're doing physically.
- Review exercises that work on the different registers of your voice.
- Practice singing softly.

Going back to the basics may help you realize that you were pushing, not breathing properly, singing with tension, or abusing your speaking voice.

WARNING

You also want to think through any changes that you've made in your routine. Changing detergent may cause your allergies to flare up; sleeping with your windows open may cause your voice to be dry and scratchy in the morning; drinking too much alcohol, smoking, changing your diet, or changing medications can adversely affect the voice. Any of these kinds of changes can cause temporary problems with the voice.

If reviewing the basics for a couple of weeks doesn't help and you haven't changed anything in your routine, go see a doctor. Visit a laryngologist or an ENT (ear, nose, and throat doctor) who is used to working with singers. These doctors can look down your throat with a tiny high-speed camera and watch your vocal cords in motion. They can tell you the root of the problem and how to resolve it. They can also give you advice on whether you should cancel or just take it easy during the performance. You need to cancel if it hurts to sing, you get progressively more hoarse as you sing, or you can barely make any sound.

Staying Hydrated

Your body contains a large amount of water with ranges up to 65 percent, and two important components of your singing ability — your lungs and your muscles — need water to do their job. Your lungs depend on water to keep the tissue moving easily, and muscle tissue is made up of 75 percent water. So keeping your body well hydrated helps your singing voice work better.

You can balance out your hydration with liquids other than water. Before you drink that can of soda or cup of coffee, though, realize that the sugar content in most drinks threatens your waistline and that caffeine dries you out. Caffeine also is a diuretic, which means that it makes your body get rid of water. You can't rely on that morning cup of coffee to keep your voice in good working order. Performing requires physical stamina, and a well-hydrated body keeps the body functioning at its best.

Getting Plenty of Shut-Eye

Not getting enough sleep doesn't give the tissue in your body — in your throat — time to heal. Depriving yourself of sleep only makes your voice feel sluggish. If you're sleep deprived, your voice and brain react more slowly, making it harder to sing your best. Singing longer phrases takes more effort, your voice feels heavy instead of agile when you sing the faster notes, and forgetting the next word is more likely. You may survive on just a few hours of sleep at night, but is your voice also just surviving? You want your voice to thrive, not just survive. Try getting more sleep for a few nights and see whether that makes a difference in your singing. Even one more hour can make a big difference to your tissues. You want to recoup and regenerate during the night.

Making Sure That You're Well Nourished

You need to maintain a balanced diet. Following guidelines of basic nutrition means getting a balanced amount of whole grains, fruits and vegetables, and protein. Within this balanced diet, you find proper amounts of protein, carbohydrates, and fats. You may find that singing requires more energy, which means adding protein to your diet to enhance your body's ability to sustain you through long rehearsals.

Though it may not be your personal issue, a body that is too lean or too heavy may have trouble finding the stamina to sing and sustain the higher pitches. Make sure that you're regularly nourishing your body for stamina. Many singers wait until late in the day to eat, but your body needs something to get it started. Try to find a routine that enables you to get food in your body at intervals to keep your singing voice working at its best. Snacking late at night or eating a huge dinner after your evening performance may cause digestion problems like acid reflux that affect your singing voice. Notice what your voice feels like after eating specific foods and what times of day help your voice feel its best.

Preventing a Sore Throat or Infection

A great way to keep all those germs out of your body is to keep your hands washed and away from your face. Your mom told you to wash your hands — listen to her advice. If germs do start to attack and you feel the tickle from drainage, try one of these options:

- **Gargle with warm saltwater.** Adding half a teaspoon of salt to a cup of warm water and then gargling helps flush out or kill any germs that may lodge in the back of your mouth. If you have frequent infections around your tonsils, you may find that saltwater is one of your best friends. Additionally, swishing that saltwater around in your mouth stops those painful little canker sores right in their tracks.
- **Use a neti pot.** A neti pot washes out the nasal passages with warm saltwater. You can find a neti pot at your local drugstore, right next to the cold medicines. Follow the directions on the box to wash out the germs that are lingering, waiting for your immune system to give in so they can attack. You may even feel that slight tickle when the drainage begins. By flushing your nasal passages, you prevent the mucus from getting too thick and hopefully sidetrack those germs.

Medicating a Sore Throat

It's going to happen sometime, so you may as well know your options: You're going to catch that cold or sore throat, and you have to know how to deal with it. Use this advice for when your throat feels scratchy:

- **Avoid most nose sprays.** Nasal sprays that contain antihistamines or decongestants are habit forming and can cause symptoms to worsen when you stop. Use these types of sprays only in emergencies.
- **Drink plenty of water with your medications.** Most over-the-counter medications dry you out. As long as you're prepared for that side effect and compensate with extra fluids, you won't be shocked. Read about the lowdown on three common cold medications:
  - **Antihistamines:** These medicines stop the flood when your nose starts running. The antihistamine dries out your upper respiratory tract secretions and probably makes you sleepy to boot. Use an antihistamine to stop the flooding in your nasal passages, but know that the dryness affects your singing. Keep up with your fluids to counteract the dryness, and choose the right dosage.

- **Cough medicine:** Most cough medicines dry out your voice. You can experiment with honey (known to be an effective cough suppressant) or look in the drugstore to find dextromethorphan with guaifenesin. The guaifenesin is a mucolytic, which brings up the mucus and keeps it flowing. Take the cough medicine, but keep drinking fluids.
- **Decongestants:** These medicines open up your nose but dry out your throat. When you feel that stuffy nose, you reach for your decongestant, which opens the nasal passages. Keep the fluids incoming, even with decongestants.

WARNING

Don't experiment with any medications right before a performance or concert. Try out medications ahead of time to know how your body reacts.

- **Keep some nasal saline spray handy.** As your body tries to wash out the germs (with a runny nose), you can use a nasal saline solution to help fight the infection when you're away from your neti pot (see the preceding section for more info on the neti pot). Using the spray when you're sick means you need to exercise good hygiene: Place the nozzle close enough to your nose to get in a good squirt, but not so close that the cold germs from your nose get on the nozzle. You don't want to get those cold germs back the next time you use the spray. This technique may get a little spray on your face, but you'll just feel like you dunked your face in a tiny ocean.
- **Steam it up with a humidifier.** The winter heater may dry out your home, so keep the humidifier running, especially at night. Rinse it out daily so that you don't end up growing a mold farm in the leftover water. The water condensation on the windows will dry, but feel free to turn off the humidifier if it looks like it's raining on the inside of the house. You may prefer to use a cool-mist humidifier. If so, be sure to use distilled water as directed by the manufacturer and wash the machine regularly to keep it clean.
- **Thin out your mucus.** If you suffer from postnasal drip, you probably have mucus that's too thick. You can try over-the-counter medications with guaifenesin (active ingredient in Mucinex and some cough medicines) to help move the mucus. Use the nasal saline solution or other medications from your doctor to help thin the mucus without drying out your throat. You can also explore more natural options such as *bromelain,* an enzyme found in pineapples.
- **Research side effects of pain meds.** Acetaminophen is the only pain medication that singers can take and still safely sing. Ibuprofen and aspirin dilate blood vessels and make you more susceptible to bursting a blood vessel. Keep in mind that your vocal folds are opening and closing 440 times per second if you're singing the A just above Middle C. The movement is even faster the higher you go in pitch. Research the side effects of any pain medications you currently take and talk to your doctor about your options.

Protecting a Sore Throat

Here's a short list of what to do to protect your sore throat so it heals quickly: stop talking. You may be gregarious and love to talk even when you have a sore throat. But being quiet and allowing the voice to heal means no talking, whispering, or mouthing words. When you whisper, your vocal folds still close. Get a notepad and write out what you need to say, or just text or email until your voice heals. Listening to people sing makes your vocal cords move. Try listening to instrumental music until your voice is back on track.

Keeping Your Emotional Life in Check

In case you're wondering, crying isn't the best thing for your voice. The tension and pressure from the emotional release doesn't exactly make the cords happy little campers. Even if your life is stressful and hectic, find ways to release aggression or pent-up emotions regularly so you aren't holding them inside. Many singers have walked in the door for lessons and were unable to sing because of emotional traumas hanging over their heads. Reliable friends or confidants make good outlets for those emotions. You may also use your singing as a means of expression. If you find yourself too tight and frustrated to sing, call a therapist for help so you can keep singing through the good times and the bad. Singing engages the part of the nervous system that helps people rest and digest. Enjoy working on your singing exercises knowing that the vibrations are helping your entire body.

TIP

Lung capacity is one of the main indicators for long-term health. Working on your breathing technique not only helps your vocal health, but it just may enhance your overall health by increasing your lung capacity. Singing is also a great way to maintain your lung capacity as you age. Go ahead, bust out singing. Turns out it really is good for you.

IN THIS CHAPTER

- Picking the right accompaniment, clothes, and mic
- Looking 'em straight in the eye: Stage presence

Chapter 24

Ten Tips for Performing Like a Pro

Knowing how to behave when you're singing for an audience is important. Whether you're singing solo at Carnegie Hall; at a talent show in Indianapolis; with other performing artists in a local revival of West Side Story; at a Renaissance festival; or at a wedding ceremony, you want to make the right impact with your performance. Read these tips for some answers on the why and how of performing. I start with first things first and proceed to your last exit off the stage.

REMEMBER

To perform well, you want to practice well. Practice enough that your voice has the endurance to make it through the performance without getting exhausted. Simulate the performance during your practice. Even if you have to mentally rehearse, visualize your pre-performance routine, entrance, performance, and exit. This visualizing can be a powerful tool so your brain knows how to recreate what you have been visualizing on performance day.

Rehearsing to Beat the Band

If you're a seasoned pro and you've been practicing on your own, you may not need to sing the music with an accompanist. However, I recommend at least one dress rehearsal and several more practice rehearsals before a performance. At the

first couple of rehearsals, you can sing while reading from the music. For the last rehearsal and the dress rehearsal, sing the music from memory. Under pressure, it's shocking how quickly the words leave your short-term memory. By rehearsing the song from memory, you get even more opportunities to test your wonderful technique while using your acting skills. At the dress rehearsal, you also want to practice walking onstage before your song so you know how winded you are after climbing up the stairs for your entrance, walking around the stage, or down a long hallway.

You can rehearse alone with your track or with an accompanist, coach, or voice teacher. (See Chapter 15 for the differences among these types of teachers.) At your rehearsal, record yourself. Listen to the recording a couple of times to get used to the sound of your voice in the different hall. If you put your recorder in the audience while you sing on the stage, your recording will sound farther away — that's the sound your audience will hear. You can also use your camera on your phone or tablet to video yourself. If you decide to video the rehearsal, you need to view the video several times to get used to watching yourself. You may want to experiment with this at home instead of trying it for the first time at the dress rehearsal. The night before is too late to change much. Record yourself earlier in the process so you can make adjustments. When you watch the video, check your alignment (see Chapter 3), gestures (see Chapter 18), and your entrance (refer to the section, "Making Your Entrance," later in this chapter). You can also check out Chapter 10 for more info on why recording yourself is helpful.

Wearing the Right Ensemble

You may not have much choice in what you wear when you perform if you're singing in, say, a musical theater production. The director usually decides for you, and costumes are made to fit. But if you're a soloist at a wedding or you just got a gig as a lead singer in a local jazz band, the outfit you wear for the performance can make or break your evening. Consider whether your ensemble may distract either you or your audience. Noisy jewelry may look really cool with your new outfit, but if you can hear it when you move, leave it at home. Likewise, platform shoes may be in, but maybe you feel off balance or your legs feel tight when you wear them. Spike heels are also tricky, because you may have a long walk across the stage or up to the choir loft.

REMEMBER

When you practice, wear the outfit and shoes that you plan to wear for the performance. If you can't move your arms or can't breathe well while wearing a certain item, choose something else. Moving your body enough to breathe is important when singing. Some items that may make it harder to breathe include snug gowns,

pantyhose, cummerbunds, and bowties. If your performance attire is formal, the length of the gown or tails on the tux may require that you practice sitting down in the outfit. Gracefully moving the tails aside or adjusting your taffeta takes some practice.

Short skirts may look sexy, but if the stage is much higher than the audience is, the audience may also get a glimpse of your undies. Unless you want someone to look up that sexy skirt, save that outfit for the after-concert party. The same is true for clingy materials that may show every little blemish under bright lights and every little drop of sweat when the big moment arrives.

Take the noisy or bulky items out of your pockets before a performance, and remove watches and glasses. Wearing reading glasses in a solo concert performance isn't customary. Talk to your director about your options — a large print edition of the music is one option if you don't plan to memorize the song.

WARNING

If you're performing in a concert or musical production that involves others, such as a chorale, musical drama, church choir, or local rock band, don't use perfume, cologne, or personal products that give off a fragrant odor. The smell of perfume causes some singers to have allergic reactions, such as sneezing, watery eyes, and itchy throats. Unless you're trying to sabotage the other singers, arrive fragrance free for the concert.

Finding Your Stance

When you know where to stand, practice walking into place. This may sound silly, but knowing how to walk across the stage and land in place isn't as easy as it sounds. Looking like a pro takes a bit of thought and practice. Even if you can't practice on the stage, choose a designated landing spot and practice walking across the room to find your position. You want to stop in place but also find your posture as you stop. Find your alignment (see Chapter 3), walk across the room, and maintain that posture. To land in place means to arrive at your spot facing the direction you need to be singing with your feet parallel and under your hips. With a band, you may choose to land in a more casual stance so your feet are flexible and ready to groove. Observe other seasoned performers to notice how they enter the stage and land in place ready to sing.

Singing with a Piano, Organ, or Band

Singing with an organ is different from singing with a piano. The pipes that create the sound often aren't near the organ console, whereas the sound from the piano comes out the back of the instrument. An organ may be harder to hear, depending on the stops the organist is using. After singing with an organ a few times, you get used to the difference in the sound. Just expect to listen more carefully, and you won't be surprised.

Singing with a band can also be a bit confusing the first time. If the speakers are pointed away from you — and they usually are — you may have trouble hearing yourself. Ask whether it's possible to have a speaker or a monitor turned toward you. Remember that bands often play pretty loudly, and turning the speaker toward yourself will unleash a huge wall of sound coming at you. Monitors are a great help if the volume is just right. Talk with the sound engineer if you can't hear yourself in the monitor. If a specific instrument plays your melody line, you may have to get used to picking out that sound from all the other instruments.

WARNING

Singing with electronic amplification is very different from singing with a piano or single instrument. You may be tempted to push to make big sounds when your voice is amplified. Trust the feeling you normally have when you're practicing. You can use your ears, but you also need to use your sense of feeling to know whether you're pushing. You get really tired when you push and may not realize it until later. The sound engineer adjusts the sound in the house — your job is to sing your best based on how it feels, and let them adjust the sound for the audience.

Sometimes instrumentalists in the band add solos as they play. Ask the bandleader how you know when it's time to come back in. You can also ask one of the band members to nod to you when it's time for you to come in if the instrumentalists start adding extra measures. It's a good idea to take along your recorder to the rehearsal so you can record it. If you get only one shot at rehearsing with the band, you can always review your recording to get used to the timing.

Making Your Entrance

As you enter the stage from a doorway or wing, look at the audience and smile. You appear far more confident if you look straight at your audience as you walk across the stage. Practicing this is important. Your smile needs to look genuine even if you're nervous and don't want to be onstage. When you reach your position on the stage, pause in place to bow. Other performing venues may require you to be a bit more subdued. Singing for a church service, for example, requires a

different approach than singing at a pop concert. For a church service, you may not get applause as you stand up to sing. It doesn't mean that the audience doesn't like you: Their focus is on your message in your performance instead of on the performance itself.

Before you make your entrance, be mentally prepared. You want your energy level to be up so you can pace your entrance just right. If you're dreading your entrance, you may walk slowly and appear petrified to sing. Even if you're nervous, make your entrance with confidence. You don't have to run, but walk at a pace that shows you're eager to perform.

Roping in Your Audience

When singing in a concert, knowing whether to acknowledge your audience or stick to your own little world is tricky. You can't always sing intimate songs in an intimate locale, but you can imagine being in an intimate locale by creating a fourth wall in your mind: Pretend to be in a room alone, with a wall in front of the audience. If your song addresses a group, make the audience part of your story within the time period of the song.

To get a feel for whether to include the audience as part of your song, watch the seasoned pros. The casual atmosphere at a pop concert is different from the more formal atmosphere of a classical performance. Know your audience and behave appropriately. When in doubt, watch the singers who perform before you. Waving to your sister may be just fine at the children's concert in the park, but it isn't okay when you're singing with the symphony in a big concert hall. When in Rome . . .

Televised performances may or may not have an audience. If you have an audience, you can communicate with them and let the cameras adjust to you. Otherwise, you have to pretend the camera is your audience. The director will tell you which camera is recording and tell you when to adjust your focus. It's tricky to sing well, tell your story, communicate with your imaginary audience, and move on cue to the next camera angle.

Ignoring That Mosquito

In a normal concert, people cough, enter late, or leave right in the middle of your song. People in the audience don't think about how it distracts the performer. When you practice at home, you may want to intentionally stage some

distractions. Ask a friend to drop a book or walk into the room as you're singing, so you can practice concentrating even while they're bopping around. What may distract you at the performance?

- **Lights:** You want the light to be on your face so the audience can see you. That may seem blinding, but it also prevents you from seeing the audience, which may be good. If you're nervous, pretend that no one is out there. Or visualize all the happy faces looking at you, delighted to see you. When you see the stage, mark the spot where the light is best on your face. After all, you got all dressed up for the show — you want the audience to see you. If you're too far forward or back, the light may miss you entirely and the audience won't see your face for the shadows. You also want to practice walking into the light so you can make it look natural that you're suddenly brilliantly illuminated. Otherwise, you may be looking up to find the best light as the audience is waiting for you to sing. Ask a friend to come to the rehearsal to check the lighting for you.
- **Flashing photos:** You can ask your friends and family not to distract you by taking photos, but you may not be able to control the entire audience. If someone does start taking photos in the middle of your song, try to focus on an object in front of you so you aren't looking right into the flashing light. Blinking lights from recording devices can also be mesmerizing or maddening. Television cameras have a red light to indicate recording and the cameras may move around a lot to get different angles.
- **Other performers:** In the wings, you may see many people milling around waiting for their entrance. Focus on your task and ignore them. In a smaller cast, you can ask them to not move around the sides while you sing, but you may just have to figure out how to ignore them if they forget or if you're in a large production with a lot of stage crew.

Handling Those Hands

Keeping your hands at your sides is safest. It may not be the most interesting place for them, but you won't go too wrong by erring on the side of calm and still. If you choose to gesture, make it a complete gesture and make sure that your elbows move out, away from your body. You may look like you're flipping burgers if you move just your hands and not your arms. Of course, if you're using a hand-held microphone, your gestures need to accommodate it. (See the next section for more info about using a mic.)

Another option for your hands is to clasp them in front of you. Clasping your hands at your waistline is cool, but wringing your hands isn't. Being nervous at a performance is okay, but try not to show it. Don't let 'em see you sweat, as they say. Pretend that performing is the easiest thing in the world. Your hands can also rest on the piano, if it's near enough to you and if the lid is closed. If the lid is open on a baby grand or grand piano, don't put your hand on the lid or inside the lid: It makes your audience nervous to see your hand right where the lid may fall. You can also check out Chapter 18 for some suggestions on gesturing.

WARNING

You don't want to put your hands behind you and wiggle them or clasp them right in front of your zipper. Little kids usually put their hands at their zipper when they have to go to the bathroom, so you don't want your audience to make that assumption. Little kids also put their hands behind them to pick their seat before the show.

Using the Mic

Microphones (*mics*, for short; pronounced like the name *Mike*) can be secured on a stand, held by hand, set on the floor, or hooked onto your body. Knowing how to handle this bundle of electronic wizardry takes a little practice. Ask if you can practice with the mic before the instruments start playing. That way, you can hear the difference between too close and too far. Consider the following list of microphones and how you're going to work with the particular type you'll be using:

- **Body mic:** You may have seen body microphones on TV: A microphone cord goes through your clothing, and you wear a small box under your clothes or on your belt. If you don't get a chance to use one before the show, just visualize the sensation of having the box attached to you so that you aren't shocked to feel something hanging on your back.
- **Floor level:** If the microphones are on the floor, the audience is going to hear the sound of you walking across the stage. You want to practice walking in your performance shoes to know how much noise you make as you enter the stage. You may be tempted to tighten your legs or toes so you don't make so much sound. Instead, try walking without pushing down into the floor; connect with the floor but don't push your feet into the floor. This allows you to walk with ease and without too much noise.
- **Handheld:** If you're using a handheld mic, hold it far enough away from your mouth that you don't touch it with your lips, but close enough that the sound of your voice reaches the microphone. Consider these rules for mic use:
  - Don't blow into the mic or tap on it to determine whether it's on. Instead, speak into it. Blowing into the mic or tapping on it may damage the internal parts.

- Place your hand on the mic but away from the head. Performers like to cup the mic. Placing your hand around the head of the mic totally changes the way your voice is amplified. Note the sound of your voice in the mic when you put your hand on the head and cover part of the head, and then compare the sound when you don't. You can talk to the sound engineer about the differences in the sound and what you need for your performance. You may have to explain that you want to cup the mic and that you need help to get the sound amplified to the audience.

  That epic mic drop gesture you saw on TV might seem cool, but resist that temptation of actually dropping a mic. The drop will damage the expensive mic, and it will be painfully loud.

WARNING

- **Stationary:** If your mic is on a stand, you can move around to adjust the sound. Check out the stand before the concert. The height of most microphone stands is adjustable. Look at the middle of the stand, and you'll probably see a ring that you can twist to adjust the height. If you have to turn on the microphone, practice walking to the stand and finding the button so that you feel confident you can turn it on with your hands shaking. It's okay if your hands shake. You just have to know that it's going to happen and adjust your movements to feel confident.

If you don't sing with a microphone, use your knowledge of resonance from Chapter 7 to help your voice carry over the instruments.

Taking Your Bow and Leaving the Stage

The manner in which you take your bow depends on the concert. If you're a famous diva, you may curtsy, but I think it's better to wait on that until you arrive at one of the big opera houses. Until then, use the tried-and-true standard bow: Bend from the waist and bow your head to the audience.

- After you find your spot on the stage, stop in place (with your feet close together) and lean forward from the waist. You want your head down, looking at the floor momentarily. Otherwise, it looks like you're looking up to make sure that everyone is clapping. Remember that you have to lean forward in your performance attire. If that's a gown or tuxedo, make sure that it isn't so tight that you can't bend over at all or without revealing too much cleavage when you bow.
- Your hands can be along the sides of your legs or clasped in front. Allow your hands to slide down your leg as you bend over. Remember not to put your hands in front of your zipper if you choose to clasp them.

» Slowly count to two and raise your torso again. After you bow, acknowledge your accompanist. If the piece was a huge ensemble number, you may bow with your accompanist. You want to make that decision in advance and plan who bows when and after whom. Some people like to turn and extend their arm to acknowledge the accompanist. If the pianist isn't leaving the stage with you, that's appropriate. But if you're a team, plan bows separately and then together.

Exiting the stage is also an art. When you finish singing and take your bow, head toward the exit. Look at your audience again and smile as you exit the stage. If the audience just loved what they heard, they may continue clapping, so you can take another bow. Wait for the peak of the applause and then go back onto the stage. If you had an accompanist playing for you, ask the accompanist to bow with you again or bow with you at the next curtain call.

Depending on the situation, you may want to prepare an encore. How will you know when to sing the encore? Finish your last number, hear the applause, and exit the stage; return to the stage for your bow and exit the stage again; and return to the stage and sing the encore, or return for another bow and then come back out to sing the encore. An encore is appropriate for a recital where you are the main attraction or for a performance with a group such as a band or symphony. When you do more performing, you'll figure out when an encore is appropriate and what to prepare for the encore.

6 Appendixes

IN THIS PART . . .

Examine a helpful list that arranges songs for working on specific skills, including everything from range to breath control to mix and belt.

Recognize which listed songs are great for a beginner and helpful for a specific voice type.

Practice polishing your technique and singing for fun.

Find out more about how you can use the super online files at `www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e`.

Appendix **A**

Songs to Advance Your Technique

This list of suggested songs is designed to advance your singing technique. As you practice the exercises and techniques in the book, you can use this list of songs to apply your new skills. You can easily find a song you love from your favorite singer, but choosing the right song to help you develop your technique is more difficult. The lists in this appendix offer songs that help you develop your technical skills, no if matter you're a beginner or have a little more experience.

You may not know all these songs, but they all have specific lessons that you can use to challenge and expand your technical skill. After you refine the skill, you can apply it to any song that you love to sing. Most digital sheet music comes in multiple keys so you can choose the song you love and find it in the perfect key for your voice. If you love the song, you can search for tracks to help you while you practice.

As you consider songs, keep the following in mind:

» A *beginner song* is one with easier rhythms, narrow range, and melody that often moves in stepwise motion with the piano accompaniment at a comfortable tempo.

- An *intermediate song* has more difficult rhythm, wider range, and melody that skips in larger intervals. The vocal line is somewhat independent of the piano accompaniment and moves at a faster pace.

  Belt songs are typically much more difficult because of technique demands, big stories to tell, and difficult music. Work with the exercises in Chapter 13 until you feel confident that your belt is healthy.

You may want to review the information in Chapter 16 on selecting music and finding the perfect key for your voice. All these songs are available as digital sheet music at the online sites mentioned in that chapter.

Some song lists are for a specific gender and other lists say either gender. If you find a song on the opposite gender list and you like it, then sing it. The technical experience may be different based on your gender and voice type, but there are plenty of technical skills in the book that you can use to explore any song.

Beginner Songs for Any Voice Type or Gender

These songs are great for a first song to explore. The range is good for a beginner and the songs are appropriate for any voice type or gender. Use these songs as you explore the chapters to apply technical skills such as breath coordination (Chapter 4) and monitoring your alignment while you sing (Chapter 3):

- "All through the Night," Welsh Folk Song
- "Drink to Me Only with Thine Eyes," English Folk Song, lyrics by Ben Johnson
- "Red Is the Rose," Irish Folk Song
- "The Meeting of the Waters," Irish Folk Song
- "The Water Is Wide," English Folk Song
- "Auld Lang Syne," Traditional Scottish Melody with words by Robert Burn
- "He's Got the Whole World in His Hands," Spiritual
- "Home Sweet Home" by John Howard Payne and Henry R. Bishop
- "In the Gloaming" by Meta Orred and Annie F. Harrison
- "Simple Gifts," Traditional Shaker Melody

Intermediate Songs from Various Styles for Any Voice Type or Gender

The songs in these lists are somewhere in between beginner and intermediate (because of a few intervals). These songs are divided by style and the range should be fine for any voice type or gender. If you purchase a digital copy of the song, use the website features to explore different keys to find just the right fit for your voice. Use these songs for exploring any of the technical skills you read about in the chapters, but you can use them to specifically help with exploring tone (Chapter 6) and resonance (Chapter 7). For any new selection, you can get some help from Chapter 17 to get a song down in no time.

Intermediate musical theater songs

Here are some great musical theater songs for intermediate singers:

- "All Alone" by Irving Berlin
- "Blue Skies" from *Betsy* by Irving Berlin
- "I Could Write a Book" from *Pal Joey* by Richard Rodgers and Lorenz Hart
- "I Want to Be Happy" from *No, No, Nanette* by Vincent Youmans and Irving Caesar
- "Old Devil Moon" from *Finian's Rainbow* by E. Harburg and Burton Lane

Intermediate pop-rock songs

Here are some intermediate pop-rock songs:

- "Blowin' in the Wind" by Bob Dylan as sung by Bob Dylan or Joan Baez
- "Fields of Gold" by Sting as sung by Sting or Eva Cassidy
- "Knockin' on Heaven's Door" by Bob Dylan as sung by Bob Dylan or Avril Lavigne
- "As Tears Go By" by Mick Jagger, Keith Richards, and Andrew Oldham as sung by The Rolling Stones or Marianne Faithful
- "Take It Easy" by Jackson Browne and Glenn Frey as sung by the Eagles

Intermediate country songs

The following are five intermediate country songs:

- "Annie's Song" by John Denver
- "Could I Have This Dance?" by Wayland Holyfield and Bob House as sung by Anne Murray
- "I Walk the Line" by Johnny Cash
- "Love Is like a Butterfly" by Dolly Parton
- "Your Cheatin' Heart" by Hank Williams or sung by Patsy Cline

Intermediate classical songs

Check out the five intermediate classical songs:

- "Caro mio ben" (Dear One Believe) by Giuseppe Giordani
- "Dream Valley" by Roger Quilter
- "Già il sole dal Gange" (The Sun O'er the Ganges) by Alessandro Scarlatti
- "Greensleeves," English Folk Ballad
- "Tu lo sai" (You Know Full Well) by Giuseppe Torelli

Songs to Practice Technical Lessons for Any Voice Type or Gender

The following lists are full of songs in different styles to help you practice technical skills like articulation, agility, larger intervals management, breath coordination, and legato phrasing. The songs are for any voice type or gender. See Chapter 8 for help shaping vowels and Chapter 9 for help with articulation of consonants; Chapter 12 for help with agility; Chapter 11 for exploring and recognizing registers; Chapter 12 for help with transitions between registers to sing larger intervals; and Chapter 4 for help with breath control and singing long phrases.

Spunky songs for practicing articulation and agility

Here are ten songs to practice articulation and agility:

- "Alma del core" (Soul of My Heart) by Antonio Caldara
- "Vittoria, mio core!" (Victorious, My Heart Is!) by Giacomo Carissimi
- "Consider Yourself" from *Oliver* by Lionel Bart
- "Do-Re-Mi" from *The Sound of Music* by Richard Rodgers and Oscar Hammerstein II
- "Give My Regards to Broadway" by George M. Cohan
- "It's a Lovely Day Today" from *Call Me Madam* by Irving Berlin
- "My Favorite Things" *The Sound of Music* by Richard Rodgers and Oscar Hammerstein II
- "Put on a Happy Face" from *Bye Bye Birdie* by Lee Adams and Charles Strouse
- "How Do I Live" by Diane Warren as sung by LeAnn Rimes
- "You Make That Look Good" by Rhett Akins and Lee Thomas Miller as sung by Scott McCreery

Songs with larger intervals to practice smooth register transitions

Consider these songs to practice smoothing your register transitions:

- "Long Time Ago" by Aaron Copland
- "Jeanie with the Light Brown Hair" by Stephen C. Foster
- "O Mistress Mine" by Roger Quilter
- "Red River Valley," Traditional American Cowboy Song
- "I'm Old Fashioned" from *You Were Never Lovelier* by Johnny Mercer and Jerome Kern
- "It's a Lovely Day Today" from *Call Me Madam* by Irving Berlin
- "Raindrops Keep Fallin' On My Head" by Hal David and Burt Bacharach as sung by B.J. Thomas

- "Singin' in The Rain" by Arthur Freed and Nacio Herb Brown as sung by Gene Kelly
- "We've Only Just Begun" by Roger Nichols and Paul Williams as sung by The Carpenters
- "You Needed Me" by Randy Goodrum as sung by Anne Murray

Songs to practice breath coordination and legato phrases

These ten songs can help you work on your breath coordination and legato phrases:

- "An die Musik" (To Music) by Franz Schubert
- "At the River" by Aaron Copland
- "Come Ready and See Me" by Richard Hundley
- "I've Got My Eyes on You" from *Broadway Medley of 1940* by Cole Porter
- "Long Ago" from Cover Girl by Ira Gershwin and Jerome Kern
- "Love, Don't Turn Away" from *110 in The Shade* by Harvey Schmidt and Tom Jones
- "My Romance" from *Jumbo* by Richard Rodgers and Lorenz Hart
- "So in Love" from *Kiss Me, Kate* by Cole Porter
- "I Fall to Pieces" by Hank Cochran and Harlan Howard as sung by Patsy Cline
- "Love Me Tender" by Elvis Presley and Vera Matson

Songs to Work on Range and Registers

The songs in this section are from different styles and designed to help you work on registers and range. Chapter 11 is all about registers of the voice, and Chapter 12 helps you work on transitioning between registers and developing your range. Because most beginner singers are more comfortable singing lower in their range, I include lists of songs that don't go very high to get you started and then offer a list of songs a bit higher when you're ready to spread your wings and soar into head voice territory.

Songs for low female voices

Check out these songs perfect for low female voices:

- "Ching-A-Ring Chaw" by Aaron Copland from Old American Songs
- "No Flower That Blows" by Thomas Linley
- "Frank Mills" from *Hair* by Galt MacDermot, James Rado, and Gerome Ragni
- "If You Really Knew Me" from *They're Playing Our Song* by Marvin Hamlisch and Carole Bayer Sager
- "Bubbly" by Colbie Caillat and Jason Reeves
- "Malibu" by Oren Yoel Kleinman and Miley Cyrus
- "A Thousand Years" by David Hodges and Christina Perri
- "Breathe Again" by Babyface as sung by Toni Braxton
- "We've Only Just Begun" by Roger Nichols and Paul Williams as sung by The Carpenters
- "Sweet Dreams" by Don Gibson as sung by Patsy Cline

Songs for low male voices

Here are some great songs for low male voices:

- "Ol' Man River" from *Show Boat* by Jerome Kern and Oscar Hammerstein II
- "Soon It's Gonna Rain" from *The Fantasticks* by Harvey Schmidt and Tom Jones
- "Try To Remember" from *The Fantasticks* by Harvey Schmidt and Tom Jones
- "Are You Lonesome Tonight?" by Roy Turk and Lou Handman as sung by Elvis
- "Sweet Caroline" by Neil Diamond
- "Forever And Ever, Amen" by Don Schlitz and Paul Overstreet as sung by Randy Travis
- "Gettin' You Home" by Cory Batten, Kent Blazy, and Chris Young as sung by Chris Young
- "Wagon Wheel" by Ketch Secor and Bob Dylan as sung by Darius Rucker
- "Would You Go with Me" by John Scott Sherrill and Shawn Camp as sung by Josh Turner
- "Your Man" by Jace Everett, Chris DuBois, and Chris Stapleton as sung by Josh Turner

Songs for higher voices to expand your range for any gender

These songs can help you expand your range if you have a higher voice:

- "The Daisies" by Samuel Barber
- "The Lass from the Low Countree" by John Jacob Niles
- "Falling in Love with Love" from *The Boys from Syracuse* by Richard Rodgers and Lorenz Hart
- "I'll Know" from *Guys and Dolls* by Frank Loesser
- "Let It Be" by John Lennon and Paul McCartney

Songs for lower voices to expand your range for any gender

These songs can help you expand your range if you have a lower voice:

- "Spring Sorrow" by John Ireland
- "Where'er You Walk" from *Semele* by G.F. Handel
- "It Only Takes a Moment" from *Hello, Dolly!* by Jerry Herman
- "There's No Business Like Show Business" from *Annie Get Your Gun* by Irving Berlin
- "This Is It" by Scott McCreery, Frank Rogers, and Aaron Eshuis as sung by Scott McCreery

Songs for Working Mix, Belt, and Falsetto

The songs in these lists help you with more advanced sounds like mix, belt, and falsetto. You can find out loads of information about belt in Chapter 13. You can also find out about falsetto and mix in Chapters 11 and 13. Because mix and falsetto feel different in the male and female voice, I divide the lists into songs for female mix songs and songs for male falsetto and mix. The songs are from different styles to help you find something that inspires you to practice. The songs are marked head voice–dominated mix, belt, or falsetto to help you know what sounds to explore. "Mix or belt" means you can choose which sounds you want to explore,

and "mix to belt" means the song is typically started in a mix and then transitions to belt as the story unfolds. You're welcome to explore the songs for the opposite gender although the technical exploration may be different.

Female mix songs

Here are some great mix songs for females:

- "I Don't Know How to Love Him" from *Jesus Christ Superstar* by Andrew Lloyd Webber and Tim Rice (mix to belt)
- "I Don't Need a Roof" from *Big Fish* by Andrew Lippa (head-dominated mix)
- "Pulled" from *The Addams Family* by Andrew Lippa (mix to belt)
- "There's a Fine, Fine Line" from *Avenue Q* by Robert Lopez and Jeff Marx (mix or belt)
- "Bridge Over Troubled Water" by Paul Simon (mix or belt)
- "Together Again" by Janet Jackson, Terry Lewis, and James Harris III (head-dominated mix)
- "Touch Me in the Morning" by Ronald Miller and Michael Masser as sung by Diana Ross (head-dominated mix)
- "Walk on By" by Burt Bacharach and Hal David as sung by Dionne Warwick (head-dominated mix)
- "I Hope You Dance" by Tia Sillers and Mark D. Sanders as sung by Lee Ann Womack (head-dominated mix)
- "When You Say Nothing at All" by Paul Overstreet and Don Schlitz as sung by Alison Krauss and Union Station (head-dominated mix)

Songs for working on male falsetto and mix

Select one of these songs to work on male falsetto and mix:

- "Cry Me a River" by Justin Timberlake, Timothy Mosely, and Scott Storch as sung by Justin Timberlake (mix and falsetto)
- "Fields of Joy" by Michael Karmen and Hal Fredricks as sung by Lenny Kravitz (falsetto, mix, and belt)
- "Hey There, Lonely Girl" by Earl Shuman and Leon Carr as sung by Eddie Holman (falsetto and mix)

- "I'm Stone in Love With You" by Thomas Bell, Linda Creed, and Anthony Bell as sung by The Stylistics (falsetto and chest voice)
- "Imagine" by John Lennon (mix and falsetto)
- "Needs" by Ed Roland as sung by Collective Soul (falsetto, chest, and mix)
- "Ooo Baby Baby" by Smokey Robinson and Warren Moore as sung by Smokey Robinson (mix)
- "Sherry" by Bob Gaudio as sung by Frankie Valli & The Four Seasons (really high falsetto with lots of flips into falsetto)
- "The Scientist" by Guy Berryman, Jon Buckland, Will Champion, and Chris Martin as sung by Coldplay (mix and falsetto)
- "Truly, Madly, Deeply" by Daniel Jones and Darren Hayes as sung by Savage Garden (mix and falsetto)

Belt songs for higher and lower female voices

These songs vary in range. The lower belt songs require a confident belt (or the opportunity to develop that confidence) up to B4, which is above Middle C, and the higher belt songs go up to D5, which is a little more than an octave above Middle C. Take your time with these songs and use your head voice until your belt sounds are solid.

Low female voice belt songs

These songs can help a low female voice belt up to B4:

- "As Long As He Needs Me" from *Oliver* by Lionel Bart
- "I Resolve" from *She Loves Me* by Jerry Bock and Sheldon Harnick
- "One of the Boys" from *Woman of the Year* by John Kander and Fred Ebb
- "Thank You" by Paul Herman and Dido Armstrong as sung by Dido
- "With Every Breath I Take" from *City of Angels* by Cy Coleman and David Zippel

Higher female voice belt songs

These songs are great for higher female voices wanting to belt up to D5:

- "Days of Plenty" from *Little Women* by Mindi Dickstein and Jason Howland
- "On the Other Side of the Tracks" from Little Me by Cy Coleman and Carolyn Leigh
- "Quiet" from *Matilda The Musical* by Tim Minchin
- "Nothing Stops Another Day" from *Ghost* by Glen Ballard, David Allan Stewart, and Bruce Joel Rubin
- "You Can't Get a Man with a Gun" from *Annie Get Your Gun* by Irving Berlin

IN THIS APPENDIX

- Finding the track listings
- Troubleshooting any problems

Appendix B
About the Online Tracks

All the musical examples included in Singing For Dummies, 3rd Edition, appear online at www.dummies.com/go/singingfd3e. You can find 63 exercises to improve your singing. In the chapters, next to the "Play This" icon, you can find an explanation and helpful instructions for each of the tracks.

REMEMBER

No singing experience is necessary to enjoy this book or the online tracks. Just follow the suggestions in the chapters to make consistent progress with your singing technique.

The suggestions and instructions in the chapters add helpful information to go with your listening pleasure as you sing along.

Recognizing What's Available: The Track Listings

Each track begins with the piano playing the melody or musical pattern you see printed on the page. After the piano plays the pattern, you hear a singer demonstrate the sounds of the pattern. The first time through, listen to the singer; then sing by yourself during the following repetitions of the pattern. Each pattern is repeated several times in several different keys, so you can practice extending

your range. The online tracks feature both male and female singers. Feel free to sing along with any of the tracks. If the demonstration is a male voice, look at the text in the chapter that corresponds with that track for tips on how to make the pattern work for a female voice.

TIP

If some of the patterns are too high for you, read the text in the corresponding chapter for help on getting your voice ready for the higher notes or other technical skills being addressed. You can also find suggestions on singing the pattern lower until you're ready for the higher notes.

As you listen to the online tracks, you may notice that the patterns gradually get harder. You don't have to sing every track today. You can work on the first few tracks until you're comfortable applying all the suggestions in the text. When you're really cooking, move on to the next group of exercises. You can also check out Chapter 10 for help designing a practice routine. Skipping some of the information you already know is always an option. If you're an advanced singer with some experience, you may want to skip to some of the harder patterns in the latter chapters. Go for it! If you find yourself struggling with some of the later patterns, back up and work on some of the earlier patterns a little longer. The online tracks are designed to keep you singing and practicing for quite some time.

After locating the online tracks, you can use the track skip control button on your audio player to move between tracks. The cue/review function is also a fast-forward or rewind feature, which allows you to fast-forward through a specific track to get to just the right repetition of the patterns. The chart in this chapter gives you the exact timing of each track.

REMEMBER

Following is a list of the online tracks, along with the timing of each track and the figure number within the chapter. A figure number has two numbers; the first is the chapter number, which helps you locate the chapter that corresponds with the track. (The second number, if you're curious, indicates the order of the figures within the chapter.) Some of the tracks don't have a musical example printed in the chapter. On these tracks, singers demonstrate specific skills that you can work within that chapter.

Track	(Time)	Figure Number	Pattern Description
1	1:31	N/A	Introduction to *Singing For Dummies*, 3rd Edition
2	1:13	4-1	Lip and tongue trills
3	0:38	N/A	Sliding on pitch (Chapter 5)
4	1:34	5-1	Bouncing the tongue and jaw
5	1:06	6-1	Creating a legato line

Track	(Time)	Figure Number	Pattern Description
6	1:02	6-2	Trilling a long, legato line
7	1:30	6-3	Managing long phrases
8	0:41	N/A	Straight tone and vibrato (Chapter 6)
9	1:18	8-2	Alternating vowels for precise lip shapes
10	1:06	8-4	Arching the tongue while alternating vowels
11	1:43	9-1	Singing tip consonants
12	1:30	9-2	Singing soft palate consonants
13	1:24	9-3	Singing lip consonants
14	1:00	9-4	Combining your consonants
15	1:09	11-3	Taking it down
16	1:43	11-4	Descending by step
17	1:16	11-5	Gliding through the middle
18	0:55	11-6	Moving along the four in middle voice
19	1:18	11-9	Singing fourth
20	1:10	11-10	Bringing up chest voice
21	1:17	11-13	Working with closed vowels
22	1:06	11-14	Spinning out in head voice
23	0:17	N/A	Demonstration of falsetto (Chapter 11)
24	0:50	11-15	Checking out your falsetto
25	0:51	11-16	Flipping out of falsetto
26	1:02	11-17	Gliding down out of falsetto
27	1:14	11-18	Sliding up to falsetto
28	1:23	11-19	Smoothing the transitions
29	1:28	11-20	Creating a legato line in and out of chest voice
30	1:22	11-21	Working from middle voice up to head voice
31	0:56	11-22	Spinning down
32	1:03	11-23	Sliding into a mix
33	1:29	11-24	Mixing it up

Track	(Time)	Figure Number	Pattern Description
34	1:36	11-25	Alternating between chest and head dominated mix
35	1:24	12-1	Skipping around on staccato
36	1:18	12-2	*Messa di voce*
37	2:27	12-3	Descending
38	1:15	12-4	Stepping between registers
39	1:04	12-5	Flexing on five notes
40	1:16	12-6	Sliding up the scale
41	0:56	12-7	Tripping along the scale
42	1:13	12-8	Spicing it up
43	1:46	12-9	Bouncing on thirds
44	0:42	12-10	Checking out pop riffs
45	0:38	12-11	Descending pop riff
46	1:43	N/A	Improvising with chords on the piano (Chapter 12)
47	0:59	N/A	Improvising with a pop tune (Chapter 12)
48	0:49	N/A	Improvising by yourself on a pop tune (Chapter 12)
49	0:53	N/A	Speaking up the scale: Give That Back! (Chapter 13)
50	0:21	N/A	Demonstration of chest voice and belt (Chapter 13)
51	0:15	N/A	Male belting demonstration (Chapter 13)
52	0:58	N/A	Speaking in a mix: I Wanna Know! (Chapter 13)
53	0:26	N/A	High-energy speaking sounds (Chapter 13)
54	0:29	N/A	Three types of resonance: Back, middle, and front (Chapter 13)
55	0:39	N/A	Nya Nya Nya (Chapter 13)
56	0:55	13-1	"That Ain't It Man"
57	035	13-2	Not Now
58	0:35	N/A	"Take Shelter, I'm a Belter" (Chapter 13)

Track	(Time)	Figure Number	Pattern Description
59	1:06	13-3	That's mine! That's mine!
60	0:39	N/A	"Let's Celebrate" (Chapter 13)
61	1:13	17-1	Speaking through the rhythms of "Simple Things" (Chapter 17)
62	1:18	17-1	Singing the melody of "Simple Things" on *a*h
63	2:27	17-1	"Simple Things" by Martha Sullivan © 2003

Tackling Any Potential Issues

If you have trouble with the online tracks, please call the Wiley Product Technical Support phone number at 800-762-2974. Outside the United States, call 317-572-3994. You can also contact Wiley Product Technical Support at `www.wiley.com/techsupport`. Wiley will provide technical support only for installation and other general quality control items. For technical support on the applications themselves, consult the program's vendor or author.

To place additional orders or to request information about other Wiley products, please call 877-762-2974.

Index

A

a capella songs, 294
abdominal muscles, practicing inhalation by releasing, 50–51
abuse of vocal cords, 311–312
accidentals, 287
accompanists
  befriending, 294–295
  description of, 307
  interviewing voice teachers about, 215
  for musical arrangement, 250–251
  rehearsing with, 287–288, 319–320
  selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 228
  singing with, 322
  treating respectfully, 294
acting
  songs for showcasing, 230
  when auditioning, 295–296
  when singing, 253–256
Adam's apple, locating larynx with, 69
ad-libbing, 286
adrenaline, 266
advanced exercises, 58–59
advanced songs, 225–226
age
  determining voice type, 16
  singing according to
    changes in, 207–208
    developing long-term technique, 206–207
    differences between young singers and teens, 205–206
    overview, 205
agents, hiring, 296
agility, developing
  defined, 168
  by practicing scales, 169–170
  skipping intervals, 170–171
alcohol, vocal abuse caused by, 309, 311–312
Alfaro, Xiomara, 300
alignment, body
  creating ideal posture
    balancing head and shoulders, 36–37
    balancing weight on feet, 32–33
    engaging legs, 34–35
    evaluating, 32
    hip placement, 35–36
    by lengthening spine, 36
  evaluating posture, 30–31
  overview, 29
  preparing for singing with, 9
  releasing tension for
    from face and head, 38–39
    overview, 37
    projecting confidence through, 40–42
    in upper body, 37–38
    when walking, 39–40
allergies, vocal abuse caused by, 312
alveolar ridge, shaping tip consonants with, 113
ankles, flexing for posture alignment, 34
antihistamines, combating dryness caused by, 316
anxiety, overcoming
  building confidence through, 272–275
  fears of, 265–266
  overview, 13
  by singing in choirs, 209
  through preparation
    blocking out audiences, 269–270
    focusing on strengths, 268
    managing negative thoughts, 268–269
    overview, 267
    by practicing, 267–268
    practicing concentration, 270–272
appoggio, 47, 59
arias, 230, 278
arms, releasing tension in, 38
articulation
  of consonants
    combinations of, 120–122
    from lips, 118–120
    overview, 111–112
    from soft palate, 116–118
    from tip, 113–116
    voiced and unvoiced, 112–113
  in musical arrangement, 249
  songs for practicing, 335
  of vowels
    back, sounds of, 102–106
    front, sounds of, 106–110
    overview, 101–102
    reasoning for, 11
articulators, 227
audiences, 269–270, 323
auditioning
  according to styles of music, 278–280
  acting preparation, 295–296
  advice from voice teachers about, 292

auditioning *(continued)*
befriending accompanists, 294–295
collecting songs for, 287
mentally preparing for, 296
online, 291, 293–294
outfits for, 292–293
overview, 13, 277
preparing for, 291–292
preparing music for, 289–291
selecting songs for
conditions to avoid, 283–284
connecting with lyrics in, 282–283
cutting, 285–286
key of, 284–285
marking, 286–287
overview, 281
rehearsing with accompanists, 287–288
showing versatility, 281–282
for televised performances, 280
aural exercises, 134
aural types, 133

B

B lip consonant, 118–119
B voiced consonant, 118–119
back phrasing, 200
back space
creating, 83
difference between front space and, 68
opening when ascending, 164
back vibrations, 188
back vowels, articulating, 102–106
backs, practicing inhalation by opening, 47–48
balanced diet, effect on singing ability, 315
bands, singing with, 322
bar, 285
baritenor, 22
baritone, 25
bass clef spaces, 8
bass voice type
in classical music, 25
determining for voice, 8
famous singers with, 23
identifying, 23–24
beginner songs, 224, 331
bel canto technique, 203, 308
bell register, 161
belt voice, comparing chest and, 183
belting
advanced forms of
modifying vowels, 193–194
overview, 191–192
sustaining, 192–193
body conditioning for, 192
of Colm Wilkinson, 303
differences between chest voice and, 143
female singer examples of, 195
improving by increasing speaking range, 180–181
male singer examples for, 194–195
modifying vowels for, 193–194
pitches in, 176–177
preparing for, 185–187
projecting resonance in
increasing range of, 190
mixed registration, 189
overview, 187
with scales, 190–191
vibrations of, 188–189
safely
comparing belt and chest voice, 183
by coordinating breath and energy, 185–186
for females compared to males, 184–185
noting limitations, 183
overview, 305
with speaking voices, 182–183
songs featuring, 195–197
songs for, 332, 340–341
with speaking voice, 175–177
technique of, 12
bent knees, released knees versus, 34
body alignment
creating ideal posture
balancing head and shoulders, 36–37
balancing weight on feet, 32–33
engaging legs, 34–35
evaluating, 32
hip placement, 35–36
by lengthening spine, 36
evaluating posture, 30–31
overview, 29
preparing for singing with, 9
releasing tension for
from face and head, 38–39
overview, 37
projecting confidence through, 40–42
in upper body, 37–38
when walking, 39–40
body conditioning, for belting, 192
body coordination, effect on vocal tone, 64
body energy
coordinating breath control with, 185–186
exerting, 165, 192
using to find clarity of tone, 181–182
body microphones, 325
body size, effect on vocal tone, 65
bottom lip, shaping consonants with, 119

bowing, 236–327
Breaking into Acting For Dummies (Garrison & Wang), 296
breath control
  coordinating body energy with, 185–186
  opening body to, 47–52
  overview, 43–44
  posture for, 46–52
  practicing exhalation
    exercises for, 44–46, 54–55
    with lip trills, 55
    overview, 54
    with resistance and suspending breath, 57–58
  practicing inhalation, 46–47
  sustaining tone with, 87–88
  taking quick inhalations, 44
  training, 58–61
  for vocal technique, 244–246
breathing
  improving lung capacity, 318
  keeping steady, 164–165
  methods for, 45
  overly, 51
  for singing, 10
  terms used in music for, 47
  through straws, 51–52
breathy tone, 81–82
bromelain, combating dryness caused by, 317
buddy system, 73
budgeting, for lessons, 213, 215

C

C (common time), 239
C4 (Middle C), 8–9, 71
cancellation policies, interviewing voice teachers about, 217
career, developing, 213
central note, 229
central speaking pitch, 177
CH combination consonant, 120–121
chanting, improving belting with, 177–178
character, getting into, 256–258
chest, releasing tension in, 37
chest voice
  ascending from middle voice to, 154–155
  comparing belt and, 183
  defined, 137
  descending from middle voice to, 153–154
  differences between belt and, 143
  of Eddie Kendricks, 301
  exercises for, 143, 144–145
  of Lady Gaga, 300–301
  overview, 142
  range of, 142–143
  strengthening, 11–12
chest voice-dominated mix, 157, 159
choirs, for singing with, 208–210
choral music, resonance in, 92
chords, singing with, 173–174
choreographed moves, pitfalls in, 261
clarity of tone
  improving with sighing, 84–85
  using body energy to find, 181–182
  vibrations created from, 82
classical music
  intermediate level songs for, 334
  musical elements in, 241
  resonance in, 92
  vibrato in, 88–89
classical voices, 25–26
closed vowels
  defined, 109
  feeling head voice by singing, 147
  transitioning with, 164
club music, auditioning to sing, 279–280
coach, description of, 307
coffee, limiting, 315
coloratura voices
  in classical music, 25, 26
  defined, 18
  subdivisions of, 24
combination consonants, articulating, 120–122
comfort zone, advancing beyond, 26–27, 224
common time (C), 239
composers, emphasizing syllables, 110
concentration, practicing, 269, 270–272
conditioning, for belting, 192
confidence, building
  devising plan of action for, 272–273
  evaluation, 274–275
  overview, 272
  through posture, 40–42
consonants
  articulating
    combinations of, 120–122
    from lip, 118–120
    overview, 111–112
    reasoning for, 11
    from soft palate, 116–118
    from tip, 113–116
    voiced and unvoiced, 112–113
  cutting off, 121
constricted sounds, 82

constructive criticism, from voice teachers, 206, 217–218
contralto, 20
controlled breathing
coordinating body energy with, 185–186
opening body to, 47–52
overview, 43–44
posture for, 46–52
practicing exhalation
exercises for, 44–46, 54–55
with lip trills, 55
overview, 54
with resistance and suspending breath, 57–58
practicing inhalation, 46–47
sustaining tone with, 87–88
taking quick inhalations, 44
training, 58–61
for vocal technique, 244–246
conversational material, 93
coordinating breath, 83–84
cost, of lessons, 216
cough medicines, combating dryness caused by, 317
countertenor, 22
country music
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
examples of singers, 89, 200
intermediate level songs for, 334
resonance in, 92
sounds in, 200
training for, 200
vibrato in, 89
cracking, preventing, 270
criticism
effect on vocal tone, 206
from voice teachers, 217–218
crooning, 93
crying, vocal cord abuse from, 318
cue/review function, for online tracks, 344
cycle of vibration, 66

D

D voiced consonant, 113–114
D5 note, belting up to, 341
dampening sound, 125
dancing, when singing, 262–263
deadlines, for practicing, 267–268
decongestants, combating dryness caused by, 317
decrescendo, 167
diaphragm
description of, 45
during exhalation, 57
movement of, 44
diction classes, 204
difficulty level of songs, selecting, 223–230
digital sheet music, bringing to auditions, 290
directional symbols, 286
discipline, improving technique with, 131
distractions, ignoring when performing, 269, 323–324
doo-wop music, belting in, 196
downloading sheet music, 231–232
dramatic voices, 18, 24
dust, vocal abuse caused by, 312
dynamics, in musical arrangement, 166–167, 249

E

ear, nose, and throat doctors (ENTs), 314
ear training, 206, 209
echoing sound, 125
education, interviewing voice teachers about, 214–215
elbows, releasing tension in, 38
electronic amplification, 322
emotions, effect on vocal tone, 64, 306
endurance, developing, 58, 133
energy, body
coordinating breath control with, 185–186
exerting, 165, 192
using to find clarity of tone, 181–182
English vowels, sung by non-English speakers, 110
entertainment industry resume, 292
entrances, 322–323
ENTs (ear, nose, and throat doctors), 314
evaluation, progressing with, 274–275
exclamatory sounds, coordinating breath and tone with, 84
exercises
ascending from chest voice to middle voice, 154–155
ascending from middle voice to head voice, 155–156
aural types, 134
breath control, 51–52, 54–55
for chanting, 178
chest voice, 144–145
descending from head voice to middle voice, 156
descending from middle voice to chest voice, 153–154
developing muscle memory, 73
dropping jaw, 67–68
exhalation, 54–55
female middle voice range development, 140–142
finding optimum pitch, 179

head voice, 146–148
imitating sounds, 67
to increase speaking range, 180
inhalation, 53
kinesthetic types, 134
lip trills, 55–56
male middle voice range development, 140–142
messa di voce, 165–166
nasal resonance, 97–98
opening back, 48
opening chest, 49
opening ribs, 49
posture, 130
releasing abs, 51, 59
releasing ribs, 59–60
resonance, 94–95
selecting, 130–131
singing, 134
sliding higher or lower on notes, 72
sliding up and down on pitch, 72
slowing down breathing, 52
for speaking voices, 176–177
staccato, 165–166
suspending muscles of exhalation, 57
exhalation
defined, 44
diaphragm during, 57
practicing
exercises for, 44–46, 54–55
with lip trills, 55
overview, 54
with resistance and suspending breath, 57–58
expectations, for voice teachers, 217–218
experience, interviewing voice teachers about level of, 214–215
extreme fatigue, after singing, 58
eyes, focusing when singing, 259–260

F

F lip consonant, 119
face, releasing tension in, 38–39
fach, 278
facial expressions, in choirs compared to soloists, 210
falsetto
ascending from, 151–152
of Bruno Mars, 301
descending from, 150–151
developing, 148–153
male songs for, 339–340
fast-paced songs, practicing breath control for, 60, 87–88
fatigue
after singing, 58
building endurance to avoid, 133
caused from larynx position, 69
lessening by selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level of, 227
fear of performing, 265–266
feet, balancing weight on, 32–33
female voices
belt singers, 195
belt songs for, 340–341
healthy belting for males compared to, 184–185
low, songs for, 337
middle voice range, 139
mix for, 158–161
mix songs for, 338–339
online tracks for, 344
flageolet, 149, 161
flashing lights, being distracted by, 323
flats, 9
flaws, overworking, 219–220
floor level microphones, 325
Flórez, Juan Diego, 300
flute register, 161
focusing eyes, when singing, 259–260
folk music, vibrato in, 89
foods, vocal abuse caused by, 312
forward nasal resonance, 93
4/4 time signature, 239
fraction, 239
front versus back space, 68
front vibrations, 188
front vowels, articulating, 106–110
full voices, 18, 24

G

G soft palate consonant, 116–117
Gaga, Lady, 300–301
gaining weight, effect on singing ability, 61
gasping, difference between quick inhalations and, 52–53
genres of music
arrangement of, 250–251
auditioning according to, 278–280
belting in, 196
musical theater
auditioning for, 279, 282
belting in, 196
musical elements in, 241
resonance in, 92
sounds in, 201
training for, 201–202
vibrato in, 89
opera
auditioning for, 278, 282
sounds in, 203
training for, 203–204

genres of music *(continued)*
pop
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
improvision in, 171–174
phrasing in, 241
resonance in, 93
sounds in, 202
vibrato in, 89
pop-rock, training for, 202–203
R&B
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
sounds in, 204
training for, 204
vibrato in, 89
resonance in, 92–94
rock
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
resonance in, 93
vibrato in, 89
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 229–230
vibrato in, 89
gesturing
pitfalls in, 261
when performing, 324–325
when singing, 260–262
glottal cycle, 66
guaifenesin, combating dryness caused by, 317
guitar, singing while playing, 41–42
Guitar For Dummies (Phillips & Chappell), 229

H

handheld microphones, 325–326
hands, releasing tension in, 38
hard copies, bringing to auditions, 289–290
head
balancing for posture alignment, 36–37
releasing tension in, 38–39
shape and size affecting vocal tone, 64
head voice. *See also* falsetto
ascending from middle voice to, 155–156
defined, 137
descending from middle voice to, 156
exercises for, 146–148
of Lady Gaga, 301
male range for, 146
of Minnie Riperton, 302
overview, 145
range of, 145–146
strengthening, 11–12
head voice–dominated mix, 157, 159
healthy belting. *See* safe belting
healthy singing technique. *See* safe singing technique
heldentenor, 22
high notes
extending range to reach, 165–166
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level of, 226–227
songs for showcasing, 230
high-energy speaking sounds, improving belting with, 187
higher voices, songs for, 26, 338, 340–341
high-resting larynxes, 69–71
hip placement, aligning posture with, 35–36
hook, 247
humidifiers, combating dryness caused by, 317
humming, 82, 94–95
humorous songs, 231
hydration, maintaining vocal health with, 314–315
hymn, 247

I

ice cream, avoiding before singing, 309–310
imagery, from voice teachers, 218
imitating vibrato, 90
improvement, charting, 273
improvision, in pop music
defined, 172
overview, 171–172
patterns in, 172–173
singing with chords, 173–174
infections, preventing, 316–318
inhalation
defined, 44
releasing tone with, 85
through nose and mouth together, 46
innie breathing method, 45
instrumentalists, singing with, 322
instruments, singing while playing, 41–42
interludes, 250, 255–256
intermediate songs, 224–225, 332
classical, 334
country, 334
musical theater, 333
pop-rock, 333
International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), 102
intervals
defined, 226
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 226
skipping, 170–171
IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet), 102

J

J combination consonant, 120–121
jaw
  dropping to improve vocal tone, 67–68
  releasing tension in, 74–77
  shaping back vowels with, 103
  shaping front vowels with, 104–110
jazz music
  of Lady Gaga, 300–301
  phrasing in, 241
  resonance in, 92
  singers, 92–93, 201
  sounds in, 200
  training for, 200–201
jerky movements, 126–127

K

K soft palate consonant, 116–117
karaoke machines, correcting pitch with, 203
Kendricks, Eddie, 301
key
  defined, 229
  selecting for audition songs, 284–285
  selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 229, 332
keyboards, practicing with, 126
kinesthetic exercises, 134
kinesthetic types, 133

L

L voiced consonant, 113–114
Lady Gaga, 300–301
language, in opera music, 204
laryngologists, finding root cause for vocal cord problems with, 314
larynx
  defined, 66
  influencing vocal tone, 68–71
  locating with Adam's apple, 69
  steadying, 171
laughter, coordinating breath and tone with, 84
lead sheet music, 290
leading, when rehearsing with accompanists, 288
Lecuona, Ernesto, 300
ledger lines, 8
legato, sustaining tone with, 86–87
legit material, 93
legit sounds, 201
legs, posture support from, 34–35
lessons, singing
  expectations for, 219–220
  getting recommendations for, 212
  interviewing voice teachers on, 215–216
  recording, 220
libraries, obtaining sheet music from, 233
licks, 172
light voices, 24
lights, being distracted by, 323
links, to live performances, 294
lip consonants, articulating, 118–120
lip trills
  exercises for, 56
  instructions for, 82
  practicing exhalation with, 55–56
  sustaining tone with, 87
lips, shaping with
  back vowels, 103
  combination consonants, 120–121
  front vowels, 104–110
  lip consonants, 118–119
  soft palate consonants, 117
  tip consonants, 115
  voiced and unvoiced consonants, 114
live performance links, 294
location of voice lessons, 215–216
long-term technique, developing, 206–207
losing weight, effect on singing ability, 61
lower voices, songs for, 338
  belt songs for, 341
  for female voices, 26, 337
  for male voices, 27, 337
  showcasing, 231
lung capacity, effect on voice, 65, 318
lymph flowing, 253
lyric voices, 24
lyrics
  connecting with, 282–283
  focusing on meaning of, 254–255
  memorizing, 236–238, 268
  putting melody together with, 241–242
  relating to, 282

M

M lip consonant, 118–119
M voiced consonant, 118–119
male voices
  belt singers, 194–195
  falsetto songs for, 339–340
  head voice range, 146
  healthy belting for females compared to, 184–185
  low, songs for, 337
  mix for, 157–158
  mix songs for, 338–339
  online tracks for, 344

marking songs, 286–287
Mars, Bruno, 301
mastering new songs
  memorizing lyrics, 236–238
  overview, 235
  putting lyrics and melody together, 241–242
  singing melody, 240–241
  in steps, 235–236
  tapping out rhythm, 239
matching pitch, 71–72
measures, 239, 285
medications, vocal abuse caused by, 312, 316–317
melody
  direction of, 235–236
  putting lyrics together with, 241–242
  singing, 240–241
Méndez, Tomás, 300
menopause, voice changes with, 207
menstrual cycle, voice changes with, 207
mental preparation, for auditioning, 296
messa di voce exercise, 166–167
mezzo belter, 21
mezzo-soprano voice type
  arias for, 230
  in classical music, 25
  determining for voice, 8
  famous singers with, 21
  identifying, 20–21
  struggles with chest voice for, 145–146
  subdivisions of, 21
microphones, correcting pitch with, 203, 325–326
Middle C (C4), 8–9, 71
middle vibrations, 188
middle voice
  ascending to chest voice, 154–155
  ascending to head voice, 155–156
  defined, 138, 178–179
  descending to chest voice, 153–154
  descending to head voice, 156
  for females, 139, 140
  for males, 140
  overview, 138
  range of, 139
  singing in, 140–142
  strengthening, 11–12
mirrors, practicing in front of, 126
misconceptions, about resonance, 98–100
mix
  chest voice-dominated, 157, 159
  for female voices, 158–161
  head voice-dominated, 157, 159
  for male voices, 157–158
  overview, 157
  songs for, 159, 339
  for speaking, 186–187
mix belt, 185
mixed registration, projecting when belting with, 189
monotone, 180
motivation, driving characters in songs, 258
mouth opening, misconceptions about, 100
mucus, thinning, 317
muscle memory, developing, 58, 73
muscles
  balancing to head and chest voice, 157
  coordination, developing, 58
  exercises for, 57, 73
  influencing vocal tone
    dropping jaw, 67–68
    dropping larynx, 69–71
    overview, 66
    position of larynx, 68–69
    tension-free sounds, 66–67
    vocal cords, 66
  practicing inhalation by releasing abs, 50–51
  relaxing in throat, 86
music
  practicing with, 126
  preparing for auditioning, 289–291
music books, ordering, 232
music genres
  arrangement of, 250–251
  auditioning according to, 278–280
  belting in, 196
  choral, resonance in, 92
  classical
    intermediate level songs for, 334
    musical elements in, 241
    resonance in, 92
    vibrato in, 88–89
  club, auditioning to sing, 279–280
  country
    auditioning for, 282
    belting in, 196
    intermediate level songs for, 334
    resonance in, 92
    sounds in, 200
    training for, 200
    vibrato in, 89
  doo-wop, belting in, 196
  folk, vibrato in, 89
  jazz
    of Lady Gaga, 300–301
    phrasing in, 241

resonance in, 92
sounds in, 200
training for, 200–201
musical theater
auditioning for, 279
belting in, 196
musical elements in, 241
resonance in, 92
sounds in, 201
training for, 201–202
vibrato in, 89
opera
auditioning for, 278, 282
sounds in, 203
training for, 203–204
overview, 2
pop
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
improvision in, 171–174
phrasing in, 241
resonance in, 93
sounds in, 202
vibrato in, 89
pop-rock, training for, 202–203
R&B
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
sounds in, 204
training for, 204
vibrato in, 89
resonance in, 92–94
rock
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
resonance in, 93
vibrato in, 89
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 229–230
vibrato in, 89
music school, getting recommendations for voice teachers from, 212
music stores, getting recommendations for voice teachers from, 212
Music Theory For Dummies (Pilhofer, Day), 236
musical arrangement, 248–252
musical notation, marking, 288
musical responses, 255
musical staff notes, preparing for singing by locating, 8–9
musical theater music
auditioning for, 279, 282
belting in, 196
intermediate level songs, 333
musical elements in, 241
resonance in, 92
singers, 89, 202
sounds in, 201
training for, 201–202
vibrato in, 89

N

N voiced consonant, 113–114
nasal resonance, 97–98
nasal sprays, combating dryness caused by, 316, 317
nasality, eliminating in resonance
by coordinating soft palate and tongue, 96–97
with nasal resonance, 97–98
overview, 94–95
with soft palate, 95–96
neck, releasing tension in, 75–77
neck size, effect on singing ability, 308
negative thoughts, managing, 268–269
nervous ticks, 32
neti pots, preventing infection with, 316
neutral position, for larynx, 69
new teachers, 214
NG soft palate consonant, 116–117
nodes, on vocal cords, 307–308, 313
non-native speakers, singing of English vowels by, 110
notes
belting up to D5, 341
central, 229
cutting off, 121
defined, 65
extending range to reach higher, 165–166
holding, 240
sliding higher or lower on, 72, 151
songs for showcasing, 230
whistle, 161
noting limitations, in belting, 183
nutrition, maintaining vocal health with, 315

O

octaves, 9, 138
online auditions, 293–294
online resources
articles about auditioning, 291
audio tracks, 3, 4, 343–347
Cheat Sheet, 4
information on tapping for anxiety, 269
musical examples in book, 343
online profiles for auditions, creating, 291
for practicing singing, 134
recommendations for voice teachers, 212
sheet music, 231
Wiley Product Technical Support, 347
online tracks, for this book, 343–344

online voice teachers, 212
onset of tone, 82–83
open space, creating, 83
open vowels, 109
opera music, 203–204, 278, 282
operative words, 236, 242
optimum pitch, 179, 313
outfits
  for auditioning, 292–293
  for performing, 320–321
  for televised performances, 280
outie breathing method, 45–46
over-breathing, 51
overdone songs, avoiding, 284
over-practicing, 267
oxytocin, release of, 252

P

P lip consonant, 118–119
P voiced consonant, 118–119
pain, when singing, 314
pain medications, researching, 317
pantomiming, pitfalls in, 261
paraphrased translation of songs, 262
parasympathetic nervous system, improving function of, 252
payment policies, interviewing voice teachers about, 216
perfect pitch, 71
performance anxiety, overcoming
  blocking out audiences, 269–270
  building confidence, 272–275
  fears of, 265–266
  focusing on strengths, 268
  managing negative thoughts, 268–269
  overview, 13, 267
  by practicing, 267–268
  practicing concentration, 270–272
  by singing in choirs, 209
performance roles
  of basses, 23
  of mezzos, 21
  for sopranos, 19
  of tenors, 22
performing
  gesturing, 324–325
  ignoring distractions, 323–324
  including audiences, 323
  leaving stages, 326–327
  making entrances, 322–323
  outfits for, 320–321
  overview, 319
  practicing walking when, 321
  rehearsing with accompanists, 319–320
  singing with accompanists, 322
  using microphones, 325–326
phrases, working backward, 243–244
physical activity, when warming up, 129
pianists. *See* accompanists
Piano For Dummies (Neely), 229, 239
pitch
  avoiding bobbing head for, 148
  in belting, 176–177
  central for speaking, 177
  defined, 65
  dropping larynx by sliding around on, 71
  matching, 71–74
  misconceptions about, 100
  optimum, 179, 313
  perfect, 71
  relative, 71
  sliding up and down on, 72
pitch deaf, 65
plan of action, 258–259, 272–273
pollen, vocal abuse caused by, 312
pop music
  auditioning for, 282
  belting in, 196
  improvision in
    overview, 171–172
    patterns in, 172–173
    singing with chords, 173–174
  phrasing in, 241
  resonance in, 93
  sounds in, 202
  vibrato in, 89
pop singers, 89, 203
pop-rock music, 202–203, 333
postlude, 250
posture
  aligning
    balancing head and shoulders, 36–37
    by balancing weight on feet, 32–33
    engaging legs, 34–35
    evaluating, 32
    hip placement, 35–36
    lengthening spine, 36
  correcting, 10
  experimenting singing in varieties of, 130
practice exercises
  for ascending from chest voice to middle voice, 154–155
  for ascending from middle voice to head voice, 155–156
  for aural types, 134
  belting through scales, 190
  for breath control, 51–52, 54–55
  for chanting, 178
  for chest voice, 144–145

for descending, 153–154
for descending from head voice to middle voice, 156
for descending from middle voice to chest voice, 153–154
to develop suspending muscles of exhalation, 57
for developing muscle memory, 73
dropping jaw, 67–68
for finding optimum pitch, 179
for head voice, 146–148
imitating sounds, 67
to increase speaking range, 180
for inhalation, 53
for kinesthetic types, 134
for lip trills, 55–56
messa di voce, 165–166
for middle voice range development, 140–142
for nasal resonance, 97–98
for opening back, 48
for opening chest, 49
for opening ribs, 49
for posture, 130
for practicing exhalation, 54–55
for practicing singing, 134
for releasing abs, 51, 59
for releasing ribs, 59–60
for resonance, 94–95
selecting, 130–131
sliding higher or lower on notes, 72
for sliding up and down on pitch, 72
for slowing down breathing, 52
for speaking voices, 176–177
for staccato, 165–166
practicing
answers to frequently asked questions about, 124–127
daily sample sessions for, 132
developing routines for, 123–124, 219
difference between warming up and, 129
overcoming performance anxiety by, 267–268
progressively, 133–134
pronouncing, 11
setting deadlines for, 267–268
tools to help with, 126–127
warming up for, 127–130
prelude, 250
preparation
for auditions, 291–292
managing negative thoughts, 268–269
overcoming performance anxiety through
blocking out audiences, 269–270
focusing on strengths, 268
overview, 267
by practicing, 267–268
practicing concentration, 270–272
professional help, seeking, 313–314
projecting resonance, in belting
increasing range of, 190
mixed registration, 189
overview, 187
with scales, 190–191
vibrations of, 188–189
pronunciation symbols, 102
puberty, voice changes with, 206–207
punctuation, in songs, 245–246

Q

Q soft palate consonant, 116–117
questions about practicing, 124–127
quick inhalations, 52–54

R

R tip consonant, 115–116
R&B music
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
singers, 89, 204
sounds in, 204
training for, 204
vibrato in, 89
range
of basses, 23
of chest voice, 142–143
determining for voice type, 16, 18
developing in young singers, 206–207
for female middle voice, 139
of head voice, 145–146
increasing when belting, 190
for male head voice, 146
of mezzos, 20
of middle voice, 139
present in young singers, 205
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 226
songs for showcasing, 231
of sopranos, 19
recordings
bringing to auditions, 290–291
practicing with, 126, 177
registers
chest voice
ascending from middle voice to, 154–155
comparing belt and, 183
defined, 137
descending from middle voice to, 153–154
differences between belt and, 143
exercises for, 143, 144–145

registers *(continued)*
overview, 142
range of, 142–143
strengthening, 11–12
combining, 185
determining for voice type, 16
developing
chest voice, 142–145
falsetto, 148–153
head voice, 145–148
middle voice, 138–142
mix, 157–161
overview, 137–138
transitions, 153–156
head voice
ascending from middle voice to, 155–156
defined, 137
descending from middle voice to, 156
exercises for, 146–148
overview, 145
range of, 145–146
strengthening, 11–12
middle voice
female range for, 139
for females, 140
for males, 140
mix belt, 185
by strengthening, 11–12
transitions of
for basses, 23, 24
extending range for, 165
for mezzos, 20
moving between, 167–168
overview, 17
for sopranos, 19
tactics for singing through, 164–165
registration, 189
rehabilitating voices, 214
rehearsing, with accompanists, 287–288
relative pitch, 71
released versus bent knees, 35
resistance, practicing exhalation with, 57–58
resonance
defined, 10–11
in different styles of music, 92–94
eliminating nasality
by coordinating soft palate and tongue, 96–97
with nasal resonance, 97–98
overview, 94–95
with soft palate, 95–96
exercises for, 94–95
forward nasal form of, 93
importance of variety in, 100
maintaining when singing vowels, 193
misconceptions about, 98–100
opening space for, 65
overview, 91
projecting when belting, 187–191
resonators influencing, 91, 94
sympathetic, 98
resumes, for entertainment industry, 292
rhythm
according to syllables, 236
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level of, 229
tapping out, 239
ribs, practicing inhalation by flexing, 48–49
riffs, 172, 241
Riperton, Minnie, 302
rock music
auditioning for, 282
belting in, 196
phrasing in, 241
resonance in, 93
vibrato in, 89
routines, for practicing singing, 123–124

S

S unvoiced consonant, 113–114
safe belting
comparing belt to chest voice, 183
by coordinating breath and energy, 185–186
for females compared to males, 184–185
noting limitations, 183
overview, 182–183
safe singing technique, 200–204
saltwater, preventing infection by gargling with, 316
scales
descending from, 164
practicing, 169–170
projecting when belting with, 190–191
skipping notes along, 165
scatting, 201
scratchy voice, 307–308
self-confidence, importance of, 280
SH combination consonant, 120–121
sharps, 9
sheet music, 230–233, 290
Shkidchenko, Sofia, 302
shoulders
balancing for posture alignment, 36–37
creating ideal posture by balancing, 36–37
releasing tension in, 38
standing in position of, 33
sides, practicing inhalation by stretching, 49–50
sighing, improving vocal tone by, 84–85
singers
of classical music, 88–89
of country music, 89, 200
female belt, 195

of folk music, 89
with good technique
Bruno Mars, 301
Colm Wilkinson, 304
Eddie Kendricks, 301
Josh Turner, 303
Juan Diego Flórez, 300
Lady Gaga, 300–301
Meryl Streep, 303
Minnie Riperton, 302
overview, 299
Sofia Shkidchenko, 302
Xiomara Alfaro, 300
imitating varieties of resonance from, 93
of jazz music, 92–93, 201
male belt, 194–195
of musical theater music, 89, 202
of opera, 204
of pop music, 89, 203
of R&B music, 89, 204
of rock music, 89
teen, range for, 205–206
young, range for, 88, 205–206
singing
answers to frequently asked questions about, 305–310
with bands, 322
on breath, 47
developing career in, 213
dropping larynx before, 71
English vowels by non-English speakers, 110
having fun while, 13–14
with instrumentalists, 322
length of time to learn, 310
methods of, 308
methods used by voice teachers, 218
in middle voice, 140–142
moving around when
dancing, 262–263
focusing eyes, 259–260
gesturing, 260–262
overview, 259
neck size affecting, 308
preparing for
applying technique to, 12–13
by determining voice type, 8
finding unique quality to voice, 10–11
by locating musical staff notes, 8–9
overview, 7
with proper posture, 9
by strengthening registers, 11–12
recording practices, 133
safe technique for, 200–204
selecting songs that emphasize strengths, 230–231
training for
according to age, 205–208
with choirs, 208–210
overview, 199
specific genres of music, 199–204
walking while, 39
while playing an instrument, 41–42
singing career, developing, 213
sirening, improving vocal tone with, 84, 164
sit bones, defined, 36
sleep, maintaining vocal health with, 315
smelling, to drop larynx, 70
smiling, while singing, 100, 322
smoking, vocal abuse caused by, 312
social skills, improving by singing in choirs, 209
soda, limiting, 315
soft palate consonants, articulating, 116–118
soft palate, eliminating nasality by coordinating, 95–96
solo singing versus singing in choirs, 209–210
songs
acting when singing, 253–256
advanced level, 225–226
for advancing belt, 338–339
for advancing falsetto, 338–339
for advancing mix, 338–339
age-appropriate, 283
for agility, 335
for articulation, 335
for beginners, 224, 331–332
with belting, 195–197, 332
for breath coordination, 336
a capella, 294
central note of, 229
characterizing, 256–257
choosing for voice type, 12–13
downloading in various keys, 285
emphasizing strengths with, 230–231
fast-paced, practicing breath control for, 60
featuring falsetto, 152
featuring mix, 159
getting into character with, 256–258
humorous, 231
interlude to, 250
intermediate level, 224–225, 332–333
for legato phrases, 336
mastering
memorizing lyrics, 236–238
overview, 235
putting lyrics and melody together, 241–242
singing melody, 240–241
in steps, 235–236
tapping out rhythm, 239
moving around when singing
dancing, 262–263
focusing eyes, 259–260
gesturing, 260–262
overview, 259

songs *(continued)*
musical arrangement in, 248–252
overdone, avoiding, 284
postlude to, 250
prelude to, 250
for range and registers according to voice type, 336–338
recording singing along to, 74
register transitions, 335–336
selecting appropriate difficulty level of
accompaniment, 228
detailing, 228
fatigue, 227
higher notes, 226–227
intervals, 226
key, 229
overview, 223–226
range, 226
rhythm, 229
speed, 227
style, 229–230
selecting for auditions
conditions to avoid, 283–284
connecting with lyrics in, 282–283
cutting, 285–286
key of, 284–285
marking, 286–287
overview, 281
rehearsing with accompanists, 287–288
showcasing versatility, 281–282
sheet music for, 230–233
translating into other languages, 262
transposing, 284–285
vocal technique in
articulating vowels, 242
breath control, 244–246
changing sections of, 247
overview, 242
working phrases backward, 243–244
soprano belter, 19
soprano voice type
arias for, 230
belting for, 190
in classical music, 25
determining in voice, 8
famous singers with, 19
identifying, 18–19
sore throats, preventing and healing, 316–318
sound systems, correcting pitch with, 203
sounds
constricted, 82
in country music, 200
dampening, 125
dropping larynx by practicing, 70–71
echoing, 125
exclamatory, coordinating breath and tone with, 84
imitating, 90
in jazz music, 200
legit, 201
monitoring based on feeling, 208
in musical theater music, 201
nasality, eliminating, 95
in opera music, 203
in pop music, 202
in R&B music, 204
relying on feeling instead of, 83
shaping back vowels, 102–104
shaping front vowels, 104–110
speaking voice
exercises to improve, 176–177
improving belting by increasing range, 180–181
maintaining healthy habits for, 313
vocal abuse caused by, 313
specialists, help with singing ability from, 307
speed. *See also* tempo
of breathing when singing, 246
selecting songs with appropriate difficulty level, 227
spine, lengthening for posture alignment, 36
staccato, 165–166
stages, leaving after performances, 326–327
stamina, developing, 58
stanza, 247
stationary microphones, 325–326
steady breathing, 165–166
stepwise motion, 226
stories, viewing songs as, 253
straight tone, singing vibrato instead of, 89–90
straining, 178–179
stream of vowels, 242–243
Streep, Meryl, 303
strengths, focusing on, 268
stretching, warming up by, 127–129
strophic, 247
stuffy noses, preventing, 46
successful auditions, tips for
acting, 295–296
befriending accompanists, 294–295
mentally preparing for, 296
online, 293–294
outfits for, 292–293
overview, 290–291
preparing for, 291–292
support for breathing when singing, 47
suspending breath, practicing exhalation with, 57–58

sustained belting, 192–193
sustained tones, 303
syllables, 110, 236
symbols, in music, 102, 286
sympathetic resonance, 98
sympathetic vibrations, 98

T

T voiced consonant, 113–114
talent, showcasing, 278
teachers, voice
  audition advice from, 292
  choosing, 211–213
  constructive criticism from, 206, 217–218
  cooperating with, 219–220
  description of, 307
  expectations for, 217–218
  getting recommendations for, 212
  interviewing about
    accompaniment ability, 215
    cancellation policies, 217
    cost of lessons, 216
    education, 214–215
    experience-level, 214
    location of lessons, 215–216
    music genres, 215
    overview, 214
    payment policies, 216
  lessons with, 219–220
technique
  applying to singing, 12–13
  bel canto, 203, 308
  of belting, 12
  improving
    beginner songs, 332
    intermediate songs, 333–334
    mix, belt, and falsetto, 338–341
    overview, 331–332
    range and registers, 336–338
    technical lessons, 334–336
  singers with excellent
    Bruno Mars, 301
    Colm Wilkinson, 304
    Eddie Kendricks, 301
    Josh Turner, 303
    Juan Diego Flórez, 300
    Lady Gaga, 300–301
    Meryl Streep, 303
    Minnie Riperton, 302
    overview, 299
    Sofia Shkidchenko, 302
    Xiomara Alfaro, 300
  for singing safely, 200–204
  for vocals
    articulating vowels, 242
    breath control, 244–246
    changing sections of, 247
    overview, 242
    working phrases backward, 243–244
teen singers, 205–206
televised performances, auditioning for, 280
tempo
  changes in, 286
  defined, 236
  in musical arrangement, 249–250
tenor voice type
  belting for, 190
  in classical music, 25
  determining for voice, 8
  famous singers with, 22
  identifying, 21–22
  subdivisions of, 21
tension, releasing
  effect on vocal tone, 65
  in face and head, 38–39
  to improve vocal tone, 74–77
  overview, 37
  projecting confidence through posture, 40–42
  in upper body, 37–38
  when walking, 39–40
tension-free sounds, influencing vocal tone with, 66–67
terms, used for vocal tone, 65
tessitura
  according to voice type, 18
  of Bruno Mars, 301
  defined, 16
  of sopranos, 20
TH tip consonant, 114–115
throat, shape and size of, 64
throat clearing, vocal abuse caused by, 312
tight tone, 82
timbre, 250
time signature, reading, 239
timing of breaths when singing, 246
tip consonants, articulating, 113–116
tone
  creating
    with back space, 83
    by coordinating breath, 83–84
    onset of tone, 82–83
    with practice exercises, 64
    by sighing, 84–85
    varieties of, 81–82
  defined, 63, 65
  experimenting with, 17
  factors that affect, 64–65
  matching pitches, 71–74
  of mezzos, 20
  misconceptions about, 98–99
  mono, 180
  muscles that influence
    dropping jaw, 67–68
    dropping larynx, 69–71

tone *(continued)*
overview, 66
position of larynx, 68–69
tension-free sounds, 66–67
vocal cords, 66
releasing tension to improve, 74–77
releasing tone to improve, 84–85
singing vibrato instead of straight, 89–90
songs for showcasing, 230
of sopranos, 19
sustaining, 86–88
of tenors, 21
terms used for, 65
vibrato in, 88–90
for vocals, 10
tone deaf, 65
tongue trills
exercises for, 56
instructions for, 82
practicing exhalation with, 55–56
sustaining tone with, 87
tongues
dropping larynx by opening space behind, 70
eliminating nasality by coordinating, 96–97
misconceptions about placement of, 99
releasing tension in, 75–77
shaping with
back vowels, 102–103
combination consonants, 120–121
front vowels, 104–110
lip consonants, 118–119
soft palate consonants, 117
tip consonants, 115
voiced and unvoiced consonants, 113
tonic, 229
training
for breath control, 58–61
to sing by ear, 206, 209
for singing, 12
for young singers, 205–206
transitions
in and out of chest voice, 153–155
in and out of head voice, 155–156
of registers
extending range for, 165
moving between, 167–168
tactics for singing through, 164–165
transposing songs, 285
treble clef spaces, 8
tremolo, 88
trills, lip and tongue
exercises for, 56
instructions for, 82
practicing exhalation with, 55–56
sustaining tone with, 87
tripod, balancing on, 32–33
Turner, Josh, 303
twang, 93, 187
typing, 279

U

unhealthy belting, 305
unvoiced consonants, articulating, 112–113
upper body, releasing tension in, 37–38
up-tempo, 261

V

V lip consonant, 119
vagus nerve, stimulating, 252
versatility, showcasing in auditions, 281–282
vibrations
according to tone, 82
in back, 188
created from clarity of tone, 82
in front, 188
lip trills, 55–56, 87
in middle, 188
producing sound with vocal cords through, 66
projecting when belting with, 188–189
sympathetic, 98
tongue trills, 55–56, 87
vibrato
of Colm Wilkinson, 303
defined, 88–89
difference between wobble and, 208
imitating, 90
of Juan Diego Flórez, 300
moving from straight tone to, 89–90
without, 210
visualization exercises, 133
vocal abuse, 311–312
vocal cords
emotions affecting, 306
influencing vocal tone, 66
nodes on, 307–308
vocal health, maintaining
avoiding crying, 318
factors that put stress on voices, 311–312
with healthy speaking habits, 313
with nutrition, 315
overview, 311
preventing sore throats and infections, 316–318
by seeking professional help, 313–314
with sleep, 315
by staying hydrated, 314–315
vocal sounds, exploring, 11

vocal subdivisions, 24
vocal technique
articulating vowels, 242
breath control, 244–246
changing sections of, 247
improving
beginner songs, 332
intermediate songs, 333–334
mix, belt, and falsetto, working on, 338–341
overview, 331–332
range and registers, working on, 336–338
technical lessons, practicing, 334–336
overview, 242
singers with excellent
Bruno Mars, 301
Colm Wilkinson, 304
Eddie Kendricks, 301
Josh Turner, 303
Juan Diego Flórez, 300
Lady Gaga, 300–301
Meryl Streep, 303
Minnie Riperton, 302
overview, 299
Sofia Shkidchenko, 302
Xiomara Alfaro, 300
working phrases backward, 243–244
vocal tone
creating
with back space, 83
by coordinating breath, 83–84
onset of tone, 82–83
overview, 64
by sighing, 84–85
varieties of, 81–82
defined, 10, 63
experimenting with, 17
factors that affect, 64–65
improving with sighing, 84–85
improving with sirening, 84
matching pitches, 71–74
of mezzos, 20
muscles that influence, 66–71
releasing tension to improve, 74–77
releasing tone to improve, 84–85
songs for showcasing, 230
of sopranos, 19
straight, 88–90
sustaining, 86–88
of tenors, 21
terms used for, 65
vibrato in, 88–90
vocal variety, in musical arrangement, 250
voice lessons
expectations for, 219–220
getting recommendations for, 212
interviewing voice teachers on, 215–216
recording, 220
voice projection, misconceptions about, 100
voice teachers
audition advice from, 292
choosing, 211–213
constructive criticism from, 206, 217–218
cooperating with, 219–220
description of, 307
expectations for, 217–218
getting recommendations for, 212
interviewing about
accompaniment ability, 215
cancellation policies, 217
cost of lessons, 216
education, 214–215
experience-level, 214
location of lessons, 215–216
music genres, 215
overview, 214
payment policies, 216
lessons with, 219–220
voice types
comparing, 25–27
determining, 8, 15
identifying
basses, 23–24
mezzos, 20–21
overview, 17–18
sopranos, 18–19
tenors, 21–22
parts of, 16–17
voiced consonants, articulating, 112–113
voices
altering timbre of, 250
blending, 208
chest register
ascending from middle voice to, 154–155
comparing belt and, 183
defined, 137
descending from middle voice to, 153–154
differences between belt and, 143
of Eddie Kendricks, 301
exercises for, 143, 144–145
of Lady Gaga, 300–301
overview, 142
range of, 142–143
strengthening, 11–12
for classical music, 25–26
comparing chest and belt, 183
dramatic, 18
factors that put stress on, 311–312
female
belt songs for, 340–341
higher pitched songs for, 26
lower pitched songs for, 337
middle voice range for, 139

voices *(continued)*
mix for, 158–161
mix songs for, 338–339
online tracks for, 344
finding unique quality to, 10–11
full, 18
head register
ascending from middle voice to, 155–156
defined, 137
descending from middle voice to, 156
exercises for, 146–148
of Lady Gaga, 301
of Minnie Riperton, 302
overview, 145
range of, 145–146
strengthening, 11–12
influencing factors in sound of, 306
lower pitched songs for, 231
male
falsetto songs for, 339–340
head voice range for, 146
healthy belting for females compared to, 184–185
higher pitched songs for, 26
lower pitched songs for, 27, 337
mix for, 157–158
online tracks for, 344
menopause, changes in, 207
menstrual cycle, changes with, 207
middle register, 139–140
puberty, changes in, 207
rehabilitating, 214
scratchiness in, 307–308
strengths of
for basses, 23
determining, 17, 18
for mezzos, 20
for sopranos, 19
for tenors, 20
subdivisions of, 24
timbre of, 18
warming up, 11
working out, 11–12
volume variations, 236
vowel sound, 2
vowels
articulating
back, sounds of, 102–106
front, sounds of, 106–110
overview, 101–102
reasoning for, 11
for vocal technique, 242
closed, 109
modifying for belting, 193–194
open, 109
sang in English compared to other languages, 110

W

W lip consonant, 118–119
W voiced consonant, 118–119
walking, practicing, 321
warming up
defined, 124
difference between practicing and, 129
physical activity when, 129
before practicing, 127–130
weight, effect on singing ability, 61
WH lip consonant, 118–119
WH unvoiced consonant, 118–119
whistle, 149, 302
whistle notes, 161, 302
whistle register, 161, 302
whistling, coordinating breath and tone by, 84
Wilkinson, Colm, 304
wobble, 207–208
word-for-word translation of songs, 262

Y

yawning, when singing, 44
young singers, range of, 88, 205–206

Z

Z unvoiced consonant, 113–114
ZH combination consonant, 120–121

About the Author

Dr. Pamelia S. Phillips has been teaching singing for more than 35 years. Her clients range from beginners to musical theater performers on Broadway, some of whom have gone on to be Grammy, Tony, and Academy Award winners. She helps singers prepare musically diverse material from musical theater, classical, jazz, country, pop, and rock.

She earned her Doctorate of Musical Arts and Master of Music in Vocal Performance from Arizona State University and a Bachelor of Music Education from Arkansas State University. Her performances range from contemporary American Opera premieres to guest performances with symphonies.

Performances include title roles in *Carmen*, *Tragedy of Carmen, Dido and Aeneas,* and *Lizzie Borden*, the Witch in *Hansel and Gretel*, Giulietta in *Tales of Hoffmann*, Dorabella in *Così fan tutte*, Mum in *Albert Herring*, Constance in the world premiere of *She Stoops to Conquer*, Lady with a Hat Box in *Postcard from Morocco*, Frau Bauer in *Dora*, Beatrice in the stage premiere of *Garden of Mystery*, Mrs. Cornett in *Tobermory*, staged performance of *From The Diary of Virginia Woolf*, Berta in *The Barber of Seville*, Maddalena in *Rigoletto*, Mamma Lucia in *Cavalleria Rusticana*, Liubava in *Sadko*, Spirit in *Dido and Aeneas*, Narrator in *Sweet Betsy From Pike*, Edna in *The Awakening*, Gloria Thorpe in *Damn Yankees*, Gymnasia in *A Funny Thing Happened on The Way to The Forum*, Liebeslieder singer in *A Little Night Music,* Lady Thiang in *King and I,* and Mrs. Hicks in *The Music Man*.

Symphonic performances include Berlioz' *Le mort de Cléopâtra* with the Bronx Symphony, Mahler's *Fourth Symphony* with the Centré Symphony, *Das Lied von der Erde* and Mahler's *Third Symphony* with the New York Symphonic Arts Ensemble and guest artist with National Chorale, Phoenix Chamber Symphony, Scottsdale Fine Arts Orchestra, Putnam County Chorale, Catskill Choral Society, Delta Symphony, Downtown Symphony, American Chamber Opera Company, Staten Island Symphony, Brooklyn Heights Orchestra, Sun Symphony Concert Band, Valley Symphony Orchestra, South Mountain Community Orchestra, Queens Opera Company, North East Arkansas National Association of Teachers of Singing, Lock Haven University, and Regina Opera Company. Pam was a soloist for 15 years with Rosewood United Methodist Church in Arkansas and St. Paul's Episcopal Church, First Methodist Church, and Saint Barnabas churches in Arizona.

She has taught at MTB (MusicTheaterBavaria.org), CAP21/NYU, Lee Strasberg Theatre and Film Institute/NYU, Atlantic Acting School/NYU, Wagner College, Arizona State University, Scottsdale Community College, and South Mountain Community College. She has designed curriculum for high school students, college BFA programs, and professional training programs, presented at the International Forum for Chinese Musical Production and Education in Beijing, China, taught workshops for CAP21 students and faculty on vocal health and the health of the speaking voice, and Chicago NATS on belting, and was the graduation speaker for the College of Fine Arts at Arkansas State University.

Find more information at www.PamPhillips.com.

She also is the author of *Singing Exercises For Dummies* and the coauthor of *Rockmusic Machen Für Dummies* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

Dedication

I dedicate this edition to my father, Holmes Phillips. When I was a tiny tot, my dad bought a tape recorder — not common in those days — and captured priceless memories of us singing and playing make believe. Dad's voice is on the recordings encouraging us to sing a song or perform our latest piano piece. My dad's ears survived two little girls practicing for piano lessons and one of those little girls later taking voice lessons. Thanks for tolerating all that noise, Dad. You taught me why we sing; it's fun. I grew up hearing dad singing as he worked in the garage or around the house — just singing at the top of his lungs for the fun of it. I'm forever grateful that I can still hear your voice in my memory singing full out, enjoying making sounds just because. When I get caught up in how we sing, I think of you and remember why we sing. If you listen to the tracks, Dad, you'll know which singer is your kid because you listened to me practicing my singing exercises as I was growing up and when I came home for holidays and was memorizing the next role. Thanks for the sacrifices you made and for teaching me the joy of singing.

Author's Acknowledgments

I gratefully acknowledge editor Chad Sievers for his attention to detail and executive editor Steve Hayes for the opportunity to create a third edition. Thank you to Natasha Graf for believing in me and my ability to create this book. Thank you to my previous technical editors, Dr. Margaret J. Ball and David Kelso (d. 2021) for sifting through all of the terminology.

Thank you to my parents, Holmes and Darlene, for all the lessons you paid for, the hours you had to listen to me practice, and the many miles you drove to attend my concerts.

Thank you to my husband, George, for your encouragement and for tolerating all the late nights and weekends I spent writing.

Eternal thanks to my students (and a few colleagues) who sang so beautifully on the CD and to my students and colleagues who offered advice and support. You inspire me. Singers on the online tracks include Rachel Anton, Dr. Margaret J. Ball, Suzanna Neeley Bridges, Jared T. Carey, Michal Chorny, Maria Couch, Rachael Ferrera, Natasha Graf, Robert Hunt, Marshall Keating, David Kelso, Eric Noone, Skie Ocasio, Pam Phillips, Jacob Samuels, Jeffrey Sheets, Martha Sullivan, and Jessica Wagner

And finally a special thanks to my voice teachers, Julia Lansford, Jerry Doan, Norma Newton, and Judith Natalucci.

Singers on the online tracks: Rachel Anton, Margaret Ball, Suzanna Neeley Bridges, Jared T. Carey, Michal Chorny, Maria Couch, Rachael Ferrera, Natasha Graf, Robert Hunt, Marshall Keating, David Kelso, Eric Noone, Skie Ocasio, Jacob Samuels, Jeffrey Sheets, Martha Sullivan, Jessica Wagner, and Pam Phillips

Pianists: Brian Suits and Marshall Keating

Sound Engineers: Matthias Winter at Yellow Sound Lab, NYC, and Brian Suits

Publisher's Acknowledgments

Executive Editor: Steve Hayes

Project Manager and Editor: Chad R. Sievers

Production Editor: Mohammed Zafar Ali

Cover Image: © Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Getty Images

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley’s ebook EULA.